

DUBLIN	WILLIAM M'GEE, 18, NASSAU STREET
EDINBURGH	T G STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET
GLASGOW	HUGH HOPKINS, ROYAL BANK PLACE
BERLIN	ASHER & CO, UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11.
NEW YORK	C SCRIBNER & CO, LEYPOLDT & HOLT
PHILADELPHIA	J B LIPPINCOTT & CO

Monte Artane,



or

The Death of Arthur.

EDITED FROM

ROBERT THORNTON'S MS

IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,

By

EDMUND BROCK.

[3. New Edition, 1871.]

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N TRUBNER & CO, 60, PATERNOSTER ROW

MDCCLXXV

CONTENTS.

PREFACE	PAGE vii
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM	ix
NOTES	xiv
MORTE ARTHURE	1
INDEX OF NAMES	129
GLOSSARIAL INDEX	136

P R E F A C E.

THE present version of the *Morte Arthure* or *Death of Arthur* is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

Morte Arthure was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order, the freshness of his descriptions of scenery¹, the touching pathos of some of his passages², and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others³, mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Awdelay, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

¹ See ll 920—932, 2506—2512

² See ll 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971

³ See ll 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000

The poem is printed from the Thornton MS, in the library of Lincoln Cathedral, no other copy is known. The MS is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin, a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed Halliwell (Camden Soc 1844). The MS is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of *Morte Arthure* we find, "*R Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus Amen*" Thornton was "a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved an instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439"¹

Morte Arthure was first printed in 1847, by J O Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects, the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful, the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new, a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes added.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev W W Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E B

¹ From Mr Perry's Preface, p vii

ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

THE metre in which the "Morte Arthure" is written may best be understood by comparing it with "Piers Plowman," the accentuation and *swing* of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of "Piers Plowman") where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two *sections*, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the *metrical point* or *pause*, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus —

"Schelde vs firo schamesdede and synfulle werkes,"

or else by printing the lines thus —

"Schelde^r vs firo schamesdede,
And synfulle werkes"

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line, and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has

once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur

To begin, then, consider the line—

“Ac Lucifer lowest lith of hem alle”

Piers Plowman (ed Skeat), B. i 124

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly accented¹ (or *loud*) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a *single* unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean *two* unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on, we may represent the above line by the scheme,

1 * 2 * 1 * 2 * 1;

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents, (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the *rime-letter*, and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The *rime-letters* may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of *single* letters, or of such combinations as *sc*, *ll*, *tr*, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they *are* so, they need not be the *same* vowels, and, in practice, are generally *different*.

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does *not* begin with the rime-letter. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

We have here the arrangement

1 * 2 * 1 1 * 3 * 1

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section, and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to *three*

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse, we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as *four* short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that is accented *slightly*) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm, for it is one addressed to the *ear* only, and not to the *eye*. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

"Fayteden for here fôde fôûten atte âle,"
Piers Plowman B Prol 42

which may be denoted by

* 4 * 1 * 3 * 1

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet, it may suffice to say that the *general effect* of the metre is *dactylic*, supposing the term *dactyl* to be capable of application to an *English* foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

"I lôked on my lêft half as þe lādý me taúghte,
 And was wár of a wómman wóρθeli yelóthed,
 Púrified with pèlture þe finest vpon érthe,
 Y-cróûnede with a córone þe kýng hath non bétter,
 Fétuslich hur fýngres were frétted with gólde wyre."
Piers Plowman, B, 11 12.

<i>Analysis</i>	1	*	3	*	1	2	*	2	*	1
	2	*	2	*	1		*	3	*	1
		*	3	*	1	1	*	3	*	1
	1	*	3	*	1	1	*	2	*	1
		*	3	*	1	1	*	2	*	1

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a *third* strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length, as in,

"The móste mýschief on móldē is móúntyng wel fáste"
Piers Plowman, B Prol 67

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of "Morte Arthure,"

"Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym seluene"

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes unemphatic, as in "Morte Arthure," l 59,

"In Glamórgane with glée thare gládchipe was éuere"

(2) Sometimes there are but *two* rime-letters, as in l 95,

"At pryme of the daye in páyne of ȝour lǽrys"

(3) Sometimes there is *no* alliteration, as in l 70 (4) Sometimes there are *four* rime-letters, as l 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

"Scóthylle Scóttlande by skýlle he skýftys as hym lýkys,"

or as in l 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

"Holaund and Hénawde they héldē of hyme bóthen"

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous *swing* (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final *e*'s.

"Now grétt glórious Gódde thurgh gráce of hym séluene,
 And the précyous práyere of hys prýs módyr
 Schéldé vs fíro schámesdede and synfulle wérkes,
 And gyffe vs grace to gýe and góueine vs hére 4
 In this wréchyde wérldé thorowe vért[u]ous lýwyngé
 That we may káyre til hys cóurte the kyngdome of hévyne,
 Whene oure sáules schalle párté and súndye fíia the bódý
 Ewyie to bélde and to býde in blýsse wyth hyme séluene, 8
 And wysse me to wérpe owte some wórde at this týme,
 That nothyre vóyde be ne váyne bot wýrchip tille hyme sclvyne,
 Plésande and prófitabille to the pópule that theme hères
 3e that liste has to lyth or lúffes for to hére 12
 Off élders of álde tyme and of therre áwke dédys,
 Hów they were léle in theire láwe and lóuede Gód Almýghty," etc

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second *of* in l 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter, while in l 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless *how* was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more *out loud*, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with l 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on *s*, 2 on hard *c*, 2 on *f*, 6 on *s*, 6 on *b*, 4 on hard *c*, 2 on vowels, 2 on *s*, 2 on *ch*, 2 on *f*, and 2 on *r*. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on *s*, 3310—3317, 9 on *j* or soft *g*, 2889—2897, 10 on *f*, 3300—3309, and 11 on *f*, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in *Piers the Plowman*, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon *p* in the B-text, Pass xiv 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the *Percy Folio MS*, ed Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to *Piers the Plowman*, Text A pp xxii and xxx.

NOTES.

Lines 212—215 Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison Compare the following —“ þe earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe ȝimston þet hette achate Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neihen, ne þeo hwule þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe and ful of alle mihten, ouer alle ȝimstones He is þe achate þet atter of sunne ne neihede neuere Do hine riðine neste, þet is, riðine heorte þenc hwuch þinen he þolede on his flesche wiðuten, and hu swete he was iheorted, and hu softa wiðinnen, and so þu schalt driue ut euerich atter of þine heorte, and bitternesse of þine bodie þes ston, ase ich er seide, ariereð attri þinges Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dreden þe attne nedde of helle þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter”—*The Ancren Riwle*, ed Morton, p 134—136 Compare also Piers the Plowman (ed Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass 11 l 14

450 *Wailung-strette*, “the Roman road leading from Dover to Cardigan Leland describes it thus Secunda via principalis dicitur *Watelingstreate*, tendens ab euro-austro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem Incipit enim a Dovaria, tendens per medium Cantiae, juxta London, per S. Albanum, Dunstaplum, Stratfordiam, Towcestriam, Litlebuiue, per montem Gilberti juxta Salopiam, deinde per Stratton, et per medium Walliae, usque Cardigan Itin vol vi p 120, edit Oxon 1744.”—Bosworth’s Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, under *Wælinga stræt*

793. *Brathelle* is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed *brayelle*, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear’s belly Compare the following —

“Brayeul m The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke”—*Cotgrave*

“The *brayle*, or pannell of a Hawke. *Le brayer d’un oiseau, le brayeul*”—*Sherwood*

“Braiel, *brayette* Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu’on appelle à présent le pont”—*Roquefort*.

"Braioel, *brao el* Le haut de la culotte"—*Roquefort*

966 *Thow saynmed the vnsekyly* Thou blessedst thyself vnsafely,
i e you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your
safety, otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place If the
sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of
no avail

1195 Read *with [the] conquerour*

1270 *Or many lyghte salle laue* Or many shall light low, i e
fall

1286 "Horns of elephants full loudly blown" Our fathers were
remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals

1293 *Ewyne in the myddes* Right in the middle

1315 *That no mysse serues* Who deserve no ill

1364 *Fretted in salle* Read *sable*

1414 *Bretons* This is probably the verb, *bruttenes*, not the sub-
stantive, *Britons*

1425 *Battailles* Restore the reading of the MS, it is right

1474 *He ryghthe theire brenez* More likely *he rites*

1485 The relative pronoun is omitted after *Boyce* This is a fre-
quent ellipsis See line 1558, where *that* is omitted after *Henry*

1548 *Or sone delyuende*, i e soon to be delivered

1572 The alliteration would be improved by reading *bot [sw]*

Ewcyne

1588 *With mangere to lengene* Qu with *maugree*, ill-will

1653 *Lythe* The alliteration and sense require *lythe*

1698 *Borghthe* A strange mistake for *Brute*, i e Brutus, the sup-
posed founder of Britain

1717 "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as
you please"

1736 *Wellyde alle gwyke* Boiled alive

1797 *Wyke his me wayfare* Qu me his wayfare

1840 *Lang ere* The MS reads *langere*, which may be right

1842 *At* = that = what

1899 *On lyfe* should be *of lyfe*

1911 The line is incomplete, add [many]

2070 *Reuersede it redelye* Turned it, the eagle, over quickly

2108 *Heyghe* = heythe, heath Compare *treughe* for *trewthe*

2128 *Handsomere*, not more handsome, but more handy or con-
venient

2189 *3ife the wenle happyne* Qu welthe

2197 This line recurs at 4155

2245 "*Arthure!*" *askryes* Shouts "Arthur," but perhaps it
should be simply *Arthure askryes*, Arthur shouts Compare l 1412

2250 *Beblede at* should certainly be *Beblede al*

2280 *Lyghte strandez* This should perhaps be *lythe strandez*, as
at 1517

2295 *Heghte* = heath See note on 2108

- 2398 *I hope noghte to layne* I care not to concea
 2408 *Tuokayne* (so in MS) is certainly a mistake for *Tuskayne*,
 Tuscany Correct the sidenote accordingly
 2506 Insert [of] after *myste*, or else read *mysty*
 2519 *With buenne my borne* This is corrupt, no doubt the right
 reading is, *With-outene my borne*
 2565 *Alet* "Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not
 long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I, a new mode of
 protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of
 steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance
 to little standards, *Gonfanons* They are likewise mentioned by the
 name of *aulettes*, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth
 year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park, given
 in the XVIIIth volume of the *Archaeologia*, and in the *Statuta armorum*
in Tournaments, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates
 They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III
 . Their shape was . varied, they were square, round, pen-
 tagonal, and shieldlike, sometimes plain, but generally ornamented
 with the family arms, or the cross of St George"—Meyrick, in the
Archaeologia, vol xix, pp. 137, 138
 2577 It is well known that in early times barbers practised blood-
 letting, they would therefore, of course, know how to staunch blood.
 2578 *Blyne schalle he neuer* He shall never cease [to bleed]
 2586 *Surgyane in Salarne* Compare l 4311 and *William of*
Pulerne, ed Skeat, ll 964 and 1033
 2616 *Cyrus wutrye* should be *cyrqwutrye* The letter *q* is raised a
 little and looks very much like the usual contraction for *us* *Cyrqw*-
utrye = surquidry, arrogance, pride
 2675 This line is misplaced, it ought to follow line 2677
 2771 *Breste* seems to be a mistake for *brethe*, breath
 2934 *ffy a debles* seems to be meant for French *Fie*, (go) to the
 devil
 3061 *Idene the* The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be
 on the *d* of this *idene* and of *dout*, but there is no reason why it may
 not be on the *s* of *idene* and the *e* of *elles* *Idene*, if not a miswriting,
 may be the same as *ipenli*, frequently, in the following lines —
 " *þai þat war fild wit enst and hete*
þat ipenli þair hertes ete,
þar wormes sal þam underwrote
In bale wituten hope and bote,
And for-þi þai her war wont to li
In þair stincand lichen,
Ne wald noght here bot þair delices
þat drogh þam until oþer vices
þai sal haf ipen stinc iwiss
þat þai sal never mar mis"—*Cursor Mundi*, as quoted
 by Dr Morris in the preface to *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, pp x, xi

The may be the verb *thee*, to thrive, it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with *ȝ*. The meaning of the line would be, "He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l. 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess "myldly with fulle meke wordes."

3257 The word *With* clearly belongs to the line before *With bruchez*, &c

3282 *The two eyne* This is clearly an error for "the tone eye" = (the) one eye. "One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg."

3439 *Nynne of the nobleste namede in erthe* These were the Nine Worthies. The list agrees with that given in *Reliquæ Antiquæ*, vol. 1 p. 287.

Saraceni	Judæi
Ector, Alex, Julius, David, Josue, Machabæus,	
Cristiani	
Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum inquare nolo	
Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores	

See Shakespere, *Love's Labour Lost*, Act 5, sc. 2

3937 *Guchede* I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS, unless it = gutted = *goutte*, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland "bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere." *Gowces* I suppose to be miswritten for *gowtes*, drops, spots.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

<i>adj.</i> = adjective	O Fr = Old French
<i>adv</i> = adverb	O N = Old Norse
A S = Anglo-Saxon	p = page
<i>b</i> = back	<i>pl</i> = plural
col = column	2 <i>pl</i> = second person plural
<i>comp</i> = comparative form	pp = pages
Comp = compare	<i>p p</i> = past or passive participle
<i>conj</i> = conjunction	<i>prep</i> = preposition
ed = edited by	<i>pres</i> = present
E E T S = Early English Text Society	<i>pret</i> = preterite
Fr = French	<i>Prompt Parv</i> = Promptorium Parvolorum
<i>fut</i> = future	<i>pron</i> = pronoun
<i>gen</i> = genitive case	Qu = Query
Germ = German	<i>ref</i> = reflexive
Her = Heraldry	<i>s</i> = substantive
<i>imp</i> = imperative	1 <i>s</i> = first person singular
<i>impers v</i> = impersonal verb	2 <i>s</i> = second person singular
<i>ind</i> = indicative	3 <i>s</i> = third person singular
<i>inf</i> = infinitive	Sc = Scotch
<i>int</i> = interjection	<i>sg</i> = singular
<i>i p</i> = imperfect participle	Span. = Spanish
l = line	<i>subj</i> = subjunctive
Lat = Latin	<i>superl</i> = superlative form
ll = lines	tom = tomo
M Goth = Mæso-Gothic	<i>v</i> = verb
O E = Old English	vol = volume

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors' names —

Bosworth's Anglo Saxon and English Dictionary.
 Brockett's Glossary of North Country Words
 Burguy's Glossary to his *Grammaire de la Langue d'Oïl*
 Ducange's Glossarium Mediæ et Infimæ Latinitatis, ed 1840
 Halliwell's Dictionary of Archæic and Provincial Words
 Jamieson's Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language
 Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane
 Stratmann's Dictionary of the Old English Language
 Verelius's Index linguæ veteris Seytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicæ, 1691

CORRECTIONS.

- Page 2, sidenotes, for *Tours* read *Touraine*
 „ 2 „ „ *Aniana* read *Aniane*
 „ 2 „ „ *Naverne* read *Navarre*
 „ 3 „ for the 2nd *Casileon* read *Carlisle*
 „ 7 „ „ *hams* read *shoulders*
 „ 7 „ „ *bustards* read *bitterns*
 „ 28, line 913, for *grayuez* read *graynez*
 „ 33, sidenotes, for *smoke* read *foam*
 „ 78, strike out the footnote
 „ 134, col 1, line 23, for *Apulia* read *Poland*

Morte Arthure.

Here begynnes **Morte Arthure** In nomine Patris et [leaf 53]
 Filij et Spiritus Sancti Amen pur charite Amen

Now grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene,
 And the *precyous prayere* of hys prys modyr, The poet prys
for grace,
 Schelde vs fro schamesdede and synfulle werkes,
 And gyffe vs *grace* to gye, and gouerne vs here, 4
 In this wrechyde werlde thorowe vertous lywynge,
 That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne,
 Whene oure saules schalle parte and sundyreffra the body,
 Ewyre to belde and to hyde in blysse wyth hym seluene, 8
 And wysse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme,
 That nothyre voyde be ne wayne, bot wyrchip talle hym
 selvyne, and for power to
write something
profitable

Plesande and profitable to the popule *that* theme heres
 3e that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here, 12
 Off elders of alde tyme and of theire awke dedys,
 How they were lele in theire lawe, and louede God Al-
 myghty,

Herkynes me heyndly and holdys 3ow styll,
 And I salle telle 3ow a tale, *that* trewe es and nobyll, 16
 Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownde Table,
 That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobyll,
 Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes,
 Doughty in theire doyns, and dredde ay schame, 20
hearken to a tale
of the Round
Table
These knights
were noble, wise,
and brave,

kind, and courteous, and worshipful

They slew Lucius lord of Rome, and won his kingdom
Hear now the story

When King Arthur had won many kingdoms and countries,

Argyle, Orkney, and the Isles,

Ireland and Scotland,
Wales, Flanders, and France,

had made tributary Holland and Hainault, Burgundy, and Brabant, Brittany, Guienne, Gothland and Greece, he occupied Bayonne and Bordeaux, Tours and Toulouse

He was prince of Poitiers and [leaf 38, back] Provence, of Valence and Vienna, of Erugia and Aniana, of Naverne and Norway and Normandy

Of Germany, of Austria, and many other lands
He conquered all Denmark with his sword
Then he dubbed his knights and gave them lands.

Created kings anointed,

Then rested the hero, and held the Round Table.

After solacing himself in Bri-

Kynde men and courtlays, and couthe of couthe thewes,
How they whanne with were wylchippis many,
Sloughe Lucius the lythyre, that lorde was of Rome,
And conqueryd that kyngryke thorowe craftys of armes,
Herkenes now hedywande, and heys this storye 25

Qwenethat the kyng Arthur by conqueste had wonnyne
Castelles and kyngdoms, and contices many,
And he had couered the coroune of the kyth ryche, 28
Of alle that Yter in eithe aughte in his tyme,
Ogayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-les,
Irelande vttrly, as Ocyane runys,

Seathyllr Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys,
And Wales of were he wane at hys wille, 33

Bathe flaundrez and flaunce he til hym seluynne,
Holland and Henawde they helde of hyme bothen,
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse, 36
Gyane and Gothelando, and Grece the ryche,
Bayone and Burleux he heldytt fulle faire,
Turoyns and Tholus with toures fulle hye,

Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynces holdyne, 40

Of Valence and Vyenna, off value so noble,
Of Eruge and Anyone, thos erledoms ryche;
By conqueste fulle cruelle they knewe hym fore lorde,
Of Nauerne and Norwaye, and Normaundye eke, 44
Of Almayne, of Estriche, and other ynowe;

Danmarke he drysede alle by drede of hym seluynne,
ffra Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, with his swerde¹ kene¹
Qwenne he thes dedes had done, he doubbyd hys knyghtez,
Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes, 49

Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,
In kyth there they couaite crounes to bere.
Whene he thys² rewmes hade redyne and rewlyde the
popule, 52

Then rystede that ryalle and helde the Rounde Tabyll;
Suggeourns that sesone to solace hyme seluene,
In Bretayne the braddere, as hym beste lykys,

¹ MS swrede

² Or thes.

- Sythyne wente in-to Wales *with* his wyes alle, 56 tain, he goes into Wales,
 Sweys in-to Swaldye *with* his snelle houndes, to hunt the hart
 For to hunt at *the* hartes in thas hye lanndes, *with* his swift
 In Glamorgane *with* glee, thare gladchipe was eue*e* and in Glamorgan
 And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys, 60 founds Caerleon
 That Caerlyons was callid, *with* curius walles, upon Usk
 On the riche reuare *that* rynnys so faire,
 There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym
 lykyde,
 Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes, 64 At Caerleon he
 This ilke kyde conquerour, *and* helde hym for lorde, holds high festi-
 Wyth dukez *and* dusperes of dyuers rewmes, val at Christmas
 Eiles *and* ercheuesques, and *other* ynowe, tide with his lords
 Byschopes *and* bachelers, *and* banerettes nobille, 68 and bishops,
 That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys
 Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, whene they were allesemblyde,
 That comlyche conquerour commaunde*z* hym seluyne
 That ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take, 72 and bids none
 To the tende day fully ware takyne to *the* ende depart from the
 Thus one ryalle araye he helde his Rounde Table, feast till ten days
 With semblant *and* solace *and* selcouthe metes , are expired
 Whas neuer syche¹ noblay, in no manys tyme, 76 Never was so
 Mad in mydwynter in *tha* weste marchys ! noble a feast
 known
 Bot on the newzere daye, at *the* none euyne,
 As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde,
 So come in sodanly a senatour of Rome, 80 But on New
 Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one Year's day, as
 He saluzed the souerayne *and* the sale aftyre, the knyghts were
 Ilke a kyng aftyre kyng*e*, and mad his enclines , feasting,
 Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, 84 there came in
 And syne agayne to *the* gome he gaffe vp his nedys suddenly a Sena-
 " Sir Lucius Iberius, the Empe*our* of Rome, tor of Rome,
 Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche , [leaf 54]
 It es credens, *sir* kyng*e*, *with* cruelle wordez, attended by six
 88 teen knyghts
 Trow it for no trufles, his targe es to schewe¹ He salutes King
 Now in this newzers daye *with* notaries sygne, Arthur and his
 knights,
 and Guinevere
 the Queen
 Then, in the
 name of Sir Lu-
 cius Iberius, the
 Empe*ror* of
 Rome,

¹ *swyche* struck out, and *syche* written instead

he summons Arthur to appear at Rome on Lammes day,

to answer why he occupies his lands instead of paying homage to him,

and how he dare rebel against him

But if Arthur will not come, the Emperor will invade his land and take him captive,

and destroy him wherever he may fly

The Register of Rome declares that Arthur's father paid tribute, which was won by Julius Cesar and his gentle knights

Then did King Arthur look with ferdious glances on the senator

[leaf 54, back]

So terrible was his face that the Romans quailed before him,

I make the somouns in sale to sue for *the* landys,
 That on Lammes daye thare be no lttle floundene, 92
That thou bee redy at Rome with alle thi Rounde Table,
 Appere in his *presens* with thy price knyghtez,
 At pryme of the daye, in payne of 3000 lyvys,
 In *the* kydde Capytoile before the kyng selvyne, 96
 Whene he and his senatours bez sette as them lykes,
 To ansuere anely why thou occupyes the laundeze,
 That awe homage of alde tille hym *and* his eldyrs,
 Why thou has redyne and raymede, *and* raunsound the
 pople, 100
 And kyllyde doune his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde,
 Thare schalle thou gyle rekkynyng for alle thy Round
 Table,
 Why thou arte rebelle to Rome, and rentez theme
 wytholdez!
 3if thou theis somouns wythaytte, he sendes thee theis
 wordes, 104
 He salle the seke ouer *the* see wyth sextene kynges,
 Bryne Bretayne *the* brade, and bryttyne thy knyghtys,
 And brynge the bouxsomly as a beste with brethe whare
 hym lykes,
 That thou ne schalle rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene
 ryche, 108
Thofe thou for reddour of Rome ryne to *the* erthe!
 ffor if thou flee in-to Fraunce or ffreselannnd owther,
 Thou salle be fchede with force, and ouersetete fore euer!
 Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez, 112
 In the regestre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez
 With-owttyne more trouflynge the trebute we aske,
 That Iulus Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghttes!"
 The kyng blyschit one the beryne with his brode eghne,
 That fulle brymly for breth brynte as the gledys,
 Keste colours as kyng with crouelle lates, 118
 Luked as a lyone, and on his lyppe bytes!
 The Romaynes for radnesse ruschte to *the* erthe,
 ffore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey were,

Cowchide as kenetez be-fore *the* kynge seluyne,
 Be-cause of his contenance confusede them^e semede '
 Thene couer d vp a knyghte, *and* criede ful lowde,¹ 124
 "Kynge coroune of kynd, cuitays and noble,
 Misdoon no messangere for menske of *this* seluyne,
 Sen we are in thy mañrede, and *mercy* *the* besekes ,
 We lenge *with* *sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome, 128
 That es *the* meruelyousteste mane *that* on molde lengez ,
 It es lefulle tille vs his luynghe tille wyrche ,²
 We come at his commaundment , haue vs excusede "
 Then carpyss *the* conquerour crewelle wordez,— 132
 "Haa ! cranaunde knyghte ! a cowarde *the* semez !
 Thare [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare
 greuede,
 Thow durste noghte for³ alle Lumberdye luke one hym
 ones "
 "Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Crist mott me helpe, 136
The route of *this* vesage has woundyde vs alle !
 Thow arte *the* lordlyeste lede *that* eter I one luykde ,
 By luynghe, *with*-owttyne lesse, a lyone the semys !"
 "Thow has me somonde," *quod* *the* kynge, "*and* said
 what *the* lykes ,⁴ 140
 ffore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre *the* the more ,
 Sen I corouñde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,
 Was neuer creature to me *that* carpede so large !
 Bot I salle tak concelle at kynges enoyntede, 144
 Off dukes *and* duspers and doctours noble,
 Offe peres of *the* parlement, prelates *and* other,
 Off *the* richeste renkys of *the* Rounde Table ,
 Thus schalle I take avisemente of valiant beryns, 148
 Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyss knyghttes
 To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were,
 Ne wilfully in *this* wretche to wrekene my seluene 151
 ffor-*this* salle thow lenge here, *and* lugge wyth *these* lordes,

Then one of them
humbly entreats
mercy

Upon which Ar-
thur upbraids
him as a coward

But the Senator
excuses him on
the ground that
Arthur's visage is
very terrible

The King tells
him that he will
take counsel of
his dukes, doc-
tors, peers, and
knights,

while the Ro-
mans stay a week

¹ *hyghe* struck out, and *lowde* written instead

² *sehewe* struck out, and *wyrche* written instead

³ MS *fulle* ⁴ *Luykde* struck out, and *lykes* written instead

to refresh them
selves This seuenyghte in solace, to suggourne *your* horses,
To see whatte lyfe *that* wee leede in thees lawe lanndes "
ffor by *the* realtee of Rome, *that* recheste was eueie,

Sir Cayous is bid
to entertain the
lords, He commande *su* Cayous, "take kepe to thoos lordez, 156
To styghtylle *tha* steryne mene as theire statte askys,
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambries,
[leaf 55] Sythine sittandly in sale *seruyde* ther-aftyr ,
and their horses That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez, 160
Nowthure weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in *this* erthe ,
Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what *the* lykys,
He was not to
spare, but to
feast them liber
ally That there be largesce one lofte, and no lake foundene ,
If *thou* my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe, 164
Thou salle haue gersoms fulle grett, *that* gayne salle *the*
euere ! "

Then were they
quickly harboured
within the high
walls
In chambrys
with chumneys
they changed
their weeds **N**ow er they herberde in hey, *and* in oste holdene,
Hastyly wyth hendemene *with-in* thees heghe wallez ,
In chambyrs *with* chympnes *they* chaungene *theire* walez,
And sythyne the chauncelere *theme* fecchede *with* che-
ualrys¹ noble 169

The Senator sat
at the King s
table, and was
served like him-
self Sone *the* senatour was sett, as hym wele semyde,
At *the* kynges owne borde, twa knyghtes hym *seu*nede,
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluynne, 172
Richely on *the* ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table ,
Be resounne *that the* Romaynes whare so ryche holdene,
As *of the* realeste blode *that* reynede in erthe 175
There come in at *the* fyrste course, be-for *the* kyngeseluene,
Bareheuedys *that* ware bryghte, burnyste *with* syluer,
Alle *with* taghte mene and towne in togers fulle ryche,
Of saunke realee in suyte, sixty at ones ,
Boars' heads
there were serued
upon silver by
numerous gally-
dressed attend
ants fflesch fluriste of fermysone *with* frumentee noble, 180
Venison, fatted
and wild, with
choyce birde, Ther-to wyld to wale, and wynlyche byddes,²
peacocks and plo-
vers upon golden
plates, Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,
Pygges of porke despyne, *that* pastured neuer ,
Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire ; 184
Grett swannes fulle swythe in silueryne chargeours,

great swans in
silver chargers,

¹ MS *cheualrys*.² *breides* struck out, and *bryddes* written instead

Tartes of Turkey, taste whame <i>theme</i> lykys ,		taits of turkey,
Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste ,		
Seyne bowes of wyld bores <i>with the</i> braune lechyde,		hams and brawn
Bernakes and botures in baterde dysches,	189	in slices, geese and bustards
Thareby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,		
With brestez of barowes, <i>that</i> bryghte ware to schewe ,		
Seyne come <i>ther</i> sewes sere, <i>with</i> solace <i>ther</i> -after,	192	Then came 'sewes sere,
Ownde of azure alle ouer <i>and</i> ardant <i>them</i> semyde,		
Of ilke a leche <i>the</i> lowe launschide fulle hye,		
<i>That</i> alle ledes myghte lyke <i>that</i> luyde <i>theme</i> apone ,		
Thane cranes <i>and</i> curlues craftyly rosted,	196	then cranes and curlews craftly roasted,
Connygez in cretoyne colourede fulle faire,		
fesauntez enflureschit in flammande siluer,		pheasants upon flashing silver,
With danielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe ,		'dumels and many other dainties
Thane clarett and Creette, cleigially rennene,	200	Wine is used to [loaf 'ss, back] run skilfully in silver conduits
With condethes fulle curious alle of clene siluyre ,		
Osay a[n]d algarde, and <i>other</i> ynewe,		
Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was ncuer ,		
Vernage of Venyce vertuouse and Crete ,	204	Rare sorts served in cups of fine gold
In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykys ,		
The kynges cope-borde was closed in siluer,		The King's cup board was glori- ous with plate
In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe ,		
There was a cheeffe buttilere, a cheualere noble,	208	
Sir Cayous <i>the</i> curtaise, <i>that</i> of <i>the</i> cowpe seruede ,		The chief butler was Sir Cayous,
Sexty cowpes of suyte fore <i>the</i> kyng seluyne,		
Crafty <i>and</i> curious, coruene fulle faire,		
In euer-ilk a party pyghte <i>with</i> precyous stones,	212	who served the wine in goblets decked with pre- cious stones,
That nane enpoysone sulde goo preuely <i>ther</i> -vndyre,		which hinder the deadly effects of poison
Bot <i>the</i> bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,		
Or ells <i>the</i> venyme sulde voyde thurgh the vertue of <i>the</i> stones ,		
And the conquerour hymselfe, so clenly arayed, 216		
In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys,		Arthur was clad in cloth of gold with his crown on, the doughti- est knight that dwelt on earth
Drissid <i>with</i> his dyademe one his deesse ryche,		
florehe was demyde <i>the</i> doughtyeste <i>that</i> duellyde in <i>ert</i> he		
Thane <i>the</i> conquerour kyndly carpede to <i>those</i> lordes,		Then he spake courteous words to those lords
Rehetede <i>the</i> Romaynes <i>with</i> realle sneche,	221	

"Sirs, be of good cheer we give you the best our barren country affords, which in deed is but poor

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast"

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere

Spiced drinks were served to all

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights

[leaf 56]
First speaks Sir Cadur of Cornwall

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace

"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenaunce, and comfurthes
your seluynne,

We knowe noghte in *this* countré of curious metez,
In thees barayne landez, bredes none *other*, 224
flore-thy wythowttyne feynynge, enforce 3ow *the*¹ more
To feede 3ow *with* syche feble as 3e be-fore fynde"

"Sir," sais *the* *senatour*, "so Criste motte me helpe!
There ryngnede neuer syche realtee *with-in* Rome walles!
There ne es *prelatte*, ne pape, ne prynce in *this* erthe,
That he ne² myghte bewele payede of *thees* pryce metes!"

A ftyre theyre welthe *they* wesche, and went vn-to
chambyre,

This ilke kydde conquerour *with* knyghtes ynewe, 232

Sir Gaywayne *the* worthye Dame Waynow he ledys,
Sir Owghtreth on *the* tother syde, of Turry was lorde

Thane spyces vn-sparyly *thay* spendyde there-aftyre,
Maluesye and muskadelle, *thase* meruelyous drynkes,
Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes, 237

Tille alle *the* riche on rawe, Romaines and *other*

Bot the soueraingne sothely, for solauce of hym seluene,
Assingnyde to *the* *senatour* certaygne lordes,

To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes, 241

With myrthe and *with* melodye of mynstralsy noble

Thane *the* conquerour to concelle cayres there-aftyre,

Wyth lordes of his lygeaunce *that* to hym selfe langys, 245

To *the* geauntes toure iohly he wendes,

Wyth justicez and iuggez, and gentille knyghtes

Sir Cadur of Cornewayle to *the* kyngs carppes,

Lughe one hyme luffly *with* lykande lates,— 248

"I thanke Gode of *that* thraa *that* vs *this* thretys!"

3ow moste be traylade, I trowe, bot 3ife 3e trett bettyre

The *lettres* of *sir* Lucius lyghttys myne herte!

We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye, 252

Wyth delyttes in *this* lande *with* lordchepez many,

And forelytenede the loos *that* we are layttede

I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

¹ MS *the* 3ow

² MS *ne* ha.

- ffore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes ¹ 256
 Now wakkenyse *the* were ¹ wynchypide be Cryste ¹ He rejoices to
 And we salle wynne it ag[a]yne be wyghtnesse *and* deeds of arms
 strenghe ¹ ”
- “ Sir Cadour,” *quod the* kyng, “ thy concelle es noble, The king praises
 Bot *thou* arte a meruailous mane with thi mery wordez ¹ bold words,
 ffor thow countez no caas, ne castes no forthire, 261 spoken from his
 Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes , heart without
 I moste trette of a trew towchande *thuse* nedes, thought or care
- Talke of *thies* tythdands *that* tenes myne herte , 264 He himself is
 Thou sees *that the* emperour es angerde a lyttille , grieved at these
 Yt semes be his sandismene *that* he es sore greuede , tidings
 His senatour has sommonde ¹ me, and said what hym
 lykyde,
- Hethely in my halle, wyth heyn³ous wordes, 268 He has been in-
 In speche disspyszed me, *and* sparede me lyttille , sulted in his own
 I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde ¹ hall by heinous
 He askyde me tyrauntly tribute of Rome, words,
 That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders , 272 and insolently
 There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes, summoned to
 Couerde it of commons, as cronicles telles , pay tribute to
 I haue tittle to take tribute of Rome, the emperor of
 Myne ancestres ware emperours, *and* aughte it *theme* Rome,
 seluene, 276
- Belyne *and* Bremyne, *and* Bawdewyne the thyrd, of whom he ought
 They occupyede *the* empyre aughte score wynttyrs, rather to demand
 Ilkane ayere aftyre *other*, as awide mene telles , tribute
 Thai couerde *the* Capitoile, and keste doune *the* walles ,
- Hyngede of *theire* heddys-mene by huñdredhes at ones ,
- Seyne Constantyne, our kynsmene, conquerid it aftyre, His ancestors oc-
 That ayere was of Ynglande, and emperour of Rome, cupied the Em-
 He *that* conquerid *the* crosse be crafter of armes, 284 pire of Rome
 That Criste was on crucifiede, *that* kyng es of heuene , eight score
 Thus hafe we euydens to aske *the* emperour *the* same, winters
 That *thus* regnez at Rome, whate ryghte *that* he
 claymes ”

¹ O. somounde

Then answered
King Aungers
and said that Ar-
thur ought to be
supreme over all
kings

[leaf 56, back]

The Romans had
done many evil
deeds in Scot-
land,

for which he
would have re-
venge

He promises to
bring 50,000 men
to aid Arthur

The king of
little Britain
would have Ar-
thur return a
fierce answer

He fears the Ro-
mans no what

He promises to
bring 30,000
knights within a
month.

Than answard kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluynе,
“Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other
kynges, 289

flore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndes,
The knyghtlyeste of counsaile *that euer corone bare* ,
I dare saye fore Scottlande, *that we theme schathe*
lympyde, 292

Whene *the* Romynges regnede, *thay* raunsoundeoure
eldyrs,

And rade in theire ryotte, and rauyschettoure wyfes,
With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vsoure gudes,
And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Cryste, 296

And to *the* haly vernacle, vertuus and noble,
Of this grett velany I salle be vengede ones
On 3one venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes!
I salle the forthure of defence fosterde ynewe, 300

fifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes,
Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,
To fyghte wyth thy ffaa mene, *that* vs unfaire ledes”

Thane the burelyche beryne of Bretayne *the* lyttlyle
Counsayles sir Arthure, and of hym besokys 305

To ansuere *the* alyenes wyth austerene wordes,
To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mounttes
He said, “I make myne avowe verrelly to Cryste, 308
And to *the* haly vernacle, *that* voide schalle I neuere,

ffor radnesse of na Romyne *that* regnes in erthe,
Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste ffoundene,
No more dowtte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns, 312
Than the dewe that es dannke, whene that it doune ffallas ,
Ne no more schoune¹ fore *the* swape of theire scharpe
suerddes,

Then fore *the* faireste flou *thatt* on the folde growes!
I salle to bataille the brynge, of brenyede knyghtes 316

Thyrty thosanne he tale, thyrftyne in armes,
Wyth-in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche,
That thow wylle sothelye assygne, whene thyselpe lykes”

¹ Or schonne.

"A ! A !" says *the Walsche* kyng, "wyrchipid be Criste!
Now schalle we wreke fulle wele *the* wrethe of oure
elders ! 321

Then Arthur ex-
claims Ah! ah!
Now shall we
have revenge

In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs *they* wroghte,
That alle for wandrethe may wepe, *that* one *that* were
thynkes

I salle haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluene, 324

Tylle *that* I haue venquste *the* Vicounte of Rome,

That wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,

As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble, 327

He was in Tuskayne *that* tyme, and tuke of oure knyghtes,

Areste theme vnryghttwyslye, and raunsounde *thame*
aftyre,

He himself would
fight at the head
of his army till
he had revenged
himself on the
Viscount of Rome
for a villany he
once wrought
him at Viterbo

I salle hym surelye ensure, *that* saghetylle salle we neuer,

Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfene ones,

And dele dynttys of dethe *with* oure derfe wapyns ! 332

And I salle wagge to *that* were of wyrchipfulle knyghtes,

Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of *the* Weste
Marches,

He would take
two thousand
worshipful
knights

Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,

[leaf 57]

Of *the* wyghteste wyes in alle zone weste landys !" 336

Syre Ewane fytz Vryence¹ *thane* egerly fraynez,

Was cosyne to *the* conquerour, corageous hymselfene,

"Sir, and we wyste *your* wylle, we walde wirke *ther-*

aftyre, 339

Then spoke Sir
Ewayne and said
that they would
all follow his
command gladly

3if *this* journee sulde halde, or be ajournede forthyre,

To ryde one zone Romaynes *and* ryott there landez,

We walde schape vs there-fore to schippe whene 3ow
lykys "

"Cosyne," quod *the* conquerour, "kyndly *thou* asches,

3ife my concelle accorde to conquere zone landez, 344

Then said Ar-
thur,

By *the* kalendez of Iuny we schalle encountre ones,

Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe!

"We will be
ready by the ka-
lends of June,

There-to make I myne avowe devotily to Cryste,

And to *the* holy vernacle, vertuous and noble, 348

I salle at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

and at Lammes
will enjoy our-

¹ Read Vryence

selves in Lorraine
or Lombardy, In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethure me leue thynkys,
 Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne doune *the wallez*,
 Bathe of Petyrsande, *and* of Pys, and of *the Pounte*
 Tremble, 352

sojourn six
weeks in the
Vale of Viterbo In *the* Vale of Viterbe vetaile my knyghttes,
 Suggourne there sex wokes *and* solace my selfene,
send riders to
Rome and lay
there a siege
unless they offer
peace Send prekers to *the* price tounne, and plaunte there my
 segge,

Bot if *thay* profre me *the* pece be processe of tyme" 356
Then Sir Ewayne
swows vengeance
against the Em-
peror of Rome
for occupying Ar-
thur's heritage, "Certys," sais *sir* Ewayne, "and I avowe aftyre,
 And I *that* hathelle may see euer *with* myne eghn,
 That ocupies thine heritage, *the* empyere of Rome,
 I salle auntyre me anes hys egle to touche, 360
 That borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,
 And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondryre,
 Bot he be redily reschowede *with* riotous knyghtez,
 I salle enforse 3owe in *the* felde *with* fresche mene of
 armes, 364

and promises
50 000 men on
four steeds ffyfty thosande folke apon faire stedys,
 On thi ffoo mene to foonde, there the faire thynkes,
 In ffrance or in ffriselande, feghte whene *the* lykes!"
Then Lancelot
declares his satis-
faction at the
war "By oure Lorde," quod *sir* Launcelott, "now lyghttys
 myne herte!" 368

I loue Gode of *this* loue! *this* lordes ~~has~~ avowede!
 Nowe may lesse mene haue leue to say whatt theme lykes,
 And haue no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynnys *thise* wordez,
 I salle be at journee *with* gentille knyghtes, 372
 On a jamby stede fulle jolyly graythide,
 Or any journee be-gane to juste *with* hym selfene,
 Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and *other*,
 Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, *with* strenghe of myne
 handys, 376

ffor alle *tha* steryne in stour, *that* in his stale houys!
 Be my retenu arayed, I rekke bott a lyttill
 To make rowtte in-to Rome, *with* ryotous knyghtes!
 With-in a seuenyghte daye, *with* sex score helmes, 380

[leaf 37, back]
and to carry the
war into Rome

¹ Or perhaps, lone

I salle be seene on the see, saile whene *the* lykes "

Thane laughs *sir* Lottez, and alle one lowde meles, Sir Lottez laughs for joy,

"Me likez *that sir* Lucius lannes aftyre sorowe ,
Now he wylnez *the* were, hys wanedrethe begynnys, 384

It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders !

I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to *the* holy vernacle,

And I may se *the* Romaynes, *that* are so ryche haldene, and hopes to see the rich Romans in their pomp,
Arayede in *theire* rioten on a rounde felde, 388

I salle at *the* reuerence of *the* Rounde Table

Ryde throughte alle *the* rowtte, rerewarde *and* other,

that he may cut his way through them and shed their blood

Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,

Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez ! 392

He *that* folowes my fare, and fyrste commes aftyre,

Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye ffay leuyde ! "

Thane *the* conquerour kyndly comforthes *these* knyghtes,

Alowes *thame* gretly theire lordly a-vowes,— 396

Then Arthur praises his knights for up holding his honour

"Alweldande Gode wyrchiþe þow alle !

And latte me neuere wantte þow, whylls I in werlde regne ,

My menske and my manhede þe mayntene in erthe,

Myne honour alle vtterly in *othe* kyngys landes , 400

My wele and my wyrchiþe, of alle *this* werlde ryche,

þe haue knyghtly conqueryde, *that* to my coroune langes,

Hym thare be ferde for no faees, *that* swylke a folke ledes,

Bot euer ffresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykes

I acounte no kynge *that* vndyr Criste lyffes, 405

While they remain true to him he fears no king on earth

Whilles I see þowe alle sounde, I sette be no more "

Qwhene they tristly had tetryd, *thay* trumppede vp aftyre, Then the Council breaks up

Descendyd doune *with* a daunce of dukes and erles , 408

Music and dancing succeed,

Thane *they* semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,

Alle *this* semly sorte, wyth semblante fulle noble

and they are all feasted in the hall

Thene the roy realle rehetes thes knyghtys,

Wyth reuerence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table, 412

Tille seuen dayes was gone *the* senatour asks

After seven days the Senator demands his answer for the Emperor

Answer to *the* emperour *with* austeryne wordez

Aftyre *the* Epiphanye, whene *the* purpos was takyne

Of peris of *the parlement*, *prelates* and *other*. 416
 The kyng in his concelle, curtaise and noble,
 Vtters *the alenes*, and ansuers hym *seluene* —
 Then Arthur bids him greet Lucius and tell him that he shall quickly see him in his country,
 “Gret wele Lucius, thi lorde, and layne noghte *thuse*
 wordes ,
 Ife *thow* be lygmane¹ lele, late hym wiet sone 420
 I salle at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large
 In delitte in his lanndez, wyth lordes ynewe,
 Regne in my realtee, and ryste whene me lykes,
 By *the* reyuer of Reone halde my Rounde Table, 424
 ffanngge the fermes in faithe² of alle *tha* faire rewmes,
 ffor alle *the* manace of hys myghte, and mawgree his
 egghne !
 [leaf 58] And merke sythens ouer the mounttez in-to his mayne
 londez, 427
 and mine down the walls of Milan,
 To Meloyne the meruaylous, and myne doun the walles,
 In Lorrayne ne in Lumberdye lefe schalle I nowthire
 Nokyne lede appone liffe, *that thare* his lawes zemes ,
 And turne in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,
 Ryde alle *thas* rowme landes wyth ryotous knyghttes ,
 Byde hy[m] make reschewes foremenske of hymeseluen,
 And mette me fore his manhede in *thase* mayne landes !
 he will be found in France on the first of February,
 I salle be foundyne in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,
 The fyrste daye of *Feuerzere*, in *thas* faire marches ! 436
 Are I be fechyde³ wyth *force*, or *foufette* my landes,
 The flour of his faire folke fulle fay salle be leuyde !
 I salle hym sekryly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,
 and before seven winters are gone besiege Rome,
 To seege *the* cete of Rome wyth-in seuene wyntyre, 440
 And that so sekerly ensege apon sere halves,
 and many a senator shall rue his wrath
 That many a senator salle syghe for sake of me one !
 My sommons er certifiede and *thow* arte fulle sernyde
 The messenger may depart as soon as he pleases.
 Of cundit and credense, kayre where the lykes : 444
 I salle thi journaye engyste, enjoyne theme my seluene,
 ffor this place to *the* porte, there *thou* salle passe ouer ,
 He must travel to Sandwich in seven daye,
 Seuene dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,
 Sixty myle on a daye, *the somme* es bott lyttlle ! 448

¹ Or leygmane² Or, fatthe

Thowe moste spede ~~at the~~ spurs, and spare noghte thi fole,

Thow weynde by Watlyng-strette, and by no waye elles

Thare thow nyghttes one nyghte, nede moste *thou* lenge,

Be it foreste or felde, found *thou* no forthire , 452

Bynde thy blonke by a buske *with* thy brydille euene,

Lugge *thi* selfe vndyre lynde, as *the* leefe thynkes,

There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghttys,

With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene 456

Thy lycence es lemete in presence of lordys,

Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as *the* thynkes,

For bothe *thi* lyffe and *thi* lyme lygges *ther*-appone,

Thofe *sir* Lucius had laide *the* lordchipe of Rome , 460

ffor be *thow* foundene a fute *with*-owte *the* flode merkes,

Aftr *the* aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,

Thou salle be heuedede in lye, *and with* horse drawene,

And seyne heyly be hangede, houndes to gnawene ' 464

The rente ne rede golde, *that* vn-to Rome langes,

Salle noghte redily, renke, raunsone thyne one ! "

"Sir," sais *the* senatour, " so Crist mot me helpe !

Might I *with* wircchipe wyne awaye ones, 468

I sulde neuer fore emperour, *that* on erthe langes,

Efte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys ,

Bot I am sengilly here, *with* sex sum of knyghtes ,

I be-seke *zow*, *sir*, that we may sounde passe 472

If any vnlawefulle lede lette vs by *the* waye,

With-in thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyrede "

"Care noghte," *quod* the kyng, "thy coundyte es

knawene

fro Carlelele to *the* coste, there thy cogge lengges , 476

Thoghe thy cofers ware fulle, cramede *with* syluer,

Thow myghte be sekrye of my sele sixty myle forthire "

They enchned to *the* kyng, and counge *thay* askede,

Cayers owtt of Carelele, *catchez* one theire horsez , 480

Sir Cadore *the* curtayes kende theme the wayes,

To Catrike theme cunvayede, *and* to Crist theme

bekennyde

So *they* spede at *the* spoures, *they* sprangene theire horses,

going by Wat-
ling street,
stopping at night
wherever he may
chance to be,
tying his horse
to a bush by the
bridle.

If after undern
of the eighth day
he is found in the
country, he shall
be hanged up for
dogs to gnaw

Then the Senator
declares that if
he could only get
well away once
he would never
again go on such
an errand

He prays that his
retinue may be
protected on their
way

[leaf 58, back]

Then Arthur tells
him that if his
coffers were
crammed full of
silver he would
be safe with his
passport.

Then the Romans
depart with all
speed.

- Hyres *theme* hakenayes hastily *there* aftyre , 484
 So fore reddour *they* redene, and risted *theme* neuē,
 Bot 3if they luggede vndire lynd, whills *theme* lyghte
 failede ,
 Bot euere *the* senatour for-sothe soghte at *the* gayneste
 By *the* seuende day was gone *the* cetee *that* rechide , 488
 Of alle *the* glee vndire Gode so glade ware *they* neuēe,
 As of *the* sounde of *the* see and Sandwyche belles '
 Wythowttyne more stownntyngs they schippide *theire*
 horsez,
 Wery to *the* wane see *they* went alle att ones , 492
 With *the* mene of *the* walle they weyde vp *theire* ankysr,
 And fleede at *the* fore flude, in Flaundiez *they* rowede,
 And thorughe Flaundres *they* founde, as *theme* faire
 thoghte,¹
 Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes , 496
 Gosse by *the* Mount Goddarde fulle greuous wayes,
 And so in-to Lumberddye, lykande to schewe ,
 They turne thurghe Tuskayne, with towres fulle heghe,
 In pris apparelles *theme* in precious wedez , 500
 The Sonondaye in suters *that* suggourne *theire* horsez,
 And sekis *the* Seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes ,
 Sythyne prekes to *the* pales with portes so ryche,
 Thare sir Lucius lenges with lordes enowe , 504
 Lowttes to hym luffy, and lettres hym bedes
 Of credence enclosyde, with knyghtlyche wordes
 Thens *the* emperour was egree, and enkerly fraynes,
 The answeere of Arthure he askes hymne sone, 508
 How he arayes *the* rewme, and rewlys *the* pople ,
 3if he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte *that* he claymes
 "Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, and syttyne aboune,
 ffore reuerence and realtee of Rome *the* noble 512
 By sertes *thow* was my sandes, and senatour of Rome,
 He sulde fore solempnitee hafe seruuede *the* hym seluene "
- ¹ *hkyde* struck out, and *thoghte* written instead by the same hand

and never rest till
they reach Sand
wich by the time
prescribed.

Never were they
so glad of any
thing as of the
sound of the sea
and Sandwich
bells

They cross the
sea to Flanders,

and over Mount
St Gothard into
Lombardy,

through Tuscany
to Rome

Then the Senator
seeks an audience
with the Emperor
Lucius,

who asks eagerly
for Arthur's an-
swer, and on what
ground he resists
the power of
Rome

His ambassador
ought to have
seized his sceptre
and sat above
him
Arthur, he says,
ought himself to
have served the
Senator

"That wille he neuer for no waye¹ of alle *this* werlde
 ryche, 515 Then answers the
Senator, that Ar
thur is too great
to do that for
any one
 Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of
 handes,
 Many fey schalle be fyrste appone *the* felde leuyde,
 Are he appere in this place, profre whene *the* likes
 I saye the, *sw*, Arthure es thyne enmye fore euer, 519 He claims no less
than the Emper
or of Rome
 And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of *the* empyre of Rome,
 That alle his ancestres aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe [leaf 59]
 Thy nedes this newe jere, I notifiede my selfene,
 I Be-fore *that* noble of name *and* neynesome of kynges,²
 In the moste reale place of *the* Rounde Table, 524 He tells the Em-
peror how he
had delivered his
message,
and that he was
never so fright-
ened since he was
born
 Isomounde hym solempnylye, one-seeande his knyghtez,
 Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,
 In alle *the* placez ther I passede of pryncez in erthe!
 I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnourry of Rome,
 Or I este to *that* soueraygne whare sente onesuyche nedes!
 He may be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle *othe*r, 530 Arthur is worthy
to be king of men
for his wisdom
and valour
 Bathe be chauncez of armes and cheuallrye noble,
 fforwhyseste, *and* worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndez
 Of alle the wyes *thate* I watte in this werlde ryche,
 The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,
 Of kyng or of conquerour, crownede in erthe,
 Of countenaunce, of corage, of crewelle lates, 536
 The comlyeste of knyghtehode *that* vndyre Cryste lyffes!
 He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,
 That no more of golde gyffes *thane* of grette stones,
 No more of wyne *thane* of watyre, *that* of *the* welle rynnys,
 Ne of welthe of *this* werlde bot wyrchipe allone 541 To him gold and
silver are as no
thing,
and wine no more
than water
 Syche contenaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,
 As was *with that* conquerour in his courte haldene,
 I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kynges enoyntede,
 Hole tene at his table, *that* tyme *with* hym selfene,
 He wylle werraye i-wysse, be ware 3if *the* lykes, 546 Ten kyngs amount-
ed feast at his
table
 Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

¹ ? wye.² Substituted for *knyghtez*

Good need is
there of zealous
preparation,

and that soldiers
should be dis-
patched to the
mountains forth
with

"By Easter,"
says the Emperour,
"I undertake to
be in Germany
with an army,

and will send
many gants and
mighty men to
meet him in the
mountains

A watch tower
shall be reared on
Mount St Goth-
ard, with a beacon
ready to light,

and another on
Mount St
[leaf 59, back]
Bernard

He shall not be
suffered to enter
Pavia."

Then Lucius
sends letters into
the East,

to demand aid of
all the kings and
lords.
Quickly they all
come, for fear of
his might

That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne,
ffor ȝife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere!

Irede *thow* dresce the *thei*-fore, and drawe no lyttel angere,
Be sekyre of *thi* sowdeours, and sende to *the* mowntes,
Be *the* *quartere* of *this* ȝere, and hym *quarte* stannde,
He wyll wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye" 553

"Be *Estyre*," says *the* emperour, "I ettylle my selfene,
To hostaye in Almayne with armede knyghtez,
Sende freklye in-to Fiaunce, *that* *flou* es of rewmes,
ffande to fette *that* freke, and forfette his landez, 557
ffor I salle sette kepers, fulle couaunde and noble,

Many geaunte of geene, justers fulle gude,
To mete hym in the mountes, and martyre hys knyghtes,
Stryke *theme* doune in strates, and struye *theme* fore euere,
There salle appone Godarde a garette be rerede, 562
That schalle be garneschte and kepyde with gude mene
of armes,

And a bekynne abouezn to brynne whene *theme* lykys,
That nane enmye with hoste salle entre the mountes,
There schalle one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede another, 567
Buschede with banerettes and bachelers noble

In at the portes of Pavye schalle no prynce passe,
Thurgh the *perelous* places, for my pris knyghtes"

Thane *sir* Lucius lordlyche *lettres* he sendys
To onone in-to *the* Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez,
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke, 572
To Inde and to Ermony, as Ewfrates rynnys,
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope *the* large,
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle *thase* owte ilez,
To Arraby and Egipt, tille erles and *othei*, 576
That any erthe occupyes in *thase* este marches

Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and eiles,
ffor drede of his daungere they dresside *theme* sone,
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys 580
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones,
To Tartary and Turkey, whene tythynngez es comene,
Thy *turne* in by Thebay, terauntez fulle hugge,

The flour of the faire folke, of Amazonnes landes , 584
 Alle thate ffailez on the felde be forfeite fore euere !
 Of Babyloyn and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes,
 Bayous with theire baronage bydez no langere ,
 Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and Preter Iohne landes, 588
 Iche prynce with his powere appertlyche graythede ,
 The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes,
 ffra Nylus to Nazareth, nommers fulle huge ,
 To Garyere and to Galelé they gedyre alle at ones , 592
 The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome,
 They gadyrede ouer the Grekkes See with greuous wapyns,
 In theire grete galays, wyth glete ande schelde ,
 The kyng of Cyprys one the see the Sowdane habydes,
 With alle the realles of Roodes, arayed with hyme one ,
 They sailede with a syde wynde oure the salte strandez
 Sodaynly the Sarezenes, as theme selfe lykede,
 Craftyly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede, 600
 ffra the ceté of Rome sexti myle large
 Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,
 The myghtyeste of Macedone, with mene of the marches,
 Pulle and Pruyslande presses with other, 604
 The lege-mene of Lettow with legyons ynewe
 Thus they semble in sortes, summes fulle huge,
 Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes,
 The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges, 608
 At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones
 Thane yschewes the emperour armede at ryghtys,
 Arayed with his Romaynes appone ryche stedys ,
 Sixty geauntes be-fore, engenderde with fendez, 612
 With weches and warlaws to wacchene his tentys,
 Ay-ware whare he wendes, wyntrez and zeres
 Myghte no blonkes theme bere, thos bustous churles,
 Bot couer de camellez of tourse, enclosyde in maylez ,
 He ayerez oute with alyenez, ostes fulle huge, 617
 Ewyne in-to Almayne, that Arthure hade wonnyne ,
 Rydes in by the ryuere, and ryottez hyme seluene,
 And ayerez with a huge wylle alle thes hye landez , 620

All that fail are
to forfeit their
lands

From all the East
they come sailing
across the Greek
Sea in their
mighty ships
armed for war,

and assembled at
Corneto, sixty
miles from Rome

There were of
Greeks a vast
number, and men
of Italy, with
Saracens from
many lands

Then goes forth
the emperor with
his knights,

headed by
sixty giants
Witches and war-
locks watch his
tents,

[leaf 60]
No horse might
carry these churls.
They ride upon
camels bearing
towers

The emperor
marches into
Germany

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykys,
 Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez,
 In the contré of Colome¹ castelles enseggez, 623
 And suggeournez *that* sesons wyth Sarazencs ynewe

Meanwhile Ar-
 thur commands
 his knyghts to
 gather their
 forces, and to be
 ready to meet
 him

At the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene
 In his kydde councelle commande *the* lordes,—
 “Kayer to *your* cuntrez, and semble *your* knyghtes,
 And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arayede, 628
 Byddez me at Bareflete apone *tha* blythe stremes,
 Baldly *with-in* borde *with* *your* beste beryns,
 I schalle menskfully *your* mete in thos faire marches”
 He sendez furthe sodaynly *sergeantes* of arnes, 632

The fleet assem-
 bles at Sandwich

To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schuppys,
 Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assemblode,
 At Sandwyche on *the* see, saile whene hym lykys

He holds a par-
 liament at York,

In the palez of *Forke* a parlement he haldez, 636
 With alle *the* peiez of *the* rewme, prelates and *other*,
 And aftyre *the* prechyng in presence of lordes,
 The kyng in his concelle carpys *thes* wordes,—
 “I am in purpos to passe *perilous* wayes, 640

and appoints as
 viceroy Sir Mor-
 dred, his nephew.

To kaire *with* my kene mene, to conquere *your* landes,
 To owttiaye myne enmy, *if* auenture it schewe,
 That occupyes myne heritage, *the* empyre of Rome
 I sett *your* here a soueraynge, ascente *if* *your* lykys,
 Thates mesybb, my systersone, Sir Mordrede hym seluene,
 Salle be my leutenante, *with* lordchipez ynewe, 646
 Of alle my lele lege-mene, *that* my landez zemes.”

He bids him take
 care of Queen
 Guinever,

He carpes tille his cosynethane, in counsaile hym seluene,—
 “I make the kepare, *sir* knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,
 Wardayne wyrchipfulle, to welde al my landes, 650
 That I haue wonnene of werre, in alle *this* werlde ryche,
 I wyll *that* Waynour, my weife, in wyrchipe be holdene,
 That hire wantte noo wele, ne welthe *that* hire lykys,
 Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arrayede, 654

and of his castles
 and foreste,

There cho maye suggourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche
 berynes

¹ Or Colone.

ffinde my fforestez be ffrythede, o frenchepe for euee,
 That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynow hir seluene, The queen alone
is allowed to hunt
in his absence
 And *that* in *the* sesone whene grees es assignyde, 658
 That cho take hir solauce in certayne tymms
 Chauncelere and chambyrleyne chaunge as *the* lykes,
 Audytours and offycers ordayne thy seluene,— 661 All officers are
to be completely
under his com-
mand
 Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,
 Luke thow justyfy theme wele that injurye wyrkes [leaf 60, back]
 If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle, 664
 I charge the my sektour, cheffe of alle *other*, Arthur makes
Mordred his
executor
 To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,
 To mendynantez ¹ and mysese in myschefe fallene
 Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge, 668
 As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me neuer ¹ He bids him be
faithful to his
trust,
 As *thow* wille answere be-fore the austeryne jugge,
 That alle *this* werlde wynly wysse as hym lykes,
 Luke *that* my laste wylle be lelely *perfour* nede ¹ 672
 Thow has clenly *the* cure that to my coroune langez,
 Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke,
 Luke *thowe* kepe the so clere, there be no cause fondene,
 Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole, 676
 And thow haue grace gudly to gouerne thy seluene,
 I salle coioune *the*, knyghte, kyng with my handez "
Than *ser* Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,
 Knolyd to *the* conquerour, and carpes *thuse* wordez,—
 "I be-seke 3ow, *ser*, as my sybbe lorde, 681 But Mordred de-
sires to be ex-
cused,
 That 3e wille for charyté cheese 3ow a-nother,
 ffor if 3e putte me in *this* plytte, 3owré poplees dyssauiye,
 To p^resente a prynce astate my powere es symple 684
 Whene *other* of werre wysse are wyrchypide here-aftyre,
 Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttulle
 To passe in 3ow p^resance my purpos es takyne,
 And alle my purueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez "
 "Thowe arte my neuewe fulle nere, my *nurree* of olde,
 That I haue chastyede and chosene, a childe of my
 chambyre ; 690 and would rather
go to the war
 But Arthur bids
him, as his near-
est of kin, to
undertake the
office

¹ MS *mendynantez*

ffor the sybredyne of me, fore-sake noghte *this* offyce
That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow watte whatte¹ it
menes "

Then Arthur
takes leave of
his queen

Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere, 693
At lordez, at lege-mene, *that* leues hyme by-hyndene
And seyne *that* worthilyche wy went in-to chambyre,
ffor to comfurthe *the* qwene, *that* in care lenges, 696
Waynour waykly wepande hym kyssiz,
Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynewe,—

Guinever laments
his departure,

"I may wery the wye, thatt this werie mouede,
That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde, 700
Alle my lykyng of lyfe owte of lande wendez,
And I in langour am lefte, leue 3e for eue'e "

and would rather
die in his arms

Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in *your* aimes, 703
Are I *this* destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one "

But Arthur bids
her not to grieve,

"Grefe *the* noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,
Ne gruche noghte my ganggyng, it salle to gude turne!
Thy wonrydez and thy wepyng woundez myne herte,
I may noghte wit of *this* woo, for alle *this* werlde ryche,
I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyne awene, 709

and tells her that
he has made Mordred,
a knight of her own,
his deputy

Ouerlyng of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,
And thates *sir* Mordrede, *that* *thow* has mekyll *praysede*,
Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes "

[leaf 61]

Then he kisses
the ladies, and
takes leave of
them.
But Guinever
swoons when he
asks for his
sword.

Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre, 713
Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-tches,
And then cho swounes fulle swythe, whe[n] he hys
swerde aschede,

The king then
departs hastily
with his knights

Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde ! 716
He pressed to his palfray, in *presance* of lordes,
Prekys of the palez with his prys knyghtes,
Wyth a realle rowte of *the* Rounde Table, 719

At Sandwich all
the lords and
their followers
assemble

Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hyme no more !
Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,
Garneschit one *the* grene felde and graythelyche arayede,
Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,
Erlez of Ynglande with archers ynewe . 724

¹ MS whatte watte.

Schirreues scharply schiftys the comouns,
 Rewlys be-fore *the* ryche of the Rounde Table,
 Assingnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes, 727
 In the southe one *the* see banke saile whene *theme* lykes
 Thane bargez *theme* buskez, and to *the* bannke rowes,
 Bryngez blonkez one bourde, and bullyche helmes, Horses, arms,
tents, and other
things are
shipped
 Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,
 Tentez,¹ and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche, 732
 Cabanes, *and* clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble,
 Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez,
 Thus they stowe *in* the stuffe of fulle steryne knyghtez
 Qwene alle was schyppede that scholde, they schounte
 no lengere, 736
 Bot ventelde *theme* tyte, as *the* tyde rynnez,
 Coggez and crayers *than* crossez *thaire* mastez,
 At the commandment of *the* kyng, vncouerde at ones
 Wyghtly one *the* wale *thay* wye vp *thaire* ankers, 740
 By wytt of *the* watyre-mene of *the* wale ythez,
 ffrekes one *the* forestayne fakene *theire* coblez,
 In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,
 Tytt saillez to *the* toppe, and turnez *the* lufe, 744
 Standez appone stere-bourde, sterynty *thay* songene,
 The pryce schippeze of the porte prouene *theire* depnesse,
 And fondez wyth fulle saile ower *the* fawe ythez,
 Holly *with*-owttyne harme *thay* hale in bottles, 748
 Schipe-mene scharply schotene *thaire* portez,
 Launchez lede apone lufe, lacchene *thei* depez,
 Lukkes to *the* lade-sterne, whene *the* lyghte faillez,
 Castez coursez be crafte, whene *the* clowde rysez, 752
With *the* nedylle and *the* stone one *the* nyghte tydez,
 ffor drede of *the* derke nyghte *thay* drecchede a lyttille,
 And alle *the* steryne of *the* streme strekyne at onez
 The kyng was in a gret cogge, *with* knyghtez fulle many,
 In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayed, 757
With-in on a ryche bedde rystys a littyll,
 And *with* *the* swoghe of *the* see in swefnyng he felle
Then the ships
at the word of
command cross
their yards,
weigh their an
chors,
the well skilled
sailors hoist the
sails and steer the
vessels
Then they haul
in the boats shut
the ports, heave
the lead, look well
to the guiding
star, and skil
fully shape their
course with the
needle and the
stone
After a little de
lay on account of
darkness, they all
sail at once.
The king is in a
large vessel with
many knights
Resting himself
in his cabin, he
falls asleep,

¹ Or teinttez

and dreams of a dreadful dragon
 [leaf 61, back]
 His head and neck are blue,
 his shoulders covered with silver scales,
 his belly and wings of various hues,
 his feet are black, and out of his mouth comes fire
 Then comes against the dragon a fierce black bear,
 with huge paws and poisonous claws,
 his shapen legs, and foaming his
 He prepares to fight
 roaring and raging for the strife
 Then the dragon assails him,
 fighting like a falcon with beak and claws
 The bear bites him with baleful teeth, and causes the blood to flow
 He had killed the dragon but for

Hym dreamyd of a dragone, dredfullc to be-holde, 760
 Come dryfande ouer *the* depe to dienschene hys pople,
 Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez,
 Wanderaunde vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez,
 Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely alle ouer 764
 Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire
 His scoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluer,
 Schreede ouer alle *the* schrympe *with* schunkande poyntez,
 Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes, 768
 In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye,
 Whayme *that* he towchede he was tynt for euer!
 Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabyll,
 And syche a vennyymous flayre flowe fro his lyppez
 That the flode of *the* flawez alle one fyre semyde! 773
 Thane come of *the* Oryente, ewyne hyme agayne,
 A blake bustous bere abwene in the clowdes,
 With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,
 With pykes fulle perlous, alle plyande *thane* semyde,
 Lothene and lothely, lokkes and othel,
 Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,
 filtyrde vnfrely, wyth fomannde lypepez, 780
 The foulleste of fegure that fourmede was euer!
 He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundyschte *ther*-after,
 To bataile he bounnez hym with bustous clowez
 He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle *the* erthe! 784
 So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene!
 Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme a-zayne,
 And with hys dutez hym drafe one dreghe by *the* walkyne
 He fares as a fawcone, frekly he strykez, 788
 Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghtitys at ones!
 The bere in the bataile *the* bygger hym semyde,
 And byttes hyme holdlye wyth balefulle tuskez,
 Syche buffetez he hym rechez with hys brode klokes,
 Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer! 793
 He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle *the* erthe ryfez,
 Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of *the* heuene!
 He hade weryede the woime by wyghtnesse of strenghte,

Newareit fore *the* wylde fyre *that* he hyme wyth defendez

the fire which he
breathes

Thane wandrys *the* woime awaye to hys heghttez,

Commes glydande fro *the* clowddez, and cowpez fulle
eueue, 799

Then the dragon
flies aloft, and
comes swooping
down,

Towchez hym wyth his talounez, and terez hys rigge,

Be-twyx *the* taile and the toppe tene fote large !

tearing a vast
rent in the back
of the bear,

Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe,

Lette hyme falle in the fode, fleete whare hyme lykys

and lets him drop
into the water

So they brynge *the* bolde kyng bynne *the* schippe-burde,

That nere he bristez for bale, one bede whare he lyggez

Thane waknez *the* wyese kyng, wery fore-trauaillede,

Then Arthur
awaking is
[leaf 62]
troubled at the
dream, and sends
for his two philo-
sophers, men very
learned in the
seven sciences

Takes hyme two phylosophurs, that folowede hyme euer,

In the seuyne scyence the suteleste fondene, 808

The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyre Criste knowene,

He tolde *theme* of hys tourmente, *that* tyme *that* he
slepede,

“Drechede *with* a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,

Has mad me fulle wery, 3e telle me my swefene, 812

Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde !”

“Sir,” saide *they* sone thane, thus sagge philosopherse,

These wise men
tell him that by
the dragon is
meant himself

“The dragone *that* how dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe,

That come dryfande ouer *the* deepe, to drynchen *the* pople,

Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es, 817

That thus saillez ouer *the* see *with* thy sekyre knyghtez

The colurez *that* ware castyne appone his clere wengez,

May be thy kyngrykezalle, *that* how has ryghte wonnyne,

And the tachesesede taile, *with* tonges so huge, 821

Be-takyns *thus* faire folke, *that* in thy fleet wendez

The bere *that* bryttenede was abowene in *the* clowdez,

The bear signi-
fies the tyrants
who torment his
people, or else
some giant whom
Arthur is des-
tined to over-
throw in battle

Be-takyns the tyrauntez *that* tourmentez thy pople,

Or elles *with* somme gyaunt some journee salle happyne,

In syngulere batelle by 3oure selfe one,

And *thow* salle hafe *the* victorye thurgh the helpe of oure

Lorde,

As *thow* in thy visione was opynly schewede ! 828

Of this dredfulle dreame ne drede the no more,

Ne kare noghte, *si* conquerow, bot comforth thy seluene,

Arthur is exhort-
ed to be of good
courage

And thise *that* saillez oue*re* the see, with thy sekyre
knyghtez "

With trumpppez thene trustly, they tuisene vpe thaire
saillez, 832

They speed on
their way, and ar-
rive on the coast
of Normandy
At Barflete they
find a fleet of
friends,

the flower of fif-
teen realms

And rowes oue*re* the ryche see, this rowtte alle at once ,
The comely coste of Normandye they cachene fulle euene,
And blythely at Barflete theis bokle are airyfede,
And fyndys a flete there of fiendez ynewe, 836
The floure and the faire folke of fyftene rewmez ,
ffore kynges and capytajnez kepyde hyme fayre,
As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym
seluene 839

When they had
disembarked and
pitched their
tents a Templar
comes to the
king,

and tells him of
a ferocious knight
who feeds upon
men and chil-
dren,

Be they had taken the lande, and tencez vpe ierde,
Comez¹ a templere tyte, and towchide to the kyng—
"Here es a tesaunt be-syde that tourmentez thi people,
A grett geaunte of geene, engendered of funder ,
He has fretyne of folke mo thane fyfe hondretre, 844
And als fele fawntekyns of freborne chuldre !
This has bene his sustynaunce alle this seuene wyntte*re* es,
And zitt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hyme it lykez !
In the contree of Constantyne no kynde has he leuede,
With-owttyne kydd castelles enclosid wyth walles, 849
That he ne has clenly dystroyede alle the knaue chuldre,
And theme caryede to the cragge, and clenly deworyde !

and who had that
day captured the
[leaf 62 back]
Duchess of Brit-
tany, and carried
her to the
mountain.

The duchez of Bretayne to daye has he takyne, 852
Be-side Reynes as scho rade with hire ryche knyghttes,
Ledd hyre to the mountayne, thare that lede lengez,
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez
We folowede o ferrome moo thene fyfe hundrethe, 856
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,
Bot he couerde the cragge , cho cryede so lowde,
The care of that creatoure couer salle I neuer !
Scho was flou*re* of alle Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes, 860
And one of the fayreste that fourmede was euere,
The gentileste jowelle a-juggede with lordes,
ffro Geene vn-to Gerone, by Ihesu of heuene !

She was the
flower of all
France
and the fairest
lady on earth,

Scho was thy wyfes cosyne, knowe it if *the* lykez, 864 cousin of Ar
thui s queen
Comene of *the* rycheeste, that *rengnez* in erthe
As thow arte ryghtwise kynges rewe on thy pople,
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde !”

“ Allas ! ” sais sir Arthure, “ so lange haue I lyffede, Then Sir Arthur
bitterly laments
her fate,
Hade I wytene of this, wele had me chefe de , 869
Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynede,
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede !

I had leue, e thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,
I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, 873 and wishes he
had been there
to aid her
Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *the* montez
I hadde lefte my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppye !

Bot walde *thow* keneme to *the* crage, thate *that* kenelengez, He desires to
know where the
giant liues,
I walde cayre to *that* coste, and carpe wythe hyme seluene,
To trette with that tyraunt fore tresone of loñdes,¹
And take trewe for a tyme, tille it may tyde bettyre ”

“ Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, with 3one two fyrez, 880 and is directed
by the Templar
how to find his
abode,
Thai filnez² *that* fende, fraiste whene the lykes,

Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,
That enclosez *the* clyfe with *the* clere strandez,
Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owttyne nowmer, where there are
many captives,
Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre , 885
And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne, and vast treasure
stored up
Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, *that tyme that it was wonne* ”

Thane romyez the ryche kynges for rewthe of *the* pople, Then Arthur is
greatly excited
Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ! 889
He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngez hys handez !
There was no wy of *this* werlde, *that* wyste whatt he
menede !

He calles sir Cayous *that of the* cowpe serfede, 892 and bids Sir
Cayous and Sir
Bedevere attend
him at evening,
And sir Bedvere *the* bolde, *that* bare hys brande ryche,—

“ Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez,
On blonkez by 3one buscayle, by 3one blythe stremez,
ffore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre,
In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are seruede, 897 pretending that
he is going on a
pilgrimage
[leaf 63]
ffor to sekene a saynte be 3one salte stremes,

¹ Originally lordez² O, filnez

In seynt Mighelle mounyt, there myraclez are schewede "
 Then Arthur pro- Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hymē se[l]fene 900
 ceeds to dress
 and arm himself, Wente to hys wardrope, and warpe of hys wedez,
 Armede hym in a actone with orfraeez fulle ryche,
 Abouen *that* a jeryne of Acres owte ouer,
 Abouen *that* a jesseraunt of jentylle maylez, 904
 A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schredez,
 He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of syluer,
 The beste *that* was in Basille, wyth bordurs 1yche,
 The creste and *the* coronalle, enclosed so faire 908
 Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched wyth stones,
 The vesare, *the* aventaille, enarmede so faire,
 Voyde with-owttyne vice, with wyndowes of syluer,
 His gloues gaylyche galte, and grauene at *the* hemmez,
 With *grayuez* and gobelets, glorious of hewe, 913
 He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,
 and mounting a Bounede hymē a broune stede, and one *the* bente houys,
 brown steed, rides He sterte tille his sterepe and strdez one lofte, 916
 to the spot where
 his knights await
 him Streynez hymē stowttly, and sterys hymē faire,
 Brochez *the* baye stede, and to *the* buske rydez,
 And there hys knyghtes hymē kepede fulle clenlyche
 arayed
 Thane theyroode by *that* ryuer, *that* rynnyd so swythe,
 There is a grove Thare *the* ryndez ouerrechez with realle bowghez, 921
 by the side of the
 river full of game
 and decked with
 flowers The roo and *the* rayne-dere reklesse thare romnene,
 In ranez and in rosers to ryotte *thame* seluene,
 The fnthez ware floreschte with flourez fulle many,
 Wyth fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewez, 925
 Here all birds
 abound, Alle *the* feulez thare fleschez, that flyez with wengez,
 fore thare galede *the* gowke one greuez fulle lowde,
 Wyth alkyne gladchipe *thay* gladdene *thame* seluene
 and nightingales Of *the* nyghtgale notez *the* noizez was swette, 929
 make sweet
 music They threpe wyth the throstilles, thre hundreth at ones!
 That whate swowyngē of watyre, and syngyngē of byrdez,
 It myghte salue hymē of sore, *that* sounde was neuere!
 Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez, 933
 Here they leave
 their horses, and ffestenez there faire stedez o ferrome by-tweñe,

And thene the kyng kenely comandyde hys knyghtez
 ffor to byde *with* theare blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—
 “ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one, 937
 And melle *with* this mayster mane, *that* this monte zemez,
 And seyne salle 3e offyre, aythyre aftyre *other*,
 Menskfully at Saynt Mighelle fulle myghtty *with* Criste!”

the king bids his
 knights to await
 his return

The kyng coueris *the* cragge wyth cloughes fulle hye,
 To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte,
 Keste vpe hys vmbrere, and kenly he lukes, 943
 Caughte of *the* colde wynde to comforthe hym seluene,
 Two fyrez he fyndez flawmande fulle hye,

The king alone
 ascends the
 [leaf 63, back]
 mountain,

The fourtedele a furlange be-twene *thus* he walkes,
 The waye by *the* welthe strandez he wandyrde hyme one,
 To wette of *the* warlawe, whare *that* he lengez, 948
 He ferkez to *the* fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez
 A wery wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez,
 And gretande on a graue grysely teres,
 Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede 952
 He saluzede *that* sorowfulle *with* sittande wordez,
 And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre.

and going to a
 fire which he sees
 he finds a woeful
 widow wringing
 her hands

Thane this wafulle wyfe vū-wynly hym gretez,
 Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez;
 Said, “carefulle caremane, thow carpez to lowde! 957
 May 3one warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle!
 Weryd worthe *the* wyghte ay, that *the* thy wytt refede,
 That mase the to wayfe here in *thise* wylde lakes! 960
 I warne *the* fore wyrchiþe, *thou* wynlez aftyr sorowe!
 Whedyre buskes *thou* berne? vnblysside *thow* semes!
 Wenez thow to brittene hyme *with* thy brande ryche?
 Ware thow wyghttere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,
 Thow wynnys no wyrchiþe, I warne the be-fore! 965
 Thow saynned the vnsekryly to seke to *these* mountez,
 Siche sex ware to symple to semble *with* hyme one,
 ffor and thow see hyme *with* syghte, the seruez no herte,
 To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge! 969

He asks her con-
 cerning the giant.

She answers with
 terror, and warns
 him that he can
 not hope to con-
 tend with so ter-
 rible a monster.

Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,
 Bot thow arte fay be my faythe, and *that* me for-thynnkys!

Fifty such as Ar-
thur he could fell
with his fist.

The poor duchess
has been ravished
and murdered by
him, and the dole-
ful widow, her
foster mother,
has buried her,

and will remain
there till death to
bemoan her

[leaf 64]
Then Arthur says
that he comes
from the great
King Arthur on
a mission to
treat with the
giant

The old wife tells
him that he cares
nothing for laws
or treaties, that
he regards not
gold or treasure,

only he has a
famous kirtle
covered with hair,

which is bordered
with the beards
of mighty kings

The tribute of
fifteen realms is
sent to him on
each Easter-eve

Ware syche fyfty one a felde, or one a fane erthe, 972
The freke walde with hys fyfte felle þow at ones !

Loo ! here the duchess dere,—to daye was cho takyne,—
Depe doliene and dede, dyked in moldez, 975
He hade morthurede this mylde be myddaye war rongene,
With-owtterne mercy one molde, I not watte it ment
He has forsedde hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede,
He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to the nauylye !
And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede ther-aftyr,
ffor bale of the botelesse, blythe be I neuer ! 981
Of alle the frendez cho hade, there folowede none aftyre,
Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter !

To ferke of this farlande, fande salle I neuer, 984
Bot here be foundene on felde, till I be fay leuede !"

Thane answers sir Arthure to that alde wyf,
"I am comyne fra the conquerour, curtaise and gentille,
As one of the hathelest of Arthur knyghtez, 988
Messenger to this myx, for mendemente of the pople,
To mele with this maister mane, that here this mounte
þemez,

To trete with this tyraunt for tresour of landez,
And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe " 992

"3a, thre wordis are bot waste," quod this wif thane,
"ffor bothe landez and lythes ffulle lyttill by he settes,
Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he neuer, 995
ffor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,
With-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene,

Bot he has a kyrtill one, kepide for hyme seluene,
That was sponene in Spayne with specyalle byrdez,
And sythyne garnescht in Grece ffulle graythly to-gedirs ;
It es hydede alle with hare hally al ouere, 1001

And bordyrde with the berdez of burlyche kynges,
Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe
Iche kyng by his colour, in kythe there he lengez,
Here the fermiez he fangez of fyftene rewmez, 1005

ffor ilke Esterne ewyne, how-euer that it falle,
They send it hyme sothely for saughte of the pople,

Sekerly at *that* sesone with certayne knyghtez, 1008

And he has aschede Arthure alle *this* seuene wyntter
ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owtraye hys pople,

He has long
wished for the
beard of Arthur

Tille *the* Bretones kyngs haue burneschte his lyppys,
And sent his berde to that bolde wyth his beste berynes,
Bot thowe hafe broghte *that* berde, bowne the no forthire,
ffor it es butelesse bale, thowe biddez oghte elles, 1014

ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,
Thane euere aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders,

If thowe hafe broghte *the* berde, he bese more blythe
Thane *thowe* gafe hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne *the* more,

If he has brought
the beard, the
giant will be
blithe

Bot luke nowe for chartee, *thow* chasty thy lyppes,
That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez, 1020

But he must ap-
proach him with
due caution,

Luke *thi* presante be priste, and presse hym bott lytalle,
ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be sone greuyde

And *thow* my concelle doo, *thow* dosse of thy clothes,
And knele in thy kyrtylle, and calle hym thy lorde

and had better
doff his clothes
and kneel to him

He sowppes alle *this* sesone with seuene knaue childre,
Choppid in a chargour of chalke whytt syluer, 1026

He sups at this
season on seven
male children
chopped in a
charger of chalk-
white silver

With pekille and powdyre of precious spycez,

And pyment fulle plenteuous of Portyngale wynes,
Thre balefulle birdez his brochez *they* turne, 1029

Three wretched
women turn his
spits for him

That byddez his bedgatt, his byddyng to wyrche;

Siche foure scholde be fay *with-in* foure hourez,

Are his fylth ware filled, that his flesch zernes "

[leaf 84, back]

"Ja, I haue broghte *the* berde," quod he, "the bettyre
me lykez, 1033

"Yes," says Ar-
thur, "I have in-
deed brought this
beard, but show
me where I shall
find him "

ffor-thi wille I boune me, and bere it my seluene,

Bot, lefe, walde *thow* lere me whare *that* lede lengez,

I salle alowe *the* and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe "

"fferke fast to *the* fyre," quod cho, "that flawmez so hye,

Then she directs
him to approach
the great fire

Thare fillis *that* fende hyme, fraist whene the lykez,

Bot *thow* moste seke more southe, sydlyngs a lytalle,

ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large " 1040

To *the* sowre of *the* reke he soghte at *the* gayneste,

Sayned hyme sekerly with certeyne wordez,

And sydlyngs of *the* segge the syghte had he rechide,

Arthur goes to
the fire, and finds
the giant lying
extended with
his back to the
fire, picking the
thigh of a man

Roasts of the
flesh of men
and cattle are
spitted together

Then Arthur's
heart bleeds for
the woes inflicted
by this wretch
He fastens on
his shield and
brandishes his
bright sword,

and right boldly
addresses the
giant

He upbraids
him with his vile
crimes and his
unclean meat

For his horrible
murders of Chris-
tian children,

he would now
take vengeance
on him by the
aid of St Michael.

Then the giant
stared with
amazement, and
gnashed his teeth
with fury

How vn-semly *that* sott satt sowpande hym one, 1044
He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faue,
The thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by *the* haunche,
His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,
He bekez by *the* bale-fyre, and breklesse hymme semede,
Thare ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez, 1049
Beerynes and bestaile brochede to geders,
Cowlefulle cramede of crysmede childyre,
Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez *thane* tournede

And *thane* this comlych kyng, by-cause of his pople,
His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez '
Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,
Braundesche his bryghte swerde by *the* bryghte hilter,
Raykez to-warde *the* renke reghte with a ruyde wille,
And hyely haulsez *that* hulke with hawtayne wordez,—

"Now, alle-weldand Gode, *that* wys, bepez vs alle,
Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thou rygges, 1060
ffor the fulsomete freke that fourmede was euere '
ffouly thou fedys the, *the* fende haue thi saule '
Here es cury vn-clene, carle, be my trowthe,
Caffe of creatours alle, thou curssede wriche ' 1064

Be-cause that *thow* killide has *thuse* cresmede childyre,
Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,
That here are brochede one bente, and brittenede with
thi handez, 1067

I salle merke *the* thy mede, as *thou* has myche serfede,
Thurghe myghte of seynt Mighelle, *that* *thus* monte zemes '
And for this faire ladye, *that* *thow* has fey leuyde,
And *thus* forcede one foulde, for fylth of *thi* selfene '
Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the deuelle haue *thi* saule '
ffor *thow* salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez '"

Thane glopnede *the* glotone and glorede vn-faire,
He greznede as a grewhounde, with grysly tuskes,
He gapede, he groned faste, with grucchande latez, 1076
ffor grefe of *the* gude kyng, *that* hymme with grame gretez '
His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,

And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large ,
 His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer, 1080
 As *the felle* of a froske, and fraknede it semede,
 Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hoie berde,
 And herede to *the hole eyghne* with hyngande browes ,
 Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez, 1084
 So was *the hyde of that hulke* hally al ouer !
 Erne had he fulle huge, and vgly to schewe,
 With eghne fulle horrible, and ardaunt for sothe ,
 flatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fieryande lypmys, 1088
 And *the flesche* in his fortethe fowly as a bere
 His berde was brothy and blake, *that tille* his brest
 rechede,
 Grassede as a mereswyne with corkes fulle huge,
 And alle falterde *the flesche* in his foule lypmys, 1092
 Ilke wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones !
 Bullenekkyde was *that bierne*, and brade in the scholders,
 Brok-brestede as a brawne, with Brustils fulle large,
 Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes, 1096
 Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue 3e for sothe
 Schouelle-fotede was *that schalke*, and schaylande hyme
 semyde,
 With schankez vn-schapy, schowande to-gedyrs ,
 Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in *the hanche*,
 Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez ! 1101
 Who *the lenghe of the lede lelly* accountes,
 fro *the face to the fote*, was fyfe fadome lange !
 Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styffe schankez,
 And sone he caughte hyme a clubb alle of clene yryne !
 He walde hafe kyllede *the kyng* with his kene wapene,
 Bot thurgh *the crafte of Cryste* 3it *the carle* failede ,
 The creest and *the coronalle*, *the claspes of syluer*, 1108
 Clenly with his clubb he crasschede doune at onez !
 The kyng castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire,
 And with his burlyche brande a box he hyme reches ;
 fulle butt in *the frunt the fromonde* he hittez, 1112

Out of his mouth
came smoke

His forehead was
like the fell of a
frog

He was hook-
nosed like a
[leaf 65]
hawk, with hair
up to his eyes, and
beetle brows

His skin was hard
as that of a dog-
fish, his ears
huge and ugly
his eyes horrible
and burning

Flat mouthed,
with grinning
lips, and jaws
like a bear

A black beard
reached to his
breast, with
mighty bistles

The flesh of his
lips was in un-
even folds, each
fold, like an out-
law, twisted it
self out

He was bull
necked and broad
in the shoulders,
breasted like a
boar with huge
bristles, his arms
like an oak, his
limbs and flanks
loathly, shovel
footed and scaly,
with unshapely
shanks,

of gigantic thick-
ness in his
haunches

In height, full
five fathoms

Up starts this
fell giant, and
seizing an iron
club, aims a blow
at Arthur.

The king catches
it on his shield,
and returns the
blow with his
sword right upon
the forehead

The bright blade
pierces to the
brain
The giant wipes
his face with his
hands, and strikes
fiercely at the
king
Arthur draws
back,

and then drives
his sword into the
giant's haunch

The monster
roars and strikes
at random
So mighty is his
stroke that it
pene rates a
sword's length
into the ground
The king nearly
swoons at the
noise of the blow,
but quickly
strikes him with
his sword
His entrails and
blood gush out.

[leaf 65, back]
Then throwing
away his club, the
giant seizes Ar-
thur in his arms

The baleful birds
pray for the suc-
cess of Arthur

They have a
fearful wrestling
match, and fall
from the top of
the cliff down to
the shore

That the burnyschit blade to the brayne rynnez,
He feyede his fynamye with his foule hondez,
And frappez faste at hys face feisely *ther*-aflyre !
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttille, 1116
Ne had he eschapede *that* choppe, cheuede had euylls,
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte
Hye vpe one *the* hanche, with his haide wapayne,
That he billid *the* swerde halfe a fote large, 1120
The hott blode of *the* hulke vn-to *the* hylte rynnez,
Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez,
Iust to *the* gentales,¹ and jaggede *thame* in sondre !

Thane he romyede and iarede, and ruydly he strykez
fulle egerly at Arthure, and one the erthe luttez 1125
A swerde lenghe with-in *the* swarthe, he swapper at ones,
That nere swoones *the* kyng for swoughe of his dynttez !
Bot ȝit the kyng sweperly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,
Swapper in with the swerde *that* it *the* swange brystedde,
Bothe *the* guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones,
That alle englaymez *the* gresse, one grounde *ther* he
standez ! 1131

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kyng hentez,
On *the* creeste of *the* cragg he caughte hyme in armez,
And enclosez hyme clenly, to cruschene hys rybbez,
So harde haldez he *that* hende, *that* nere husherte brystez !
Thane *the* balefulle bierdez bowner to *the* erthe, 1136
Kneland and cryande, and clappide *theire* handez,—
“Criste comforthe ȝone knyghte, and kepe hym fro
sorowe,

And latte neuer ȝone fende felle hyme olyfe !”

ȝitt es *the* warlow so wyghte, he welters hyme vnder,
Wrothely *thai* wrythyne and wrystille to-gederz, 1141
Welters and walowes ouer with-in *thase* buskez,
Tumbellez and turnes faste, and terez *thaire* wedez,
Vn-tenderly fro *the* toppe *thai* tiltune to-gederz, 1144
Whilome Arthure ouer, and *other*-while vndyre,
fro *the* heghe of *the* hylle vn-to *the* harde roche .

¹ MS genitates

They feyne neuer are they falle at *the* flode merkes,
 Bot Arthur *with* ane anlace egerly smyttez, 1148 Arthur stabs the
giant,
 And hittez euer in the hulke vp to *the* hultez
The theeffe at *the* dede-thrawe so throly hyme thyngez,
That three rybbys in his syde he thyrstez in sundere ! who in his death
struggle breaks
three of Arthur's
ribs

Thene *sir* Kayous *the* kene vn-to *the* kyng styrtez,—
 Said, “allas ! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,
 Ouer-fallene *with* a fende ! vs es fullè hapnede ! 1154
 We mone be forfetede in faith, and flemyde for euer !” His knights find
him lying ex-
hausted
Thay hafe vp hys hawberke *thane*, and handlez *thei*-
 vndyre,

His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to *the*
 schuldrez,

His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez, 1158
 Bot*he* his bakke and his bieste, and his bryghte armez
Thay ware fayne *that they* fande no flesche entamede,
 And for *that* journee made joye, *thir* gentille knyghttez They examine
him and find no
wound

“Now, certez,” saise Sir Bedwere, “it semez, be my
 Lorde ! 1162 Sir Bedever
speaks face-
tiously of this
saint whom Ar-
thur had sought.

He sekez seyntez bot seldene, *the* sorere he grypes,
That thus clekys this corsaunt owte of *thir* heghe clyffez,
 To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere,
 Be Myghelle, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre
 That euer owre soueraygne Lorde suffers hyme in heuene,
 And alle seyntez be syche, *that* seruez oure Lorde, 1168 If all saints are
like him no saint
would he be
 I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle !”

Thane bouredez *the* bolde kyng at Bedvere wordez,—
 “*This* seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde !
 ffor-thy brayd owtte *this* brande, and broche hyme to *the*
 herte , 1172 Arthur bids him
stab the monster
to the heart, to
make sure of him,
for only once be-
fore had he met
with such a ter-
rible foe
 Be sekere of this sergeaunt, he has me sore greuede !
 I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke *this* fyftene wyntyrs,

Bot in *the* montez of Araby I mett syche *another* ,
 He was *the* forcyere be ferre *that* had I nere fundene,
 Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede ! 1177

Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre,
 Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede , He bids them cut
off his head,

and bear it first
to Sir Hoel,
[leaf 66]

then to Barflete,
and set it on the
barbican

His sword and
shield and the
giant's club are
to be fetched from
the hull

They may take
what treasure
they will all Ar-
thur desires is the
kirtle and the
club

The affair was
kept a secret till
break of day

Then the people
kneel before Ar-
thur, and thank
and praise him
for slaying the
giant

Arthur ascribes
all to God.

He bids his fol-
lowers distribute

Bere it to *sir Howelle*, *that es in harde bandez*, 1180
And byd *hyme* herte hym wele, his enmy es destruede !

Syne bere it to *Bareflete*, and brace it in *ryrne*,
And sett it on the *barbycane*, *biernes* to schewe

My brande and my brode schelde apone *the bent lygge*,
On *the creeste of the cragge*, thare fyrste we encontede,
And *the clubb thar-by*, alle of clene irene,

That many *Crstene* has kyllde in *Constantyne* landez,
fferke to the farlande, and fetch me *that wapene*, 1188
And late founde tilte oure flete, in fode *thare* it lengez

If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez,
Haue I the *kyrtylle* and *the clubb*, I coueite noghte elles !"

Now *they* care to *the cragge*, *thuse* comlyche knyghtez,
And broghte *hyme the brade schelde*, and his bryghte
wapene, 1193

The clubb and *the cotte als*, *Syr Kayous* hym seluene,
And *kayres with conquerour*, the kyngez to schewe,
That in couerte *the kynge helde close* to hym seluene,
Whilles clene day fro *the clowde clymbyd* on lofte

Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge,
And be-foie *the comlyche kynge* they knelyd alle at
ones,— 1199

"Welcome, oure hege lorde, to lang has thow duellyde !
Gouernour vndyr Gode, graytheste and noble,
To whame grace es graunted, and gyffene at his wille !
Now thy comly come has comforthede vs alle !

Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy people ! 1204
Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enmye are stryede,
That has thy renkes ouer-ronne, and refte theme theire
childyre !

Whas neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede !"
Thane *the conquerour cristenly carpez* to his people,

"Thankes Gode," quod he, "of *this* grace, and no gome
elles, 1209

ffor it was neuer manns dede, bot myghte of Hym selfene,
Or myracle of hys modyre, *that mylde es tilte alle* !"

He somond than *the schippemene* scharpely *ther-aftre*,

To schake furthe with *the* schyre mene to schifte *the* the grūt a treasure among the clergy and people
gudez ,

" Alle *the* myche tresour that traytour had wonnene,
To comouns of the contré, clergie and *other*,
Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople, 1216
That none pleyne of theire parte, o peyne of *your* lyfez "

He comande hys cosyne, with knyghtlyche wordez,
To make a kyrke on *the* cragg, thei the corse lengez, A church and convent are to be built on the cliff
And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe, 1220
In mynde of *that* martyre, *that* in *the* monte rystez

Qwen Sir Arthur the kyng had kylled *the* gyaunt, When the giant is slun, Arthur moves from Barfleto to Castle Blanc
Than blythely fro Barefflete he buskes one *themorne*,
With his batelle one brede, by *tha* blythe stremes , 1224

To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym the waye,
Thurghe a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis ,
The kyng fraystez a furth ower the fresche strandez,
ffoundez with his faire folke ower as hym lykez 1228 [leaf 66, back]
ffurthe stapes that steryne, and strekez his tentis
One a strenghe by a streme, in *thas* straytt landez

Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,
Thare comez two messangers of *tha* fere marchez, 1232 Then come two messengers from the Marshal of France, who acquaint Arthur
ffa *the* marschalle of Fraunce, and menskfully hym gretes,
Be-soghte hyme of sucour, and saide hyme *thuse* wordez,—

" Sir, thi marschalle, *thi* mynstre, thy *mei*cy be-sekez,
Of thy mekille magestee, fore mendement of thi pople,
Of *thuse* marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede,
And thus merrede amange, maugree theire eghne ,
I witter *the the* emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce,
With osten of enmyse, orrible and huge , 1240

Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,
And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez *thare*-in ,
He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,

Cowntrese and castelles *that* to thy coroun laūgez , 1244 seizing castles,
Confoundez thy comouns, clergie and *other* , confounding the commons,
Bot thow comfurth theme, *sir* kyng, couer salle they
neue! !

He fellez forestez fele, forrayse thi landez, felling forests,

- ffyrsthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople , 1248
 taking goods, *Thus* he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez !
 ffremedly the Franche tunge fey es be-lefede
 He drawes in-to douce Fraunce, as Duche-men tellez,
 Dresside *with* his dragouns, dredfulle to schewe , 1252
 Alle to dede they dyghte *with* dynttys of swerdder,
 killing dukes and douze peers Dukez and dusperes, *that* dreches thare-me ,
 ffor-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and *other*,
 Prayes the for Petyr luffe, *the* apostylls of Rome,
 Sen thow arte present in place, *that* thow wille profyre
 make
 Therefore they desire Arthur s help
 To *that* perulous prynce, be processe of tyme 1258
 He ayers by 3one hilles, 3one heghe holtez vndyr,
 Hufes thare *with* hale strenghe of haythene kynges ,
 Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuene sittez,
 And talke trustly to theme, *that* thus vs destroyes ! ”
 He sends some of his knights to the emperor,
 The kyng biddis *sir* Boice, “ buske the be-lyfe !
 Take *with* the *sir* Berille, and Bedwere the ryche, 1264
Sir Gawayne and *sir* Gryme, these galyade knyghtez,
 And graythe 3owe to 3one grene wode, and gose ouer
ther nedes ,
 Saise to *sir* Lucius, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,
 Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople , 1268
 I lette hyme or oghte lange, 3if me *the* lyffe happene,
 Or many lyghte salle lawe, *that* hyme ouere lande folowes
 Comande hym kenely wyth crewelle wordez,
 to bid him depart out of his kingdom, or meet him in battle
 Cayre owte of my kyngryke *with* his kydd knyghtez ,
 In case that he wille noghte, *that* cursede wreche,
 [leaf 67] Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones ! 1274
 Thane salle we iekkene fulle rathe, whatt ryghte *that* he
 claymes,
 Thus to ryot *this* rewme and raunsone the pople !
 Thare salle it derely be delte *with* dynttez of handez
 The Dryghttene at Domesdaye dele as hyme lykes ! ”
 The knights go on their errand glittering in gold upon great steeds
 Now *the* graythe theme to goo, *the*s galyarde knyghttez,
 Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes, 1280
 To-warde *the* grene wode, *that* *with* growndene wapyne,

To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone

Thise hende houeȝ on a hille by *the* holte eynes,

Be-helde *the* howsynge fulle hye of hathene kynges—
They herde in there herbergage hundretheȝ fulle many,
Hoinez of olyfanteȝ fulle helych blawene—

They see the luxurious camp of the heathen kings,

Palaiseȝ proudliche pyghte, *that* palyd ware ryche,
Of palle and of purple, wyth p̄ecyous stones, 1288
Pensels and pomelle of ryche prynee armez,
Fyghte in *the* playne mede, *the* pople to schewe

And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayedȝ their
tenteȝ, and the rich tents of the Romans

On rawe by *the* ryuere, vndyr *the* round hilleȝ, 1292
The emperour for honour ewyne in the myddes,
Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire

And saw hyme and *the* sowdane, and senatours many,
Seke to-warde a sale wyth sextene kynges, 1296
Syland softely in, swettly by theme selfene,
To sowpe withe *that* soueraygne, ffulle selcouthe metez
Nowe they wende ouer the watyre, *thise* wyrchpfullȝ
knyghtteȝ,

The Roman emperor and the sultan are going to banquet toȝe ther

Thurghe *the* wode to *the* wone, there the wyese rystez,
Reght as *they* hade weschene, and went to *the* table,
Sir Wawayne *the* worthethy vn-wynly he spekes,—
“The myghte *and* the maieſtee, *that* menskes vs alle,
That was merked and made thurghe *the* myghte of Hym
seluene, 1304

The knights present themselves
Sir Gawaine delivers the mes- sage,

Gyffe ȝow sytte in ȝour sette, Sowdane and *otheȝ*,
That here are semblede in sale, vn-sawghte mott ȝe
worthe !

And *the* fals heretyke, *that* emperour hym calleȝ,
That occupyes in erreure the empyre of Rome, 1308
Sir Arthure herytage, *that* honourable kyngȝ,
That alle his auncestres aughte bot Vtere hyme one,
That ilke cursynge *that* Cayme kaghte for his brothyre,
Cleffe one *the*, cukewalde, with croune ther thow lengeȝ,
ffor the vnlordlyeste lede *that* I on lukede euer ! 1313

and upbraids with haughty words the Roman emperor,

My lordem̄eruaȝes hym mekylle, mane, be my trouthe,

Why thow morthures his mene, *that* no mysse serues,
 Comouns of *the* countré, clergye and *other*, 1316
That are noghte coupable *ther-in*, ne knawes noght in
 armez

bids him depart,
 or do battle with
 [leaf 87, back]
 the king

ffor-thi the comelyche kyng, curtays and noble,
 Comandez *the* kenely to kaire of his landes,
 Ore elles for thy knyghthede encontre hyme ones, 1320
 Sen *thow* couettes the coroune, latte it be declarede !
 I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,
 Be fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and *other*

Then he asks for
 an answer

Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte *thow* no lengere,
That we may schifte at *the* schorte, and schewe to my
 lorde " 1325

The emperor
 replies,

The *emperour* ansuerde wyth austeryne wordez,
 " 3e are with myne enmy, sir Arthure hyme seluene !
 It es none honow to me to owtray hys knyghttez,
 Thoghe 3e bee nous mene, *that* ayres one his nedez,
 Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hyme thes wordez,
 Ne ware it for reuerence of my ryche table,
 Thou sulde repent fulle rathe of *thi* ryde wordez ! 1332
 Siche a rebawde as *thowe* rebuke any lordez,
 Wyth there retenuz arrayede, fulle realle and noble !

threatening the
 knyghts for their
 audacity

He will stay in
 Arthurs land as
 long as he pleases,

Here wille I suggourne, whilles me lefe thynkes,
 And sythene seke in by Sayne with solace *ther-aftere* ,
 Ensege all *tha* cetese be *the* salte strandez, 1337
 And seyne ryde in by Rone, *that* rynnez so faire,
 And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doun *the* wallez ,
 I salle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,
 His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hyme lykes ! "

and destroy his
 cities and castles

Whereupon Sir
 Gawaine desires
 himself to fight
 with him,

" Now, certez," sais *sir* Wawayne, " myche wondyre
 haue I, 1342
That syche an alfyne as *thow* dare speke syche wordez !
 I had leuer thene alle Fraunce, *that* heuede es of rewmes,
 ffyghte with the faythefully one felde be oure one "

but Sir Gayous,
 uncle to the
 Roman emperor,
 answers and
 charges the Brit-
 ish knights with
 being braggarts

Thane answers *su* Gayous fulle gobbede wordes,—
 Was eme to *the* *emperour*, and erle hyme selfene,—
 " Euere ware *thes* Bretouns braggers of olde ! 1348

Loo ! how he blawles hyme for hys bryghte wedes,
 As he myghte bryttyne vs alle *wit* his brande ryche '
 3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy *there* he standes !"

Thane greuyde *sir* Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352
 Graythes to-warde *the* gome *wit* grucchande herte ,
Wit hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,
 And sterftes owtte to hys stede, and *wit* his stale
 wendes !

On this Sir Ga-
 waine rushes at
 him and strikes
 off his head

Thurgh *the* wacches *they* wente, thes wirchipfulle
 knyghtez, 1356

Then the British
 knights fly with
 all speed

And fyndez in theire fare-waye wondyrlyche many ,
Oue *the* watye *they* wente by wyghtnesse of horses,
 And tuke wynde as *they* walde by *the* wodde hemmes
 Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360

And of *the* Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes,
 Chasede thurgh *a* champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez,
 Tille *a* cheefe forest, *one* schalke whitte horses
 Bot *a* freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364
 Come *forther* maste on *a* fresone, in flawmande wedes ,
A faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,
 And folowes faste *one* owre folke, and freschelye ascryez,

The Romans give
 chase

Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude appone *a* graye stede,
 He gryppes hym *a* grete spere, and graythely hyme hittez ,
 Thurgh *the* guttez in-to *the* gorre he gyrdes hyme ewyne,
 That the groundene stele glydez to his herte ! 1371

[leaf 68]
 The foremost of
 the pursuers is
 slain by Sir Ga-
 waine

The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde lygge,
 ffulle gryselyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez
 Thane presez *a* preker ine, fulle proudly arayede,
 That beres alle of *pourpour*, palyde *wit* syluer
 Byggly on *a* broune stede he p^rofers fulle large 1376

He was *a* paynyme of Perse *that thus* hyme persuede
 Sir Boys vn-abauste alle he buskes hyme a-gaynes,
 With *a* bustous launce he berez hyme thurgh *e*,
 That *the* breme and *the* brade schelde appone *the* bente
 lygge ! 1380

Another knight,
 a paynim of
 Persia, is thrust
 through by Sir
 Bois

And he bryngez furthe the blade, *and* bownez to his
 felowez

- Sir Feltemour
seeks to avenge
Sir Gayous,
Thanes! Feltemour of myghte, a man mekylle praysede,
Was mouede one his manere, and manacede fulle faste,
He graythes to sir Gawayne graythely to wyrche, 1384
ffor grefe of sir Gayous, *that es one grounde leuede*
Thane sir Gawayne was glade, agayne hyme he rydez,
Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hyme hyttez,
The knyghte one *the* coursere he cleuede in sondyre, 1388
Clenlyche fro *the* croune his corse he dyuysyde,
And *thus* he killez *the* knyghte with his kydd wapene!
- but Sir Gawayne
cleaves him
asunder
Than a ryche mane of Rome relyede to his byerns,—
“It salle repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthure!
3one are bolde bosturs, *that* syche bale wyrkez, 1393
It be-felle hym fulle foule, *that thame* so fyrste namede”
- Then a rich man
of Rome suggests
a retreat
Thane *the* riche Romayns retou nes *thaire* bryddilles
To *thaire* tentis in tene, telles theme lordes
How sir Masehulle de Mowne es on *the* monte lefede,
ffore-justyde at that journee, for his grett japez
Bot thare chazez one oure mene cheualhous knyghtez,
The rich Romans
return,
ffyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes, 1400
ffaste to a foreste ouer a felle watyr,
That fillez fro *the* falow see fyfty myle large
- but five thousand
horsemen still
pursue the
knights,
Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,
Of *the* cheualrye cheefe of *the* kynges chambyre, 1404
Seese theme chase oure mene, and changene *theire* horsez,
And choppe doune cheftaynes, that they moste chargyde
- and fall upon
an ambush of
Bretons,
Thane *the* enbuschement of Bretons brake owte at ones,
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 1408
Arrestede of *the* Romayns, *that* by *the* fyrthe rydez,
Alle *the* realeste renkes *that* to Rome lengez,
Thay iche on *the* enmyse and egerly strykkys,
- who break out
suddenly on
them,
Eries of Inglande, and “Arthure!” ascryes, 1412
Thrughe benesand bryghte schelde, bretez they thyrlle,
Bretons of the boldeste with *theire* bryghte swerdez
- with shouts of
“Arthur.”
Thare was Romayns ouer-redyne, and ruydly wondyde,
Arrestede as rebawdez, with ryotous knyghttez! 1416
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys!
- [leaf 68, back]
The Romans are
defeated and
driven back,

To *the* *senatour* Petyr a sandes-mane es *commyne*,
 And saide, "*sir*, sekyrly, *your* seggez are suppryssid!"
 Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,
 And sett sodanly one oure seggez, by *the* salte strandez,
 Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttile,
 Bot 3it the banerettez bolde, and bachellers noble, 1424
 Brekes that battailles¹ with brestez of stedes,
 Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes!
 The Romaynes redyes *thane*, arrayez *thame* better,
 And al to-ruscheez oure mene withe theire ryste horsez,
 Arestede of the richeste of *the* Rounde Table,
 Ouer-rydez oure rerewaide, and grette rewthe wyrkes!

but the Senator
 Peter sends ten
 thousand men

Thane the Bretons on *the* bente habyddez no lengere,
 Bot fleede to *the* foreste, and the feelde leuede, 1432
 Sir Beryll es borne downe and *sir* Boice taken,
 The beste of oure bolde mene vnblythely wondyde,
 Bot 3itt oure stale one a strenghe stotais a lyttile,
 Alletostonayedewith² thestokes² of *the* steryneknyghtez,
 Made sorowe fore theire soueraygne, *that* so *thare* was
 nomene,

The Britons are
 repulsed, and
 fly to the forest

Sir Beryll is borne
 down and Sir
 Boice taken,

but agun they
 make a little
 stand,

grieving for the
 loss of their
 leader, and pray
 for succour

Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde!

Than *commez* *sir* Idrus, armede vp at alle ryghttez,
 Wyth fyue hundrethe mene appone faure stedes, 1440
 ffrayne faste at oure folke freschely *thare*-aftyre,
 3if *ther* frendez ware ferre, *that* one *the* feldes foundide
 Thane sais *sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe!"

Sir Idrus comes
 to their aid with
 five hundred
 men

We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,
 Rebuyked with Romaynes appone *theire* ryche stedes,
 And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wrechis! 1446
 I luke neuer one my lorde *the* dayes of my lyfe,
 And weso lytherly hym helpe, *thathyme* so welelykede!"

Sir Gawaine la-
 ments the check
 which Arthur's
 men had re-
 ceived.

Thane the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedez,
 And boldly in batelle appone *the* bent rydes, 1450
 Alle *the* ferse mene be-fore frekly ascryes,
 fferkand in *the* foreste, to freschene *thame* selfene.

The British re-
 turn to the fray

The Romaynes thane redyly arrayes *thame* bettyre,

The Romans pre-
 pare themselves
 against them

¹ MS. batailles

² strokes

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,
 By *the* ryche reuare, and rewles *the* pople,
 And with reddour *sir* Boice es in areste haldene 1456

Now thei semblede vnsaughte by *the* salte strandez,
 Saddly theis sekere menn settys *theire* dynttez,
 With lufly launcez one lofte they luyshene to-gedyes,
 In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes 1460

A fierce battle
 ensues

Thare ware gomes thurghe-gurde with grundyne wapynes,
 Grisely gayspande with gruechande lotes!
 Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye,

[leaf 69]

Swyftly with swerdes, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464
 Swappez doune ffulle sweperlye swelltande knyghtez,¹
 That alle swelltkez one swarthe, that they ouer-swyngene,
 So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones!

Sir Gawaine does
 mighty deeds of
 valour

Syr Gaweayne the gracyous ffulle graythelye he wyrkkes,
 The gretteste he gretez with grieslye wondēs,
 Wyth Galuth he gyrdez doune ffulle galyarde knyghtez,
 fore greefe of *the* grett lorde so grymlye he strykez!
 He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472
 Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene,
 He ryfez *the* rannke stele, he ryghttez *theire* brenez,
 And reftethem *the* ryche mane, and radeto his strenghes

The Senator Peter
 comes against
 him,

The senatour Peter thane persewede hyme aftyre, 1476
 Thurghe *the* presse of *the* pople, wyth his pryce knyghttes,
 Appertly fore *the* prysonere proues his strenghes,
 Wyth prekers the proudeste that to *the* presse lengez,
 Wrothely on *the* wrange handes *sir* Gawayne he strykkes,
 Wyth a wapene of were vnwynly hyme hittez, 1481

but in spite of
 him Sir Gawaine
 rescues Sir Boice

The breyny one *the* bakhalfe he brystez in sondyre!
 Bot ȝit he broghte forthe *sir* Boyce, for alle *theire* bale
 biernez!

Reforced at this
 the British press
 on more boldly

Thane *the* Bretones boldely braggene *theire* tromppez,
 And fore blysse of *sir* Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez,
 Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghtes, 1486
 With brandes of broune stele *they* brettene maylez,
 Thay stekede stedys in stoure with stelene wapynes,

¹ MS knyghtez

And alle stewe de wyth stienghe, *that stode theme agaynes*!

Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne *thane* "Arthure!" ascryeez,
Assemblez one *the* senatour wyth sextene knyghttez,
Of *the* sekereste mene *that* to oure syde lengede 1492

Sir Idrus, with
sixteen knights,
attacks the
senator,

Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,
ffoynes faste att *the* fore breste wth flawmande swerdez,
And feghttes faste att *the* fronte freschely *thare*-aftyre,
ffelles fele on *the* felde appone *the* ferrere syde, 1496
ffey on *the* faire felde by *tha* fresche strandez

Bot *sir* Idrus fytz Ewayne *antes* hyme seluene,
And *enters* in anly, and egyrly strykez,
Sekez to *the* senatour and sesez his brydille, 1500
Vnsaughtely he saide hyme *these* sittande wordez,—

"3elde *the, sir,* 3apely, 3ife *thou thi* lyfe 3ernez,
fforegyftez *that thou* gyffe may, *thou* 3eme now *the* selfene,
ffoie dredlez dreche *thow,* or droppe any wylez, 1504
Thow salle dy *this* daye thorowe dyntt of my handez!"

and takes him
prisoner

"I ascente," *quod the* senatour, "so me Criste helpe!
So *that* I be safe broghte be-fore *the* kynge selucne,
Raunsons me resonabullye, as I may ouer-reche, 1508
Aftyre my renttez in Rome may redly forthire"

The senator
desires to be
brought to the
king

Thane answers *sir* Idrus with austeryne wordez,
"Thow salle hafe condycyone, as *the* kynge lykes,
Whene thow comes to *the* kyth there the *courte* haldez,
In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513
To be killydeat his commandment his knyghttez be-fore"
Thay ledde hyme furthe in *the* rowte, and lached ofe
his wedes,

Sir Idrus answers
him roughly

[leaf 69, back.]

Lefte hym wyth Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire

O-lawe in *the* launde *thane,* by *the* lythe strandez,
Sir Lucus lygge-mene¹ loste are fore euer!

He gives the
senator into the
charge of Sir
Lionel and Sir
Lowell

The senatour Peter es prysoner takyne! 1519

Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many puce knyghtez,
And myche pople wyth alle *perischede thame* selfene!
ffor presse of *the* passage, they plungeded² at onez!

Thare myghte mene see Romainez rewfully wondyde,

Many of the
Romans are slain

¹ Or legge-mene

² MS repeats they plungeded

Ouer-redyne with renkes of the Round Table ¹ 1524
 In the raikes of the furthe they rightene theire brenys,
 That iame alle one reede blode redylye alle ouer ,
 They raughte in the rerewarde fulle ryotous knyghtez,
 ffor raunsone ¹ of rede golde and realle stedys , 1528
 Radly relayes, and restez theire horsez,

The knights ride
 back towards the
 king, and send
 him the news of
 their success

In rowtte to the ryche kyng they rade al at onez
 A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to the kyng telles,—
 “Sir, here commez thy messangerez with myrthez fro
 the mountez, 1532

Thay hafe benemachede to daye with mene of the marchez,
 ffore-maglade in the marras with merualous knyghtez ¹
 We hafe foughtene in faithe, by zone fresche strandez,
 With the frekkeste folke that to thi foo langez , 1536
 ffyfty thosannde one felde of ferse mene of armez,
 Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lefede ¹
 We hafe eschewede this chekke, thurghe chance of oure

They tell him
 that they have
 slain ffy thyous-
 and men,

Lorde,

Of tha cheualrous mene that chargede thy pople ¹ 1540
 The cheefe chauncelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,
 Wille aske the chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfene,
 And the senatour Petre to prisoner es takyne

and taken pri-
 soners the chief
 chancellor and
 the senator Pe-
 tre, as well as
 many paynms

Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe 1544
 Commezprekande in the presse, with thy prysseknyghttez,
 With pouerte in thi presone theire paynez to drye
 I be-seke 3ow, sir, say whate 3owe lykes,
 Whethire 3e suffyre theme saughte, or sone delyuerde

Arthur may de-
 mand sixty
 horse loads of
 silver for the
 senator,
 and for the chan-
 cellor chariots
 full of gold.

3e may haue fore the senatour sextie horse chargede
 Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekryly payede,
 And for the cheefe chauncelere, the cheualere noble,
 Charottes chokkefulle charegyde with golde , 1552
 The remenaunt of the Romainez be in areste haldene,
 Tille there renttez in Rome be rightewissly knowene
 I be-seke 3ow, sir, certyfye 3one lordez,
 3if 3e wille send thame ouer the see, or kepe thame 3our
 selfene 1556

The other pri-
 soners may be
 kept until their
 rents are known.

¹ MS raunsone



ARTHUR REJOICES AT THE TIDINGS.

Alle *3ow* sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leuyde,
Sane *sir* Ewayne fytz Henry es in *the* side wonddede "

All Arthur's men
have escaped,
save Sir Ewayne,
who is wounded

"Crist be thankyde," *quod* the kynge, "and hys clere
modyre,

[leaf 70]
The king rejoices

That *3ow* comforthede and helpede be crafte of hyme
selfene , 1560

Skilfulle skomfyture he skifte as hym lykez,
Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez ,
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,
Alle es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille ' 1564

The fate of battle,
he says, is in the
hands of God

I *kwe* the thanke for thy come, it comfortes vs alle '
Sir knyghte," sais *the* conquerour, "so me Criste helpe '
I *3if* the for thy thyzandez Tolouse *the* riche,
The tolle and *the* tachmentez, tauernez and *other*, 1568
The towne and *the* tenementez with towrez so hye,
That towchez to *the* temporaltee, whilles my tyme lastez

He thanks the
knight for his
tidings, and gives
him for reward
the city of To
louse

Bot say to *the* senatour I sende hyme *thes* wordez,
Thare salle no siluer hym saue, bot Ewayne recouere ,
I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,
Than the seegge ware seke, *that* es so sore woundede ,
I salle disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe ' 1575
And sett theme fulle solytarie, in sere kynges landez
Salle he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,

The senator shall
not be ransomed
save Sir Ewayne
recovers

Ne sitt in *the* assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris ,
ffor it comes to no kyng *that* conquerour es holdene,
To comone with his captifis fore couatys of siluer 1580
It come neuer of knyghthede, knawe it *3if* hyme lyke,
To carpe of coseri, whene captyfis ere takyne ,
It aughte to no presoners to prese no lordez,
Ne come in presens of prynce, whene *partyes* are mouede
Comaunde *3one* constable, *the* castelle *that* *3emes*,
That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close haldene ,
He salle haue maundement to-morne or myddaye be
roungene, 1587

The others shall
be divided into
different coun-
tries

Arthur holds that
to accept ransom
becomes not a
king

They are to take
the senator to
the constable and
bid him keep him
safe

To what marchet *thays* salle merke, with manger to lengene "

Thay conuaye this captyfe with clene mene of armez,
And kend hyme to *the* constable, as *the* kyng byddez ,

The knights
obey, and til en

return to Arthur
to give him the
emperor's mes-
sage

Arthur greatly
commends his
knights for their
boldness, and
promises them
rewards

In the morning
Sir Cadore and his
knights are bid
to take the pri-
soners

[leaf 70, back]
to Paris, and to
give them into
the care of the
provost

The British
knights depart
towards Chartres

But the emperor
had dispatched a
chosen band to
intercept them

And seyne to Arthure *they* ayre, and egerly hym towchez
The answere of *the* emperour, *now*s of dedez 1592
Thane *sir* Arthure, one erthe atheliste of *othere*,
At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—
“Me aughte to honowr theme in erthe ouer alle *other*
thynges,

That thus in myne absens awnters *theme* selfene, 1596
I salle theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe !
And gyfe *theme* landysfulle laige, whare theme beste lykes,
Thay sallenoghte losse, one *this* layke, 3if me lyfe happene,
That thus are lamede for my lufe be *this* lythe strandez ”
Bot in *the* clere daweyng, *the* dere kyng hym selfene
Comaundyd *sir* Cadore with his dere knyghttes,
Sir Cleremus, *sir* Cleremonde, with elene mene of armez,
Sir Clowdmur, *sir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez, 1604
Sir Boyce and *sir* Berelle with baners displayede,
Sir Bawdwyne, *sir* Bryane, and *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche,
Sir Raynalde and *sir* Richere, Rawlaunde childeyre,
To ryde with *the* Romaynes in rowtte with their feres

“Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,
With Petr the pryssonere and his price knyghttez,
Be-teche *tham the* proueste, in presens of lordez,
O payne and o perelle *that* pendes there-too, 1612
That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,
Wardede of warantizez with wyrchpfuller knyghttez,
Wagge hym wyghte mene, and woonde for no siluyre,
I haffe warnede *that* wy, be ware 3ife hym lykes !”

N^Ow bownes *the* Bretones, als *the* kyng byddez, 1617
Buskez there batelles, there baners displayez,
To-wardez Chartres they chese, thescheualrous knyghttez,
And in the champayne lande fulle faire *thay* eschewed
for *the* emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfene
Sir Vtolfe and *sir* Ewandyre, two honourable kynges,
Erles of *the* Oriente, with austeryne knyghttez,
Of *the* awntrouseste mene *that* to his oste lengede, 1624
Sir Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,

The kyng of Suriye hym selfe with Sarzynes ynowe,
 The senatour of Sutere wyth sowmes fulle huge, 1627
 Whas assygnede to *that* courte be sent of his peres,
 Traise to-waide Troys *the* tresone¹ to wyrke,
 To hafe be-trappede with a trayne oure *trauelande*
 knyghttez,

That hade persayfede *that* Peter at Parys sulde lenge,
 In *presonne* with *the* prouoste, his paynez to drye 1632
 ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners dis-
 playede,

In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge,
 Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,
 To pyke vp *the* presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.

They take up a
 position in the
 path of Arthur's
 men

Syr Cadore of Cornewalle comaundez his peris, 1637

Sir Clegis, *sir* Cleremus, *sir* Cleremownnde *the* noble,

"Here es *the* close of Clyme with clewes so hye,

Sir Cadore keeps
 a sharp look out,

Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large, 1640

Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and *othei*,

That no skathelle in *the* skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre,

Loke 3e skyfte it so *that* vs no skathe lympe,

ffor na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer" 1644

Now *they* hye to *the* holte, thes harageous knyghttez,

To herkene of *the* hye mene to helpene theis lordes,
 fyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,
 Houande one *the* hye waye by *the* holte hemmes 1648

and discovers the
 enemy, armed
 and mounted,
 waiting by the
 skirts of a wood.

With knyghttly contenauce Sir Clegis hym selfene

Kryes to *the* compagne, and carpes thees wordez,—

"Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or *othei*,

Wille kyth for his kyngde lufe craftes of armes? 1652

Sir Clegis chal-
 lenges any knight
 among them to
 the combat,

We are comene fro *the* kyng of *this* lythe ryche,

That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in ertlie,

His ryche retenuz here alle of his Round Table,

To ryde with *that* realle in rowtt where hyme lykes,

We seke justyng of werre, 3if any wille happyne, 1657

Of *the* jolyeste mene ajuggede be lordes,

¹ MS *the* treke *ne* the tresone

[leaf 71]
 An earl of the
 Roman party up
 braids Arthur
 and his knights

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or *other*,
 That for *the emperour* lufe wille awntere hym selfene "
 And ane erle *thane* in angere answeres hym sone,—
 "Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,
 That thus in his erroure occupyes theis rewmes,
 And owtrayes *the emperour*, his erthely lorde ! 1664
 The araye and *the ryalltez of the Rounde Table*
 Es wyth rankoure rehersed in rewmes fulle many,
 Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuelle he haldys,
 He¹ salle 3ife resoune fulle rathe, 3if vs reghte happene,
 That many salle repente that in his rowtte rydez, 1669
 ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene ! "

Sir Clegis
 answers him,

"A ! " sais *sir Clegis thane*, " so me Criste helpe !
 I knowe be thi carpyng a cowntere *the semes* !
 Bot be *thou* auditoure, or erle, or *emperour* thi selfene,
 Appone Arthurez by-halue I answer the sone 1674
 The renke so realle, *that* rewlez vs alle,
 The ryotous mene and *the* ryche of *the Rounde Table*,
 He has araysede his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,
 ffor he wyll gyfe a rekenyng that rewe salle aftyre,
 That alle *the* ryche salle repente *that* to Rome langez,
 Or *the* rereage be requit² of rentez *that* he claymez !
 We crafe of *3our* curtaisie three coursez of werre, 1681
 And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to *3our* selfene !
 3e do bott trayne vs to daye wyth trofelande wordez !
 Of syche trauaylande mene trecherye me thynkes ! 1684
 Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,
 Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake 3if 3owe lykes "

and boasts that
 he will punish
 well the Romans

He desires three
 courses of war
 with any knights
 whom they will
 send.

The king of Syria
 insinuates that
 Sir Clegis may
 not be of noble
 ancestry

*T*thane sais *the* kyng of Surry, "Alls saue me oure
 Lorde !
 3if *thow* hufe alle *the* daye, *thou* bees noghte delyuere,
 Bot *thow* sekerly ensure wyth certeyne knyghtez, 1689
 That *thi* cote and thi breste be knowene wyth lordez,
 Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde wyth londez "

Sir Clegis replies
 scornfully

"Sir kyng," sais *sir Clegys*, "fulle knyghttly *thow* askez
 I trowe it be for cowardys *thow* carpes thes wordez

¹ MS Ne² Looks like requiter in MS

Myne armez aie of ancestrye enueryde with lordez,
 And has in banere bene borne sene *sir Brut* tyme,
 At the cité of Troye *that tymme* was ensegede, 1696
 Ofte seene in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,
 ffor *the* Boughte bioghte vs and alle oure bolde elders,
 To Bretayne *the* braddere, with-in chippe-burdez "

that his ancestors
 were at the siege
 of Troy

"Sir," sais *sir Sextenour*, "saye what *the* lykez,
 And we salle suffyre the, als vs beste semes, 1701
 Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofulle no lengere,
 ffor *thoghe thou* tarye alle *the* daye, the tyddesno bettyr !
 ffor there salle neuer Romaine, *that* in my rowtt rydez,
 Be with rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne !"

Sir Sextenour
 declares that the
 Romans are
 ready for the
 fray

Thane *sir Clegis* to *the* kyng a lyttlle enclnede,
 Kayres to *sir Cadore*, and knyghtly hym tellez,— 1707
 "We hafe foundene in 3one firthe, floreschede with leues,
The flou of *the* faireste folke *that* to *thi* foo langez,
 fifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez,
That faire are fewteride on fiounte vndyr 3one fre bowes,
 They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners dis-
 playede, 1712

Sir Clegis tells
 Sir Cador that a
 vast number of
 the enemy are
 drawn up in the
 wood,

[leaf 71, back]

In 3one bechene wode appone the waye sydes
 Thay hafe the furthe for-sette alle of *the* faire watyre,
 That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys,
 ffor thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to telle, 1716
 Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as *the* lykes "

and suggests a
 retreat

"Nay," *quod* Cador, "so me Criste helpe !
 It ware schame *that* we scholde schone for so lytyle !

Sir Cador scorns
 to retreat

Sir Lancelott salle neuer laughe, *that* with *the* kyng
 lengez, 1720

Never shall Sir
 I ancelot laugh
 at him

That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe,
 I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,
 ffor drede of any doggesone in 3one dyme schawes !"

He will die be-
 fore he turn back
 for any dog's son
 of them all.

Syr Cador thane knyghtly comfortes his pople, 1724
 And with corage kene he karpes *thes* wordes,—

Sir Cador exhorts
 his men, and tells
 them of the good
 deeds of Arthur

"Thynk one *the* valyaunt prynce *that* resettez vs euer,
 With landez and lordcheppez, where vs beste lykes,
 That has vs ducherés delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,
 Grewhoundez and grett horse, and alkyne gamnes,
 That gaynez talle any gome, that vndyre God leuez,
 Thynke one riche renounce of *the* Rounde Table, 1732
 And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romayne in erthe,
 ffeyne 3ow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,
 Bot luke 3e fyghte faythefully, frekes 3our selfene,
 I walde be wellyde alle qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,
 Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge" 1737

He dubs some of
 them knyghts

Than this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,
 Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and *other*,
 That ayerez were of *Esexe*, and alle *thase* este maichez,
 Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in armez, 1741
 Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, *thuse* harageouse knyghttez
 Than the souerayne assignede certayne lordez,
 Sir Wawayne, sir Vryelle, sir Bedwere *the* ryche, 1744
 Raynalde and Richeere, and Rowlandez childeyre,—
 "Takez kepe one this prynce *with* 3oure price knyghtez,

To certein of
 them he gives
 the prisoner in
 charge

If he is defeated,
 they are to con-
 vey him to some
 castle, or to Ar-
 thur

And 3ife we in *the* stour withstondene the better,
 Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire, 1748
 And 3if *the* chaunce falle *that* we bee ouer-charggede,
 Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse 3our selfene,
 Or ryde to *the* riche kyng 3if 3ow roo happyne, 1751
 And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez"

The British pre-
 pare for the fight

And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez *theire*
 scheldez,

Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes *theire* launcez
 Thus he fitez his folke, and to *the* felde rydez,
 fff hundreth one a frounte fewtrede at onez ! 1756

The fight begins

With trompes *thay* trine, and trappede stedes,
 With cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes,
 Schokkes in *with* a schakke, and schontez no langere,
 There schawes ware scheene vndyr *the* schire eynez
 And thane the Romayne rowtte remowes a lyttill,
 Raykes *with* a rerewarde *thas* realle knyghttez, 1762
 So raply *thay* ryde thare, that alle *the* rowte rynggez,
 Of ryues and rannke stole, and ryche golde maylez

- Thane schotte owtte of *the* schawe schilttrounis many,
 With scharpe wapynns of were schotande at ones
 The kynges of Lebe be fore the wawarde he ledez,
 And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez 1768 The king of Lebe
leads on the
enemy
- Thane this cruelle kyng castis in fewtire,
 Kaghte hym a couerde hoise, and his course haldez,
 Beris to *sir* Berille, and brathely hym hittes,
 Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne ! He attacks Sir
Berill and slays
him
- The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde liggez,
 And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym *the* saule !
 Thus es Berelle the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,
 And byddez aftyre beryelle, *that* hym beste lykez 1776
- And thane *sir* Cador of Cornewayle es carefuller in heite, Sir Cador is over
whelmed with
grief for his loss
 Be-cause of his kynyse-mane, *that thus* es myscaryede ,
 Vmbeclappes the cors, and kyssez hyme ofte,
 Gerte kepe hym couerte with his clere knyghttez 1780
- Thane laughs the Lebe kyng, and alle on lowdemeles,— The king of Lebe
ridicules him
 “3one lorde es lyghttede ! me lykes the bettyre !
 He salle noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his]
 bones !”
- “3one kyng,” said Cador, “karpes fulle large, 1784
 Be-cause he killyd *this* kene, Criste hafe *this* saule !
 He salle hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe !
 Or I kaire of *this* coste, we salle encontre ones ! Sir Cador vows
vengeance
- So may *the* wynde weile turne, I quytte hym or ewyne,
 Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez !” 1789
- Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene knyghtly he wyrkez,
 Cryez, “A ! Cornewale,” and castez in fewtere,
 Gurdez streke thourghe *the* stour on a stede ryche ! He performs
great deeds of
valour
- Many steryne mane he sterde by strenghe of hyme one !
 Whene his spere was sprongene, he spede hym fulle 3erne, When his lance
is broken he
flights with his
sword
 Swappede owtte with a swerde, that swykede hym neuc ,
 Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghttez ,
 Wyrkez his ine wayfare fulle werkand sydez, 1797
- And hewes of *the* hardieste halsez in sondyre,
 That alle blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez !
 So many biernez the bolde broghte owt of lyfe, 1800

Tittez tirauntez doune, and temez¹ theire sadilles,
 And turnezowte of *the* toile, whene hym tymethynkkez !
 Then the king of Lebe ironically prunes his deeds

[leaf 72, back]

Thane the Lebe kyng emez fulle lowde
 One *sir* Cador the kene, with cruelle worder, 1804
 "Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghttez !
 Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy
 nowene !

The new made
 knights, with
 sound of trum-
 pets and spears
 in rest, rush to
 the fray

I salle wayte at thyne honnde, wy, be my trowthe !
 I haue warnede *the* wele, be ware ȝif the lykez !" 1808
 With cornuse and clariones *theis* newe made knyghttez
 Lythes vn-to *the* crye, and castez in fewture,
 fferkes in one a ffrounte one fferaunte stedez,
 ffellede at *the* fyrste come fyfty att ones ! 1812
 Schotte thorowe the schiltrouns, and scheuereðe launcez,
 Laid doune in *the* lumppe lordly biernez !
 And thus nobilly oure newe mene notez *theire* strenghez
 Bot new notte es onone *that* noyes me sore 1816

The king of Lebe
 comes agunst
 them

He makes great
 havoc among the
 new men

The kyng of Lebe has laughte a stede *that* hym lykede,
 And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,
 Vmbelappez *the* lumpe, and lattes in sondre,
 Many lede with his launce *the* liffe has he refede ! 1820
 Thus he chaces *the* childre of *the* kynges chambue,
 And killez in *the* champanyse cheualrous knyghttez !
 With a chasyng spere he choppes doune many ! 1823

Had not Sir
 Clegis and Sir
 Clement come,
 the new men had
 gone to nought

Then Sir Cador
 puts his lance in
 rest, and strikes
 the king of Lebe
 far on the hel-
 met.

Thare was *sir* Alyduke slayne, and Achinow wondyde,
 Sir Origge and *sir* Ermyngalle hewene al to pecez !
 And ther was Lewlyne laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,
 With lordez of Lebe, and lede to *theire* strenghez
 Ne hade *sir* Clegis comene, and Clemente *the* noble,
 Oure newe mene hade gone to noghte, and many ma
 other

Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene castez in fewture 1830
 A cruelle launce and a kene, and to *the* kyng rydez,
 Hittez hym heghe one *the* helme with his harde wapene,
 That alle *the* hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez !

The heathen king
 falls to the

The hethene harageous kyng appone *the* hethe lyggez,

¹ MS repeats and temez

And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer !

ground mortally
wounded

Thane *syn* Cador *the* kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836

“Thow has corne botte, *sir* kyng, *thare* God gyfe *the* sorowe,
Sir Cador triumphs over him

Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse !

Kele the nowe in the claye, and comfoithe thi selfene !

Thow skornede vs lang ere *with* thi skornefulle woidez,

And nowe has *thow* cheuede soo, it es thyne awene
skathe !

Holde at *thow* hente has, it harmez bot lyttle,

ffor hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille ”

The kyng of Surry *thane* es sorowfulle in herte, 1844

The king of
Surrey full of
grief assembles
his barons for
vengeance

fforsake of this soueraygne, *that thus* was suppressede,

Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatours manye

Vnsaughtly *they* sette *thane* appone ouresere knyghttez,

Sir Cador of Cornewaile he cownterez *them* sone, 1848

Sir Cador and his
men slay fifty
thousand of them
at once

With his kydde companye clenlyche arrayede,

In the frount of *the* fyrthe, as *the* waye forthis,

ffifty thosande of folke was fellide at ones !

There was at *the* assemblé certayne knyghttez, 1852

Certain knights
are sorely wound-
[leaf 73]
ed by the Sara-
cens

Sore wondede sone appone sere halves,

The sekereste Sarzanez that to *that* sorte lengede,

Be-hynde the sadylls ware sette sex fotte large,

They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,

Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,

The fight rages
furiously

Thurghe brenys browdene brestez they thullede,

Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre,

Blasons blode and blankes they hewene,

1860

The field runs
blood

With brandez of browne stele brankand stedez !

The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,

The bente and *the* brode felde alle one blode rynnys !

Be thane *si* Cayous *the* kene a capitayne has wonnerie,

Sir Clegis clynges in, and clekes *another*,

1865

Sir Clegis takes
prisoner the cap-
tain of Cordova.

The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire *the* kyng selfene,

That was keye of *the* kythe of alle *that* coste ryche,

Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene,

1868

With *the* erle of Affryke and *othe*r grette lordes

Sir Cadur takes
the king of Syria.

The Romans fly
into the forest

Arthur's men
slay many of
them there

A few escape to
a castle

Arthur's knights
seek for their
companions who
are slain

Sir Cadur bids
them carry them
to the king

He goes to Paris
with the pri-
soners, and
quickly returns
to Arthur

Then he tells him
of the case that
has befallen

They have fought
and slain many

[leaf 73, back]

Divers of their
best knights are
taken prisoners,

The kyng of Surry the kene to *sir* Cadur es zeldene,¹

The synechalle of Sotere to Segramour hym selfene
When *the* cheualrye saw theire cheftanes were *nommene*,

To a cheefe foreste they chesene theire wayes, 1873

And felede theme so feynthe, they falle in *the* greues,

In the ferynne of *the* fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople

Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,

To rype vpe the Romayne ruydlyche wondyde, 1877

Schowttes aftyre mene, harageous knyghttez,

Be hundrethez they hewede doune be *the* holte eynys!

Thus oure cheualrous mene chasz *the* pople, 1880

To a castelle they eschewed a fewe *that* eschappede

Thanc relyez *the* renkez of *the* Rounde Table,

ffor to ryotte *the* wode, *then* *the* duke restez,

Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte vp thoure faies, 1884

That in *the* fightynge be-fore fay ware by-leuyde

Sir Cadur garte chare theym, and couer theme faire,

Kariede theme to *the* kyng with his beste knyghttez,

And passez vn-to Paresche with prisioners hym selfene,

Be-toke theyme the proueste, pryncez and *other*; 1889

Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,

Bot tournes tytte to *the* kyng, and hym wyth tunge telles

“*Syr*,” sais *sir* Cadur, “a caas es be-fallene, 1892

S We hafe cownterede to day, in 3one coste ryche

With kynges and kayseres, krouelle and noble,

And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayede!

Thay hade at 3one foreste forsette vs *the* wayes, 1896

At the furthe in *the* fyrthe, with ferse mene of armes,

Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with speyrs,

One felde with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe

The kyng of Lebe es laide, and in *the* felde leuyde,

And manye of his lege mene *that* yare to hym langede!

Other lordez are laughte of vncouth ledes, 1902

We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whittes *the* lykez

Sir Vtere and *sir* Ewaynedyre, theis honourable

knyghttez,

¹ 3oldene

Be a nawntere of armes Ioneke has nommene,
 With erlez of *the* Oryentte, and austerene knyghttez,
 Of awncestrye *the* beste mene *that to the* oste langede ,
 The senatour Barouns es kaughte with a knyghtte,
 The capitayne of Cornette, that crewelle es haldene,
 The syneschalle of Sutere vnsaughte wyth *thes other*,
 The kyng of Surry hym selfene, and Sarazenes 1911

the senator
 Barouns, the
 king of Syria, the
 seneschal of
 Suter

Bot fay of ours in *the* felde a fourtene knyghttez,
 I willenoghte feynene forbere, bot faythfullytellene ,

But of Arthur s
 knyghts fourteen
 are sloun

Sir Berelle es one, a banerette noble,
 Was killyde at *the* fyrste come with a kyng rychen ,
 Sir Aldoyke of Towelle, with his tende knyghtez, 1916
 Emange *the* Turkys was tynte, and in tyme fondene ,
 Gude sir Mawrelle of Mauncez, and Mawrene his brother,
 Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, with merualous knyghttez "

Sir Berill was
 killed at the
 beginning of the
 flay

Thane the woithy kyng wrythes, and wepede with
 his eghne¹, 1920

Then Arthur is
 grieved,

Karpes to his cosyne sir Cador theis wordez,—

" Sir Cador, thi coage confunde vs alle !

and speake to his
 cousin sir Cador
 bitter words.

Kowardely thou castez owte alle my beste knyghttez !
 To putte mene in perille, it es no pryce holdene, 1924
 Bot *the* partyes ware purnayede, and powere arayede ,
 When they ware stade on a strenghe, *thou* sulde hafe
 with-stondene,

Bot ȝif thou wolde alle my steryne stroye fore *then* onys !"

" Sir," sais sir Cador, " ȝe knowe wele ȝour selfene ,
 ȝe are kyng in *this* kythe, karpe whatte ȝow lykys !
 Salle neuer vpbrayde me, *that to thi* burde langes, 1930
 That I sulde blyne fore theire hoste, thi byddyng to
 wyrche ,

Sir Cador replies
 with dignity

Whene any stuttez to stale, stuffe *thame the* bettere,
 Ore thei wille be stonayede, and stroyede in ȝone straye
 londez 1933

I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,
 And in daungere of dede fore dyuerse knyghttez,
 I hafe no grace to *thi* gree, bot syche grett wordez , 1936

He has only done
 his duty,

but is ill repaid
 by such hard
 words

¹ MS eughne

- 3if I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre "
- Then Arthur re
tracts
He acknowledges
Cado's done
his duty
- 3ofe s^r Arthure ware angeide, he ansuers faile,
"Thow has doughttly donne, s^r duke, with thi handez,
And has donne thy deuer with my dere knyghttez,
ffor-thy thow arte demyde, with dukes and eilez, 1941
ffor one of *the* doughtyeste *that* dubbede was euer !
Thaie es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongene ,
Thow arte appaiant to be ayere, are one of thi childyre,
Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake salle I neuer !" 1945
- He is one of the
bravest of the
biave,
and hear apparent
to the throue
[leaf 74]
- Thane gerte he in his awene tente a table be sette,
And tryede in with trompez t^r auailede biernez ,
Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez, 1948
Swythe semly in syghte with syluer ene dischees
Whene the senatours harde saye *that* it so happenede,
They saide to *the* emper^{our} , "thi seggez are suppyssede !
Sir Arthure, thyne enmy has owterayed *thi* lordez,
That rode for *the* rescowe of 3one riche knyghttez ! 1953
Thowdosse bot tynnez *thi* tyme, and turmenttez *thi* pople,
Thow arte be-trayed of *thi* mene, that moste thow on
traystede
That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euer " 1956
- But the senators
of Rome tell the
emperor of the
defeat of his men
- Than the emper^{our} irus was angerde at his herte,
ffor oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnene
With kyng and with kaysere to consayle they wende,
Souerayngez of Sarazenez, and senatours manye , 1960
- He has been be-
trayed by those
he trusted most.
- Thus he semblez fulle sone certayne lordez,
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—
" My herte sothely es sette, assente 3if 3owe lykes,
To seke in-to Sexone, with my sekys knyghttez, 1964
To fyghte with my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,
3if I may fynde the freke with-in the foure haluez,
Or enture in-to Awguste awnters to seke, 1967
And hyde with my balde mene with-in *the* burghe ryche ,
Riste vs and reuelle, and ryotte oure selfene,
Lende *thare* in delytte in lordechippeze ynewe,
To s^r Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghtez, 1971
With lordez of Lumberdye, to lette hyme *the* wayes "
- Then he makes a
noble feast in his
own tent for the
knights who
were engaged in
the fight
- Then the em-
peror is very
wroth
- He assembles a
council of war
- He tells them his
purpose to go
into Saxony,
- and enter into
Augusta,
- to rest and revel
till the arrival of
Sir Leo and the
lords of Lom-
bardy

Bot owre wyese kyng es warie to wayttene his renkes, King Arthur, getting intelligence of this, with draws his men secretly by the woods,
 And wyesly by *the* woddez voydez his oste,
 Gerte felschene his fyrez, flawmande fulle heghe,
 Trussene fulle traystely, and tieunt there-aftyre 1976
 SETHENE in-to Sessoyne, he soughte at the gayneste, takes the shortest road into Saxony,
 And at the surs of *the* sonne disseuerez his knyghttez
 fforsette theme the cité appone sere halfez,
 So-daynly on iche halfe, with seuene grett stales 1980 suddenly besets the city with seven bands
 Anely in the vale a vawewarde enbusches,
 Sir Valyant of Vylerns, with valyant knyghttez,
 Be-fore *the* kynggez visage made sicke avowez,
 To venquyse by victorie the rescownte of Rome 1984 Sir Valiant makes a vow to vanquish the viscount of Rome
 ffor-thi the kyng chargez hym, what chaunce so be-falle, The king gives him command of the vanguard,
 Cheftayne of *the* cheekke, with cheualrous knyghttez,
 And sythyne meles with mouthe, *that* he moste traistez,
 Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hym selfene, he himself directs the centre
 ffitte his fote-mene, alls hym faire thynkkes, 1989
 On frounte in the fore breste, the flou of his knyghttez,
 His archers on aythere halfe he orlaynede *ther*-aftyre He arranges the archers on either flank, [leaf 74, back]
 To schake in a sheltronē, to schotte whene *thame* lykez,
 He arrayed in *the* rerewarde fulle rialle knyghttez, places renowned knights for a rearguard
 With renkkes renownnd of *the* Rounde Table,
 Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neuer,
 The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe, 1996
 Sir Cayous, sir Clegis, and clene mene of armes,
 The kyng castes to kepe be *thaa* clere strandes
 Sir Lott and sir Launcelotte, *thuse* lordly knyghttez,
 Salle lenge on his lefte hande, with legyones ynewe,
 To mene in *the* morne-while, ȝif *the* myste happynne, Sir Lott and Sir Lancelot command a band on the left hand, which is to move in the mist of early morning
 Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghttez, Sir Cador and his men are to keep guard over the passes
 To kepe at *the* karfuke, to close in *ther* othere
 He plantez in sicke placez prynce and erlez, 2004
 That no powere sulde passe be no preué wayes
Bot the emperour onone, with honourable knyghttez
 And erlez, enteres the vale, awnters to seke,
 And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede, 2008 The emperor and his knights quickly enter the vale in search of adventures
 And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe, He finds Arthur's host drawn up in battle array,

- Our burlyche bolde kynge appone the bente howes,
 With his bataile one brede, and baners displayede
 He had *the* ceté for-sett appone sere halfes, 2012
 Bothe the clewez and *the* clyfez with clene mene of armez!
 The mosse and *the* marrasse, the mounttez so hye,
 With gret multytude of mene, to maire hym in *the*
 wayes
 When *sur* Lucius sees, he sais to his lordez, 2016
 "This traytow has treunt this tresone to wyche!
 He has the ceté forsett appone sere halfez,
 Alle *the* clewez and the cleyffez with clene mene of armez!
 Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, 2020
 Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer!
 Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byenez,
 Rewlede his Romayne, and realle knyghtez,
 Buschez in the awawmewarde the vescuonte of Rome,
 ffro Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghtez 2025
 Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,
 With egles aloues, enamelede of sable,
 Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkyn thare-aftyre,
 Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez, 2029
 ffor dauncesyng of Duche-mene, and dynnyng of pypez,
 Alle dynned fore dyne that in *the* dale houede
 And thane *sur* Lucius on lowde said lordlyche woidez,
 "Thynke one the myche renownne of *you* ryche
 fadyrs, 2033
 And the riators of Rome, *that* regnede with lordez,
 And the renkez ouer-rane alle that regnede in erthe,
 Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of aimes,
 In eueriche a viage the victorie was haldene, 2037
 In sette alle *the* Sarazenes with-in sevene wyntte,
 The parte ffro the porte Iaffe to Paradyse zatez!
 Thoghe a rewme be rebeHe, we rekke it bot lyttill!
 It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede! 2041
 Do dresse we thare-foie, and byde we no langere,
 ffore dredlesse with-owttnye dowtte, the daye schalle be
 ourez!"
- and all the posi-
 tions occupied
- Then Sir Lucius
 declares with
 wrath th it thure
 is no waye else but
 to fight, for he
 he may not
- He arrays his
 rich Romans
- The viscount is
 in the van
- He hosts his
 standard, the
 golden dragon
 enamelled with
 eyles
 They drink and
 make merry
- Sir Lucius ex-
 horts them to
 think on the
 great renown of
 Rome—how it
 had conquered all
 Christendom,
- [leaf 75]
- and all the land
 of the Saracens,
 from Jaffa to the
 gates of Paradise
- Without doubt
 they will quickly
 reduce these
 rebels

Whene *theise* wordez was saide, the Walsche kyng
hym selfene 2044

Whas warre of this wyderwyne, *that* werrayed his
knyghttez

Brothely in the vale *wit*h voyce he ascryez,—

“Viscownte of Valewnce, enuyous of dedys,

The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be reuengede !

Vnuenquiste for *this* place voyde schalle I neuer !”

Arthur calls upon
the viscount of
Valence, and
threatens him
with vengeance

Thane the vyscownte valiante, *wit*h a uoyse noble,
Auoyeddyde the awawewarde, enuerounde his horse,
He drissede in a derfe schelde, endenttyd *wit*h sable,

The viscount
boldly prepares
for the fray

With a dragone engowschede, dredfulle to schewe, 2053
Deuorande a dolphyne with dolefulle lates,

His device is a
dragon deuour-
ing a dolphin

In seyne that oure soueraygne sulde be distroyede,
And alle done of dawez with dynttez of swerddez,¹
ffor thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragone es raissede !

Thane the comlyche kyng castez in fewtyre, 2058
With a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene

The king lays
his lance in rest,
and pierces him
through the short
ribs

A-bowne *thespayre*² aspanne, emange *theschortte* rybbys,
That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez !

The blode sprente owtte and sprede as *the* horse sprynggez,
And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spekes he no more !

And thus has sir Valyant haldene his a-vowez, 2064

And thus has Sir
Valiant kept his
vow

And venqwyste *the* viscownte, *thate* victor was haldene !

Thane *sir* Ewayne *sir* Fytz Vrieneffulle enkerlye rydez
Onone to the *emperour* his egle to towche,

Sir Ewain makes
a bold attempt to
reach the em-
peror

Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe, 2068

Braydez owt his brande *wit*h a blyth chere,

Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys,

fferkez in with the fewle in his faire handez,

And fitttez in freely one frounte *wit*h his feris 2072

Now buskez *sir* Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene

Sir Lancelot slays
the lord Lucius

To *sir* Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hym hyttez,

Thurgh pawnce *and* platez he percede the maylez,

That the prowde penselle in his pawncche lengez ! 2076

The hede haylede owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,

¹ MS swreddez

² MS *thespayre* the spajere

Thurghe hawberke and hanche, *with the* harde wapyne !
 The stede and the steryne mane stykes to *the* grownde,
 Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez !

Sir Lott rejoices
 that his turn is
 now come

"Me lykez wele," sais *sur* Loth, "zone loidez aie
 delyu~~e~~ede ! 2081

The lott lengez nowe on me, *with* leue of my lorde
 To day salle my name be laide, and my life aftyre,
 Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that one zone lawnde houez !"
 Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle,
 Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche,

[leaf 75, back]

He slays a giant,

Enjoynede with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe !
 Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-*noth*er, 2088

and many war
 riors beside

Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, werrayande knyghtez,
 And wondes alle wathely, that in *the* waye stondez !
 ffyghttez *with* alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye,
 ffelled fele appone felde *with* his faire wapene, 2092
 Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,
 And alle enverounde the vale, and voyde whene hym
 likede !

The British bow
 men discharge
 their arrows

Thane bowmens of Bretayne brothely ther-aftyre
 Bekerde *with* bregaundez of ferre in tha laundez,
 With fionez fleterede *that* flitt fulle freschly *the* frekez,
 ffichene *with* fetheris thurghe *the* fyne maylez .
 Siche flyttynge es foule *that* so *the* flesche derys,
 That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedez , 2100

The Dutchmen
 throw darts

Dartes the Duche-mene daltene azaynes,
 With derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurghe scheldez ,
 Qwarelles qwayntly swappez thorowe knyghtez,
 With urne so wekyrly, that wynche they neu~~e~~ 2104

Many are slain
 by the sharp
 arrows

So they scherenkene fore schotte of *the* scharppe arowes,
 That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones !
 Thane nche stedes rependez, and rasches one armes ,
 The hale howndrethe one hye appone heyghe lygges,
 Bott gite *the* hathelieste on hy, haythene and *othe*r ,

But the giants
 make a terrible
 charge,

Alle hoursches ouer hede harmes to wyrke 2110
 And alle theis geauntez be-fore, engendeide *with* fendez,
 Ioynez on sir Ientalle, and gentille knyghtez,

With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede brayneze,
Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes, 2115

and with their
steel clubs destroy
many knights
on white steeds

Choppode thurgh cheualers one chalke-whyte stede
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-3ayneze,
Bot stonays and strykeze doune, that in the stale houys
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghtteze,
With crewelle contenaunce he cryede fulle lowde,—

Nothing can
stand agunst
them until Ai-
thur comes

“I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttlle,
And fore bare-legyde boyes, that one the bente houys !”

He despises
them,

He clekys owtte Colbrande fulle clenlyche burneschte,
Graythes hymne to Golapas, that greuyde moste,
Kuttes hymne euene by the knees clenly in sondyre
“Come downe,” quod the kyng, “and karpe to thy ferys !
Thowe arte to hye by the halfe, I hete the in trouthe !
Thow salle be handsomere in hye, with the helpe of my
Lorde !” 2128

and plucking out
Colbrande quicly
cuts the giant
Golapas in two
at the knees,

telling him he is
too high by half

With that stelene brande he strake ofe his hede
Steryndly in that stoure he strykes a-nother
Thus he setteze on seuene with his sekrye knyghtteze
Whylles sixty ware seruede soo, ne sessede they neuer !
And thus at the joynenyge the geaunteze are distroyede,
And at that journey for-justede with gentille lordez

Then he strikes
off his head

[leaf 76]
He and his
knights slay sixty
giants

Than the Romaynes, and the reznkkeze of the Rounde
fable,

The Romans
rully and make
a fierce
resistance.

Rewles theme in arraye, rerewarde ande other, 2136
With wyghte wapyneze of werre, thay wroghtene one
helmes,

Ratteze with rannke stele fulle ryalle maylez,
Bot they fitt¹ theme fayre, thes frekk byerneze,
ffewters in freely one fferaunte stedes, 2140
ffoyneze fulle felly with flyschande speris,
fretene of orfrayes feste appone scheldeze

So fele fay es in fyghte appone the felde leuyde, 2143
That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys !
By that swyftely one swarthe the swett es by-leuede,

So many are left
dead on the field,
that each path
in the forest runs
with red blood

¹ Or fut

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez
 Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stedeȝ,
 Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys, 2148
 ffaceȝ feteled vn-fane in filterede lakes,
 Alle craysed for-trodyne with trappede stedeȝ,
 The faireste *figured* folde¹ that *figurede* was euer,
 AHs ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones ! 2152
 Be than the Romayneȝ ware rebuykyde a lyttile,
 With-drawes theyme drerely, and dreches no lengaie,
 Oure prynce with his powere persewes theyme aftyre,
 Prekez one² *the* proudeste with his price knyghttez
 Sir Kayous, sir Clegys, with clene mene of armez, 2157
 Enconters theme at *the* clyffe with clene mene of aimes,
 ffyghttes faste in *the* fyrth, frythes no wapene,
 felled at *the* firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones !
 And when they fande theym foresett with oure fers
 knyghtez, 2161
 ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre,
 ffeghttez with alle *the* frappe, foynes with speres,
 And faughte with the frekkeste *that* to Fraunce langeȝ
 Bot sir Kayous *the* kene castis in fewtyre,
 Chaseȝ one a *coursere*, and to a kyngȝ rydys; 2166
 With a launce of Lettowe he thurleȝ his sydez,
 That the lyuer and *the* lunggez on *the* launce lengez
 The schafte sc[h]odyrde and schott in the schire byerne,
 And soughte thorowowte *the* schelde, and in *the* schalke
 rystez.
 Bot Kayous at the in-come was kepyd vn-fayre
 With a cowarde knyghte of *the* kythe ryche, 2172
 At *the* turnynge that tym the traytoure hym hitte
 In thorowe the felettes, and in *the* flawnke aftyre,
 That the boustous launce *the* bewells attamede,
 That braste at *the* brawlynge, and brake in *the* myddys
 Sir Kayous knewe wele, be *that* kyde wounde, 2177
 That he was dede of *the* dynte, and done owte of lyfe

The Romans
 begin to retreat,
 and Arthur
 presses on them

Sir Cayous, Sir
 Clegys and their
 men slay five
 hundred.

Sir Cayous rides
 to a king and
 thrusts him
 through with his
 lance.

but is sorely
 wounded by a
 coward knight

[leaf 76, back]

¹ Or felde

² Or over.

Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,
One this ryalle his dede to reuenge, 2180

"Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym sone,
Cleues hym wyth his clere brande clenliche in sondre !
"Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt wyth thi handes,
I hade for-geffene *the* my dede, be Crist now of hewyne !"

He weyndes to *the* wyese kyng, and wynly hym gretes,
"I am wathely woundide, waresche mone I neuer !"

He goes to the king, tells him he is mortally wounded, and bids him greet well the queen, the ladies of the court, and his wife

Wirke nowe thi wircupe, as *the* worlde askes,
And brynge me to beryelle, byd I no more ! 2188

Grete wele my ladye *the* qwene, ȝife *the* werlde happyne,
And alle *the* burliche birdes *that* to hir boure lengez,
And my worthily weife, *that* wrethide me neuer,
Bid hire fore hir wircupe wirke for my saulle !" 2192

The kynges confessour come, *with* Criste in his handes,
ffor to comforth the knyghte, kende hym *the* wordes

Then comes the king's confessor to comfort the knight

The knyghte coueride on his knees *with* a kaunt herte,
And caughte his Creatoure *that* comfurthes vs alle !

Thane remmes *the* riche kyng fore rewthe at his herte,
Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge,

Then Arthur, full of grief, rushes into the fray to avenge him

Presede in-to *the* plumpe, and with a prynce metes,
That was ayere of Egypt in thos este marches, 2200

Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre !
He broches euene thorowe *the* byerne, and *the* sadille

He cleaves an Egyptian prince asunder

bristes,

And at *the* bake of *the* blonke *the* bewelles entamede !

Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes a-nother, 2204

Another he chops in half

The medille of *that* myghtty, *that* hym myche greuede,
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,

That the myddys of *the* mane on *the* mounte fallez,
The tother halfe of *the* haunche on *the* horse leuyde

Of *that* hurte, aHs I hope, heles he neuer ! 2209

He schotte thorowe *the* schilttrouns *with* his scharpe
wapene,

He speeds his way through the battle, cutting men in sunder, bearing down banners,

Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez,
Baneres he bare downne, bryttenede scheldes, . 2212

and fiercely
wreaking his
wrath on his foes

Brothely with browne stele his brethe he *thare* wrekes,
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,
Woundes *these* whydyrewyns, werrayed knyghttes,
Thieppede thorowe *the* thykkys thryttene sythis, 2216
Thryngez throlly in the thrange, and chis euene aftyre!

Sir Gawaine goes
forwaid and meets
with the emperour

Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrchipfulle
knyghttez,

Wendez in the a-vawewarde be tha wodde hemmys,
Was waire of sir *Lucius*, one launde there he houys,
With lordez and ligge mene, that to hyme selfe lengede
Thane the emperour enkerly askes hym sonne, 2222
“What wille thow, Gawayne, wyke with thi wayne?”

[leaf 77]

I watte be thi waueyng, thow willnez aftyre sorowe,
I salle be wrokyne on thi wiethe, fore alle thi grete
wordez?”

Lucius with his
long sword
wounds Sir
Lionel,

He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one
ffaste,

And sir *Lyonelle* in the launde, lordely hym strykes,
Hittes hym on the hede, *that the* helme bristis, 2228
Hurtted his herne-pane an hannde-brede large!
Thus he layes one *the* lumppe, and lordlye *thems* seruede,

and many wor
shipful knyghts

Wondide worthuly wirchipfulle knyghttez!
ffighttez with *Florent* that beste es of swerde, 2232
Tille *the* fomande blode talle his fyste rynnes!

The Romans, ex-
cited by his
bravery, get the
better of Arthur's
men
Sir Bedwere is
slain

Than *the* Romayns releuyde, *that* are ware rebuykkyde,
And alle to-rattysoure mene with theire riste horsses,
ffore they see *thaire* cheftayne be chauffede so sore,
They chasse and choppe douneoure cheualrous knyghttes!
Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,
With a bullyche brannde, brode at *the* hultes,
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynns, 2240
And he rusches to *the* erthe, rewithe es the more!

Then Arthur
comes to the
rescue

Thane *the* conquerour tuke kepe, and come with his
strengthes

To reschewe *the* ryche mene of *the* Rounde Table,
To owtraye *the* emperour, 3if aunture it schewe, 2244
Ewyne to *the* egle, and “*Arthur*!” askryes

The emperour thane egerly at Arthure he strykez,
 Awkarde on *the* vmbrere, and egerly hym hittez !
 The nakyde swerde at *the* nese noyes hym sare, 2248
 The blode of [the] bolde kynges ouer *the* breste rynnys,
 Beblede at *the* brode schelde and *the* bryghte mayles !
 Oure bolde kynges bowes *the* blonke be *the* bryghte brydylle,
 With his burlyche brande a buffette hym reches, 2252
 Thourgh *the* brene and *the* breste w~~it~~h his bryghte wapyne,
 O-slante doune fro *the* slothe he slyttes at ones !
 Thus endys *the* emperour of Arthure hondes,
 And alle his austeryne oste *thare*-ofe ware affrayede !
 Now they ferke to *the* fyrthe, a fewe *that* are leuede,
 ffor ferdnesse of oure folke, by *the* fresche strandez !
 The floure of oure ferse mene one fferant stede
 ffolowes frekly on *the* frekes, thate ffrayede was neuer
 Thane *the* kyde conquerour cryes fulle lowde,— 2261
 “Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to *thi* selfene,
 That no captayne be keypde for none siluer,
 Or *sir* Kayous dede be cruelly vengede !” 2264
 “Nay,” sais *sir* Cador, “so me Cryste helpe !
 Thare ne es kaysere ne kynges, *that* vndire Criste ryngnes,
That I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez !”
 Thare myghte mene see chiftaynes, on chalke whittestedez,
 Choppe doune in the chaas cheualrye noble, 2269
 Romaines *the* ryche and ryalle kynges,
 Braste with ranke stele theire rybbys in sondyre !
 Braynes fore-brustene thurgh burneste helmes, 2272
 With brandez for-brittenede one biede in *the* laundez
 They hewed doune haythen mene with hilted swerdez,
 Be hole hundreth on hye, by *the* holte eynyes !
 Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire
 lyues, 2276
 Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatour of Rome !
 Thane releus *the* renkes of the Rounde Table,
 Be *the* riche reuare that rynnys so faire,
 Lugegez thaym lufye by *tha* lyghte strandez, 2280
 Alle on lawe in *the* lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes

The emperor
 strikes Arthur on
 the visor, and
 wounds his nose

Arthur gives him
 a buffet that cuts
 through his
 cuirass and his
 breast

Sir Lucius dies,
 and the Romans
 fly

Arthur's men
 pursue them.

The king bids
 them take venge-
 ance for *sir*
 Cayous

Sir Cador de-
 clares that he
 will spare neither
 king nor kaiser

[leaf 77, back]
 A fearful carnage
 follows

Heathen men are
 hewn down by
 hundreds

Arthur's men
plunder the rich
camp of the
Romians

Thay kaire to *the* karyage, and tuke whate they likes,
Kamelles and schadrisses, and cofirs fulle riche,
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes, 2284
Howsynge and herbeigage of heythene kynges ,

Horses, camels,
dromedaries,
milk white mules,
and many mar-
vellous beasts are
captured.

They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuise lordes,
Moyllez mylke whitte, and *meruayllous* bestez,
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble, 2288
Thei are of *the* Oryent, with honourable kynges

Bot sir Arthure onone ayeres *thei*-aftyre
Ewyne to *the* emperour, with honourable kyngis ,
Laughte hym vpe fulle louelyly with lordlyche knyghttez,
And ledde hym to *the* layere, thare the kyng lygges
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,
Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges,

The bodies of the
emperour and
the chief men of
Rome are em-
balmed and
wrapped in lead,

The Sowdane of Surry, and certayne kynges, 2296
Sexty of *the* cheefe senatours of Rome
Thane they bussches and bawmede *thaire* honourliche
kyngis,

Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftre,
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde 2300
Chawnge or chawffe, 3if *thay* myghte escheffe ,

enclosed in
chests, and sent
to Rome with
their bannes
over them

Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome,
With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre,
In whate countré *thay* kaire that knyghttesmyghte knawe
Iche kyng be his colours, in kyth whare [he] lengede
Onone one *the* secounde daye, sone by *the* morne,

Two senators
come barefoot
and kneel before
the conqueror.

Twa senatours ther come, and certayne knyghttez,
Hodles fro *the* hethe, ouer *the* holte eynes, 2308
Barefote ouer *the* bente, with brondes so ryche,
Bowes to *the* bolde kyng, and biddis hym *the* hiltes,
Whethere he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde
theyme on lyfe , 2311

Knelyde be-fore *the* conquerour in kyrtilles allone ,
With carefulle contenaunce *thay* karpide *these* wordes,—

“Twa senatours we are, thi subgettez of Rome,
That has sauede oure lyfe by *these* salte strandys ,
Hyd vs in *the* heghe wode, thurgh *the* helpynge of Criste;

Be-sekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde, 2317

Grante vs lyffe and lyme with leberalle herte, [leaf 78]

ffor his luffe that the lente this lordchipe in erthe ! "

" I graunte," *quod* [the] gude kyng, " thurghe grace of
my selfene, 2320

The king grants
them their lives
on condition of
their carrying a
message for him
to Rome

I guffe 3owe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,

So 3e doo my message menskefully at Rome,

That ilke charge *that* I 3ow 3uffe here be-fore my cheeffe
knyghttez "

" 3is," sais the *senatours*, " that salle we ensure, 2324

Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfille ,

We salle lett for no lede *that* lyffes in erthe,

ffore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,

That ne salle lelely in lande thi letteres pronounce, 2328

ffor duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in *the* payne ! "

Thane the banerettez of Bretayne broghte *thems* to
tentis ,

The Britons cause
barbers to shave
them, in token of
their submission

There barbours ware bownne, with basyns one lofte,

With warme wature¹ i-wys they wette theme fulle sone ,

They schouene thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,

To rekkene theis Romaynes recreaunt and 3oldene ,

ffor-thy schoue they theme to schewe, for skomfite of
Rome

They coupylde *the* kystys on kameles be-lyue, 2336

They fasten the
cheats on camels

On asses and arrabyes, theis honourable kynges ,

The *emperoure* for honoure, alle by hym one,

Euene appone *ane* olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere ,

The emperor s
body, for honour,
is by itself on an
elephant

Be-kende theme the captyfis, the kyngedide hyme selfene,

And alle by-fore his kene mene karpede thees wordes,—

" **H**ere are the kystis," *quod* the kyng, " kaire ouer
the mownttez ,

Arthur charges
them to say
that they have
brought the ar-
rears of tribute
due from him to
Rome

Mette fulle monee *that* 3e haue mekyll 3ernede,

The taxe and *the* trebutte of tene schore wynteres, 2344

That was tenefully tynte in tyme of oure elders

Saye to *the* *senatoure*, *the* ceté *that* 3emes,

That I sende hyme *the* somme, assaye how hyme likes !

¹ MS wartue

This is the only
tribute they will
ever get from
him

Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode
regnes, 2348

They hasten to
Rome and sum
mon the people
to the Capitol

Efte for to brawlle *theme* for my brode landez,
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytyle,
Bot syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez "
Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes, 2352
Knylles in the Capatoylle, and comowns assembles,
Souerayngez and senatours, the ceté *that* 3emes ,
Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and *other*, 2355

They perform
Arthur's message
as he directed

Alls *the* conquerour comaunde with cruelle wordes
" We hafe trystily trayuelled *this* tribute to feche,

They have
brought the taxes
from England and
Ireland, and all
the west

The taxe and *the* trewage of fowre score wynteris,
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle *thir* owtt illes,
That Arthure in the Occedente occupyes att ones 2360
He byddis 3ow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,
To brawle 3owe fore Bietayne ne his brode landes,
Ne aske hyme tribute ne taxe be nonkyns tytyle,
Bot syche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis 2364
We haffe foughttene inffrance, and vs es foule happenede,
And alle oure myche faire folke faye are by-leuede '
Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes *nother*,
Bott choppede downne in the chasse, syche chawmse es
be-fallene ' 2368

[leaf 78, back]
They declare that
they have suffer
ed defeat and
great loss,

and bid the Ro-
mans beware

We rede 3e store 3owe of stone, and stuffene 3our walles
3ow wakkens wandrethe and werre, be ware, 3if 3ow
lykes ' "

This great battle
between Arthur
and the Romans
was fought in the
cildens of May

I In the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene 2371
The roy ryaHe renownde, with his Rownde Table,
One the coste of Costantyne by *the* clere strandez,
Has *the* Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer '
Whene he hade foughttene in Fraunce, and the felde
wonnene,

Arthur buries his
knights,

And fersely his foomene felde owtte of lyfe, 2376

Sir Bedwere at
Byonne,
Sir Cayous at
Came

He bydes for *the* beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,
That in batelle with brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe
He beryes at Bayone *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche ,
The cors of Kayone *the* kene at Came es be-leufede,

- Kouernde with a crystalle clenly alle ouer , 2381
 His fadyre conqueride *that* kyth knyghtly with hondes
 Seyne in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghttez,
 Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar *the* ryche,
 Gud *sir* Cador at Came, as his kynde askes
 Thane *sir* Arthure onone, in *the* Auguste *ther*-aftyre,
 Enteiēs to Almayne wyth oster arrayed , 2387
 Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechene hys knyghtter,
 With his lele higge mene, as lorde in his awene
 And on *Christofre* daye a concelle he haldez,
 Withe kynges and kaysers, clerkkes and *other*,
 Comandez them kenely to caste alle *theire* wittys, 2392
 How he may *conquere* by crafte the kythe *that* he claymes
 Bot the conquerour kene, curtais and noble,
 Karpes in the concelle theys knyghtly wordez,—
 “Here es a knyghte in theis kleuys, enclesside with hilles,
 That I haue cowaite to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,
 That es Lorayne *the* lele, I kepe noghte to layne , “
 The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles 2399
 I wille that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,
 And seyne dresse wyth *the* duke, if destyny suffre
 The renke rebelle has bene vn-to my Rownde Table,
 Redy aye with Romaynes, and ryotte my landes !
 We salle rekkene fulle rathe, if resone so happene, 2404
 Who has ryghte to *that* rente, by ryche Gode of heuene !
 Thane wille I by Lumbardye lykande to schawe,
 Sett lawe in *the* lande, *that* laste salle euer ,
 The tyrauntez of *Turkayne* tempeste a littyll, 2408
 Talke with *the* temperalle, whilles my tyme lastez ,
 I gyffe my protceccioe to alle *the* pope landez,
 My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe
 It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndre Gode, 2412
 Owther Peter or Paule, *tha* postles of Rome.
 3if we spare the *spirituelle*, we spede bot the betture ,
 Whills we haue for to speke, spille salle it neuer !”
 Now they spede at *the* spurres, with-owtityne speche
 more, 2416

In the August
 after Arthur en-
 ters into Ger-
 many,
 and tarries at
 Luxemburg to
 heal his knights

He holds a coun-
 cil to devise how
 he may conquer
 all the territory
 that he claims

He makes a
 speech in the
 council, saying
 that he much de-
 sires the posses-
 sions of the duke
 of Lorraine,

who has long been
 a rebel to his
 Round Table

Full soon will he
 reckon who h is
 right to the rent

Afterwards he
 will go to Loun-
 bardy and then
 visit the tyrants
 of Turkey,

but he will give
 protection to all
 the lands of the
 [leaf 79]
 Pope, for it is
 folly to offend
 our father under
 God

If we spare the
 goods of the
 spirituality we
 shall speed the
 better

To *the* marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghtez,
 That es Lorraine alofede, as Londone es here ,
 Ceté¹ of *that* seynzowre, that soueraynge es holdene
 The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede, 2420
 With Ferrer and ² Ferawnte, and *other* foure knyghtez ,
 A-bowte the ceté *tha* seuene, they soughte at *the* nextte,
 To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes ,
 Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse, 2424
 Bekyrs at *the* bolde kyng with boustouse lates,
 Allblawsters at Arthure egaily schottes,
 ffor to hurte hyme or his horse with *that* hard wapene
 The kynge schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,
 Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys , 2429
 Lenges alle at layser, and lokes one the wallys,
 Whare *they* ware laweste the ledes to assaille
 "Sir," said *sir* ferrere, "a ffoly thowe wirrkkes,
 Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to *the* walles,
 Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche, 2434
 And schewe *the* with-ine, there to schende vs alle
 Hye vs hastylve heynne, or we mone fulle happene,
 ffor hutt they the or thy horse, it harmes for euer !"
 "Ife thow be ferde," quod the kyng, "I rede thow
 ryde vttere, 2438
 Lesse *that* they rywe the with theire rownnd wapyne !
 Thow arte bot a fawntkyne, no ferly me thynkkys !
 Thou wille beflayede for a flye *that* one thy fleschelyghttes !
 I ame nothyng agaste, so me Gode helpe ! 2442
 Thof sicke gadlynges be greuede, it greues me botlyttle !
 Thay wyne no wurchipe of me, bot wastys theire takle !
 They salle wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede !
 Salle neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my
 Lorde,
 To kylle a corownde kyng with ³ krysme enoynttede !"
 Thane come *the* herbariours, harageous knyghtez, 2448
 The hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre ,
 And oure forreours ferse, appone fele halves,

Arthur straight
way leads his
knights to lay
siege to Metz

They seek a place
to fix the engines

The bowmen
shoot at them

The king with
out his shield,
remains close to
the walls within
range of the
arrows

Sir Ferrere re-
monstrates with
him for exposing
himself to such
danger

Arthur scorns
him, and tells
him

that he would be
afraid of a fly
that lighted on
him

Never knave will
be allowed to kill
a crowned king

Then come the
gallant troops of
Arthur,

¹ MS Pety. ² MS ferrerannde ³ MS with with

- Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes ,
 fferkande in arraye theue ryalle knyghttez, 2452
- The renkez renownde of *the* Rownd Table
Alle the frekke mene of Fraunce folowede thare-aftyre,
 ffaire fittyde one frownte, and one the felde houys
 Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire hoisez,
 To schewene them semly in theire scheene wedes, 2457
- Buskes in batayle with baners displayede,
 With brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,
 With penouns and penselles of ylke prynce armes, 2460
- Appayrehde with perrye and *precious* stones
 The lawnces with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,
 Lyghtenande as *the* leuenynge, and lemand al ouer
- T**thane the price mene prekes, and proues *theire* horsez,
 Satilles to *the* ceté, appone sere halves, 2465
- Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-aftyre,
 Discoueris of schotte-mene, and skyrmys a lyttile ,
 Skayres *thaire* skottefers, and theire skowtte-waches, .
 Brittenes there barrers with theire bryghte wapyns, .
 Bett downe a barbycane, and *the* brygge wynnys 2470
- Ne hade the garnysone bene gude at *the* grete zates,
 They hade wonne that wone be theire awene strenghe !
- Thane with-drawes oure mene, and drusses theme bettyre,
 ffor dred of *the* drawe-brigge dasschede in sondre ,
 Hyes to *the* harbergage, thare the kyngz houys
 With his batelle one heghe, horsyde on stedys, 2476
- Thane was the prynce puruayed, and *theire* places
 nommene,
- Pyghte paullyons of paffe, and plattes in seegge
 Thane lenge they lordly, as *theme* leefte thoghte,
 Waches in ylke warde, as to *the* werre falles, 2480
- Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes
 One Sonondaye be *the* Soone has a flethe zoldene
 The kyngz calles one Florente, *that* flour was of
- knyghttez,—
- “The Fraunche-meine enfeblesches, ne failyme thynkkys !
 They are vn-fondyde folke in *tha* faire marches, 2485

and the renowned
 champions of the
 Round Table,
 and all the bold
 men of France
 following them

[leaf 79, back]

They proceed in
 battle-array with
 banners and broad
 shields, and
 pennons adorned
 with precious
 stones

The lances gleam
 like lightning

They encompass
 the city on diuers
 sides,

skirmish with the
 garrison,
 and break down
 their defences

But the garrison
 at the great gates
 checks them

Arthur's men
 withdraw to
 where the king
 is waiting

They pitch their
 tents, and pre-
 pare for a regular
 siege

Arthur calls Sir
 Florent,

for theme wantes *the* flesche and fude that theme lykes
 Here are florestez faire appone fele halues, 2487
 and sends him to forage for cattle And thedyre feemene are fiede with freliche bestes '
 Thow salle foonde to *the* felle, and forraye the mountes ,
 Sir fforawnt and *su* Florydas salle folowe thi brydylle ,
 Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure pople,
 That are feedde in *the* fyrthe with *the* froyte of *the* erthe
 Thare salle weende to *this* viage sir Gawayne hymselfene,
 Wardayne fulle wyrchipfulle, and so hym wele semes ,
 Sir Wecharde, *sir* Waltyre, theis wyrchipfulle knyghtes,
 With alle wyseste mene of *the* weste marches , 2496
 and many other knights of re- Sir Gawayne him self, the wor
 known shall accompany them, shipful warden,
 Goo now, warne alle *the* wache, Gawayne and *othei*,
 And weendes furthe on *your* waye withowttyne moo
 wordes " 2500
 These fresh men of arms start on
 their journey through woods
 and over hills [leaf 80]
 Now ferkes to *the* fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes,
 To *the* felle so fewe, theis fresclyche byeanes,
 Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and *othei*,
 Holtis and hare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504
 Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe ,
 And in the myste mornyng one a mede falles,
 Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttlyle,
 In swathes sweppene downe, fulle of swete floures 2508
 They fall upon a field of grass
 newly mown,
 Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes *theire* horses,
 To *the* grygyng of *the* daye, *that* byrdez ² gane syng,
 Whylls the surs of *the* sonne, *that* sonde es of Cryste,
 That solaces alle synfulle, *that* syghte has in erthe 2512
 where they bait their horses,
 while the birds sweetly sing
 Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir* Gawayne hyme
 selfene,
 Sir Gawayne goes forth by himself
 to seek adventures
 Als he *that* weysse was and wyghte,³ wondyrs to seke ,
 Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,
 Baytand one a wattere banke by *the* wodde eynis, 2516
 He sees a knight well armed,
 Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,
 Enbrassed a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,
 With burenne ony borne, bot a boye one,

¹ MS oo ² MS *that* byrdez *that* byrdes ³ MS wyghte wvghte

Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes 2520 and a page carry-
 He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable, ing his spear
 With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer, On his shield his
 A charebocke in *the* cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes, coat of arms is
 And a cheefe anterous, chalange who lykes 2524 depicted
 Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome with a glade wille !
 A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes, Sir Gawaine be-
 Gyrdes ewene ouere *the* streme one a stede ryche, holds him with
 To *that* steryne in stour, one strenghe *thare* he houys ! great joy, and
 Egerly one Inglsce "Arthure !" he askryes, 2529 goes across the
 The *tother* ouslye ansuers hym sone stream towais
 On a launde of Lorrayne with a lowde steuen, him
 That ledes myghte lystene *the* lenghe of a myle ! 2532 He shouts his
 "Whedyr prykkes thow, piloum, *that* profers so large ? cry, "Arthur
 Here pykes thowe no praye, profire whene *the* lykes ! The other answers
 Bot thow in *this* perelle ¹ put of the betture, with a loud voice
 Thow salle be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates !
 "Sir," sais sir Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe ! 2537 Then the strange
 Siche glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttile ! knight declares
 Bot if thowe graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happene, that Gawaine
 Or thowe goo of *this* greue, for alle thy grete wordes !" shall be his
 Thane *there* launces they lachene, thes lordlyche byernez, prisoner
 Laggene with longe speres one lyarde stedes , Sir Gawaine
 Cowpene at awntere be krafte of armes, treats his gient
 Tille bothe *the* crowelle speres broustene att ones ! 2544 words with con-
 Thorowe scheldys *they* schotte, and scherde thorowe tempt
 ma[i]les, Then they lay
 Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large ! their spears in
 Thus worthylye *thes* wyes wondede ere bothene , rest, and meet
 Or they wreke *theme* of wrethe a-waye wille *they* neuer !
 Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes, Both the spears
 Redely theis iathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550 strike flur, and
 Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys, wound the
 Hewes appone hawberkes with fulle harde wapyns ! knights
 fulle stowtly *they* stryke, thre steryne knyghttes, Fearful blows are
 Stokes at *the* stomake with stelyne poyntes, 2554 exchanged

¹ MS *pererelle*

fleghtene and floresche withe flawmande swerde,
 Tille *the* flawes of fyre flawmes one there helmes
 Thane *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide fulla
 sore,
 With Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes !
 Clefe *the* knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre ! 2559
 Who lukes to *the* lefte syde, whene his horse launches,
 With *the* lyghte of *the* sonne man myghte see his
 lyuere !
 Thane granes *the* gome fore greefe of his wondys,
 And gyrdis at *sir* Gawayne, as he by glentis ,
 And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes , 2564
 An alet enamelde he oches in sondre,
 Bristes *the* rerebrace with the bronde ryche,
 Kerues of at *the* couter with *the* clene egge,
 Ane[n]tis *the* awawmbrace, vrayllede with siluer ! 2568
 Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,
 With *the* venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede !
 That voydes so violently *that* alle his witte changede !
 The vesere, the aventaille, his vesturis ryche, 2572
 With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer !
 Thane this tyrante tite turnes *the* brydille,
 Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, "*thow* arte towchede !
 Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change, 2576
 ffor alle *the* barbours of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode
 stawnche !
 ffor he *that* es blemeste with *this* brade brande, blyne
 schalle he neuer "
 "3a," *quod* *sir* Gawayne, "*thow* greuës me bot
 lyttile ! 2579
 Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez !
 Thow trowes with thy talkynge *that* my harte talmes !
 Thow be-tydes *thou* fere or thowe hyene turne,
 Bot *thow* telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,
 What may staunche this blode *that* thus faste rynnes "
 "3ise, I say *the* sothely, and sekire *the* my trowthe,
 No surgone in Salame salle saue *the* bettyre ,

Sir Gawayne
waxes wroth, and
strikes grimly
with his sword
Galuth

He cleaves the
knight's shield
asunder, and lays
open his side

The knight
strikes fiercely at
Sir Gawayne

He cuts through
his armour and
draws blood,

which flows over
all his dress

Then the knight
jeers at him, and
says the blood
shall never be
staunched

Sir Gawayne de-
spises his words,

and bids him tell
what will stop
the bleeding

The knight will
tell Gawayne if

With-*thy* *that* thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste, he will allow
To schewe shortly my schrifte, and schape for myne shrift and pre
ende " 2588 pare himself for
his end

"3is," *quod* *sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe ! Gawayne readily
I gyfe *the* grace and graunt, *thofe* *thou* hafe grefe *seruede*, grants this
With-*thy* thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekes,
Thus sengilly and sulayne alle *thi* selfe one, 2592
And whate laye thow leues one, layne noghte *the* sothe,
And whate legyaunce, and where *thow* arte lorde "

"My name es *sir* Priamus, a prynce es my fadyre, The stranger
Praysede in his partyes with prouede kynges, 2596 knight tells him
In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene, that he is *Sir*
He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene theire landes, Priamus, son
Werreyand weisely wyntters and 3eres, 2599 of a prince,
Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe, who rebelled
And be wyrchfulle werre, his awene has he wonne against Rome,
He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlyng of kynges, and gained a
The vncl of his ayele, *sir* Ector of Troye, 2603 [leaf 81]
And here es the kynredene that I of come, kingdom
And Iudas and Iosue, *thuse* gentille knyghtes

I ame apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of *other*, He is of the blood
Of Alexandere and Aufnke, and alle *tha* owte landes, of Alexander and
I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede 2608 Hector of Troy.
In alle *the* price cetees that to *the* porte langes, related also to
I salle hafe trewly the tresow and the londes, Judas and
And bothe trebute and taxe whilles my tyme lastes Joshua,
I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home lengede, and is heir of
I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche, Africa
ffor-*thy* was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghttez, When at home he
To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadire, 2615 was so proud and
And I am for Cyrus witrye schamely supprisede, overbearing,
And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayed fore euere ! that he was sent
Now hafe I taulde *the* kyne that I ofe come, by his father to
Wille thow for knyghthede kene me thy name ? " 2619 this war with a
band of knights

"Be Criste," *quod* *sir* Gawayne, "knyghte was I neuer ! He desires to
With *the* kydde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre know *Sir* Ga-
Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and 3eres, wayne's name
Sir Gawayne an
swears devoutfully
that he is only a
knaue of Arthur's
chamber

"He made me a
yeoman at Yule,
and gave me
great gifts "

"If his knaves
be such his
knights are no
ble!" exclaims
Sir Priamus
Alexander and
Hector will be
nothing to him

Then Sir Gawaine
tells him the
truth

He is Sir Ga-
waine, cousin to
the conqueror,
the richest knight
of all the Round
Table

[leaf 51, back]
Then Sir Priamus
says he is better
pleased than if he
were prince of
Provence and
Paris

Then he warns
Gawaine that the
duke of Lorraine
with his knights
is lying in the
wood near

One his longe armou that hym beste lykid , 2623
I poyne alle his pavelyouns *that* to hym selfe pendes,
Dyghttes his dowbletteez for dukes and erles,
Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfene,
That he vsede in werre alle this aughte wyntter ! 2627
He made me 30mane at 3ole, and gafe me gret gyftes,
And c¹ ponde, and a horse, and harnayse full^e ryche ,
Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to serue,
I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe !" 2631
"Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghtteez are noble !
Therees no kynge vndire Criste may kempe with hym one !
He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle *the* erthe lowttede,
Abillere *thane euer* was *sir* Ector of Troye 2635
Now fore the krisome *that thou* kaghte *that day thou*
was crystenede,

Whethure thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now *the*
sothe "

"My name es *sir* Gawayne, I graunt *the* for sothe,
Cosyne to *the* conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene ,
Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre, 2640
And rollede the richeste of alle *the* Rounde Table !
I ame *the* dussepere and duke he dubbede with his hondes,
Deynttely on a daye be-fore his dere knyghtes ,
Gruche noghte, gude *sir*, *thofe* me this grace happene ;
It es *the* gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene !" 2645

"Petire !" sais Priamus, "now payes me bettre
Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche !
flore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to *the* harte,
Thane euer any prikkere had siche a pryse wonnyne !
Bot here es herberde at hande, in 3one huge holtes,
Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede 3if the lyke ! 2651
The duke of Lorryne the derfe, with his dere knyghtes,
The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche mene many,
The lordes of Lumbardye that leders are haldene,
The garnysone of Godarde gaylyche arrayede, 2655
The wyese of *the* Westuale, wurchipfull^e biernez,

Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe,
 They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,
 Sixty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekýre mene of
 armez, 2659 There is a
mighty host
well armed

Bot ȝif thou hýe fro *this* hethe, it harmes vs bothe,
 And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer!
 Tak heede to *this* hansemane, *that* he no horne blawe,
 Are thoue heyly in haste beese hewene al to peces,
 ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle, 2664
 Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe,
 Be thou raghte *with that* rowtt, thou rydes no forther,
 Ne thou bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe!"

Sir Gawayne wente or *the* wathe come, whare hym beste
 lykede, 2668 Sir Gawaine goes
with the wound-
ed knight to Ar-
thur's men,

With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore,
 Merkes to *the* mountayne there oure mene lenges,
 Baytaynde there blonkes *ther on the* brode mede,
 Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes, 2672 who are baiting
their horses on the
broad mead and

With lowde laghttars one lofte for lykyng of byrdez,
 Of larkes, of lynkwhyttez, *that* lufflyche songene,
 And some was sleghte one slepe *with* slaughte of *the* pople,
 That sange in *the* sesone in the schenne schawes,
 So lawe in *the* lawndez so lykande notes listening to the
songs of the
birds

Thane sir Whycher whas warre *thaire* wardayne was
 wondyde, 2678 Sir Whycher per-
ceives that Sir
Gawaine is
wounded,

And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes,
 Sir Wychere, sir Walchere, theis weise mene of armes,
 Had wondyre of sir Gawayne, and wente hyme a-gayns,
 Mett hym in the mydwaye, and meruaille theme t[h]oghte
 How he maisterede *that* mane, so myghtty of strengthes!
 Be alle *the* welthe of *the* werlde, so woo was *theme* neuer!
 "ffor alle oure wirchipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe!"

"Greue ȝow noghte," quod Gawayne, "for Godis luffe
 of heuene, 2687 Sir Gawaine
makes light of
his wounds

ffore this es bot goesomere, and gyffene one erles,
 Thoffemyschouldre beschrede, and myschelde thyrllede,
 And the wielde of myne arme werkkes a littalle,

His prisoner, Sir Priamus, has salves that will heal them	This prisonere <i>sir Priamus</i> , that has <i>perilous</i> wondes, Sais that he has <i>salvez</i> <i>salle</i> softene vs bothene " 2691
They assaut him to dismount	Thane starttes to his <i>sterape</i> <i>sterynfulle</i> knyghttez, And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his brydille, And lete his burlyche blonke baite on <i>the</i> flores ,
[leaf 82]	Braydes of his <i>bacenet</i> te and his <i>ryche</i> wedis, 2695 Bownnes to his brode schelde and bowes to <i>the</i> eithe, In alle the bodye of that bolde es no blode leuede ! Than preses to <i>sir Priamous</i> precious knyghtes,
The knights lift Sir Priamus from his horse	Auyssely of his horse hentes hym in armes , 2699 His helme and his hawberke <i>thay</i> taken of aftyre, And hastily for his hurte alle his herte chawngyd ,
They lay him down, and take off his weeds	They laide hyme downe in the lawnde, and laghte of his wedes, And he lenede hym one lange, or how hym beste lykede A ffoyle of fyne golde they fandle at his gyrdille, 2704 That es fulle of <i>the flour</i> of <i>the four</i> welle, That flowes owte of <i>Paradice</i> whene <i>the</i> fiode rysez, That myche froyt of fallez, that feede schalle vs alle , Be it frette on his flesche, <i>thare</i> synues are entamede, The fieke schalle be fische halle with-in fowie howres
A knight dresses their wounds	They <i>vincouere</i> that cors with fulle clene hondes , With clere watire a knyghte clensis there wondes, Keled theyme kyndly, and comforted <i>ther</i> hertes And whene <i>the</i> carffes ware clene, <i>thay</i> clede them azayne, Barelle ferrers they brochede, and broghte theme the wyne, Bothe brede and brawne, and bredis fulle ryche , 2715 Whene <i>thay</i> hade etene anone they armede after Thane tha awntrende men " <i>as armes</i> !" askryes, With a claryoune clere, thre knyghtez to-gedyre,
Then wine and provisions are brought to them	Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys — 2719 "3ondyr es a companye of clene mene of armes, The keneste in kontek that vndir Criste lenges , In 3one okene wode an oste are arrayede, Vndir-takande mene of <i>these</i> owte londes , 2723 As sais vs <i>sir Priamous</i> , so helpe seynt Peter ! "
The scouts bring news of the army in the wood	
Sir Gawaine is for attacking them,	"Go, mene," quod Gawayne, "and grape in 3oure hertez,

Who salle graythe to 3one greue to 3one gret lordes ,
 3if we gettlesse goo home, the kyng wille be greuede,
 And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttill 2728
 We are with *sir* Florente, as to-daye falles,
 That es floure of ffraunce, for he fleede neuer ,
 He was chosens and chargegide in chambire of *the* kynges,
 Chiftayne of *this* jouⁿ nee with cheualrye noble , 2732
 Whethure he fyghte or he flee, we salle folowe aftyre ,
 fore alle *the* fere of 3one folke forsake salle I neuer ! "

but refers to *Sir*
Florent the
 leader of the
 party

"fadyre," says *sir* Florent, "fulle faire 3e it telle !
 Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes ,
 3if any foly be-falle, *the* fawte salle be owrs,
 And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for eue^r ! 2738

Sir Florent ex-
 presses his defu-
 ence to *Sir Ga*
wayne, the warden
 of the knights of
 the Round Table,

Woundes noghte 3our wurchipe, my witte es bot symple ,
 3e are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as 3owe lykes ,
 3e are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve hundrethe,
 And *that* es fully to fewe to feghte with theme alle,
 ffore harlottez and hansemene salle helpe bott littill ,
 They wille hye theyme hyene for alle *theire* gret wordes !
 I rede 3e wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,
 And warpes wyllly a-waye, as wuchipfulle knyghtes "
 "I grawnte," quod *sir* Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe !
 Bot here are galyarde gomes *that* of *the* gre seruis,
 The kreuelleste knyghttes of *the* kynges chambyre,
 That kane carpe with the coppe knyghtly wordes ,
 We salle proue to-daye who salle the prys wyne " 2751

and thinks they
 are too few to
 [leaf 82, back]
 fight with so
 many

He is for a care-
 ful retreat

Nowe femours fers vn-to *the* fyrthe rydez,
 And fonngez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttez ,
 Prekes aftyre *the* pray, as pryce mene of armes
 florent and Floridas, with fyve score knyghttez, 2755
 folowede in *the* foreste, and on *the* way fowndys,
 flyngande a faste trott, and on *the* folke dryffes

Arthur's men
 advance to the
 wood

Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth
 Of freke mene to *the* fyrthe, appone fresche horses ,
 One *sir* Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede, 2760

A band of 500 of
 the enemy meet
 them, headed by
Sir Feraunt

Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,

- He flenges to *sir Florent*, and pristly he kyes,—
 “Why flees thou, falls knyghte? *the fende hafe thi saule!*”
 Thane *sir florent* was fayne, and in fewter castys,
 One Fawnelle of ffryselande to¹ fieraunt he rydys, 2765
 And raghte in *the reyne* on *the stede ryche*,
 And rydes to-ward the rowte, restes he no lengere!
 fulle butt in *the frounte* he flysches hym euene, 2768
 And alle dysfegoures his face with his felle wapene!
 Thurghe his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,
 And brustene his neke-bone, *that alle his breste stoppede!*
 Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede fulle lowde,
 “Thowe has killede colde dede *the kyng* of alle knyghttes!
 He has bene fraustede on felde in fyftene rewmes, 2774
 He fonde neuer no fleke myghte feghte with hym one!
 Thow schalle dye for his dede with my derfe wapene,
 And alle *the* doughtty for dule *that in* 30ne dale houes!”
 “ffy,” sais *sir floridas*, “thow fferyande wryche!
 Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthede schiewe!”
 Bot floridas with a swerde, as he by glenttys, 2780
 Alle *the flesche* of *the flanke* he flappes in sondyre,
 That alle *the filthe* of *the freke* and fele of *the guttes*
 fflooes his fole fotte, whene he furthe rydes! 2783
 Than rydes a renke to reschewe *that byerne*,
 That was Raynalde of *the Rodes*, and rebelle to Criste,
 Peruertede with paynyns *that Cristene* persewes,
 Presses in prowldy, as *the praye* wendes, 2787
 fiore he hade in Prewsslande myche pryce wonnene,
 ffor-thi in p:esence thare he profers so large!
 Bot thane a renke, *sir Richere* of *the Rounde Table*,
 One a ryalle stede rydes hym azaynes, 2791
 Thorowe a rownnde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,
 That the rosselde spere to his herte rynnes!
 The renke relys a-howte and rusches to *the erthe*,
 Roris fulle ruydlye, bot rade he no more! 2795
 Now alle *that es fere* and vnfaye of *thes* fyve hundreth

He calls scorn
fully on Sir Flo
rent,

who with his
lance in rest
pierces him
through the
brain

His cousin vows
vengeance for his
death,

but Sir Floridas
quickly disposes
of him

Sir Raynald, the
renegade, proudly
presses in,

but Sir Richer,
of the Round
Table, runs him
through with a
[leaf 88] —
spear

The rest of the
five hundred

¹ MS te,

ffalles on *sir* fflorent, a ffyve score knyghttes,
 Be-twyx a plasche and a flode, appone a flate lawnde,
 Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme
 agaynes 2799

fall on Sir Florent
 and his men

Than was lowde appone lofte "Lorrayne!" askryede,
 Whene ledys with longe speris lasschene to-gedyrs,
 And "Arthure!" one ouresyde, whene they meoghte ay lede

The one side
 shouts "Lor-
 raine" the other
 "Arthuri"

Than *sir* fflorent and Floridas in fewtyre they caste,
 fruschene one alle the ffrape, and biernes affrayede,
 ffelth fyve at the frounte thare they fyrste enteride,
 And, or they ferke forthire, fele of these othere! 2806
 Brenyes browddene they briste, brütenede scheldes,
 Bettes and beres downe the best that theme byddes,
 Alle that newlyde in the rowtte they rydene awaye,
 So rewdly they rere theys ryalle knyghttes!

Sir Florent and
 Sir Floridas per-
 form gret deede
 of valour

When *su* Priamous, that prince, per sayuede theire
 gamene, 2811

Sir Priamus be-
 seeches Gawaine
 that he may help
 Arthur's knights
 against the Sara-
 cens

He hade peté in heite that he ne durste profire,
 He wente to *sir* Gawayne, and sais hym these wordes,—
 "Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre,
 They are with Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo thane seuene
 hundreth 2815

Of the Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes,
 Walde thow suffire me, *su*, for sake of thi Criste,
 With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones"

"I giouche noghte," quod Gawayne, "the gree es
 thaire awene! 2819

Sir Gawayne says
 that they have
 not fought their
 full these fifteen
 winters

They mone hafe gweiddouns fulle grett graunt of my
 lorde,

Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene!
 ffrekes faughte noghte theire fille this fyftene wynter!
 I wille noghte stire with my stale halfe a stede lenghe,
 Bot they be stedde with more stuffe thane one zone stede
 houys" 2824

Thane *su* Gawayne was warre, with-owt tyne the wode
 hemmes, He sees, outside
 the wood,

men of West
phalia,

Wyes of *the* Westfale appone wyght horsez,
Walopande wodely, as *the* waye forthes, 2827
With alle *the* wapyns i-wys *that to the* werre longez
The erle Antelete the olde the avawmwarde he buskes,
Ayerande one ayther hande heghte thosande knyghtez,
His pelours and pausyers passede alle nombyre, 2831
That ever any prynce lede puruayed in erthe !

headed by the
Earl Antelete, who
leads 8000
knights

Than *the* duke of Lorryne dresesse thare-aftyre,
With dowbille of *the* Duche-mene, *that* doughtty waie
holdene ,

Paynymes of Fruyslande, prekkers fulle noble, 2835
Come prekkande be-fore with P^riamous knyghttez
Than saide the erle Antelete to Algere his brother,—

The Earl is in
dignant that Ar
thurs knights
should venture
to least so great
a host

“Me angers einestly at Arthures knyghtez !
Thus enkerly one an oste awnters *thene* selfene , 2839

[leaf 89, back]

They wille be owtrayedede anone, are vndrone rynges,
Thus folily one a felde to fyghte with vs alle !
Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes ! 2842
Walde they purposse take, and passe one theire waye,
Prike home to theire prynce, and theire play leue,
They myghtelenghene themelyefe, and lossene bottlittelle !
It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde !”

They had better
retreat while
they are able

Sir Alger, his
brother, says that
though they are
so few they are
a match for an
army

“Sir,” sais sir Algere, “thay hafe littelle vsede 2847
To be owtrayedede withe oste me angers *the* more !
The fayreste schalle be fullefeye, *that* in oure floke ryddez,
Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue !”

Sir Gawaine
encourages his
knights

Thane gud Gawayne, gracious and noble, 2851
Alle with glorious gle he glæddis his knyghtes,
“Gloppyns noghte, gud mene, for gleterand scheldes,
3ofe 3one gadlyngez be gaye one 3one gret horses !
Banerettez of Bietayne, buskes vp 3ow hertes ! 2855
Bees noghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne offthane byghte wedis !
We salle blenke theire boste for alle theire bolde profre,
Als bouxome as birde es in bede to hir lorde !

“If we fight to-
day the field
shall be ours”

3effe we feghte to-daye, *the* felde schalle be owis, 2859
The fekille faye salle faile, and falssede be distroyede !

3one folk is one ffrountere, vnfaistede theyme semes,
 They make faythe and faye to *the* fend seluene !

We salle in this viage victoues be holdene, 2863

And avauntede with voyce of valyant bienez,

Praysede with pryncez in presence of loides,

And luffed with ladyes in dyuerse londes !

Great shall be the
 rewards and joys
 of victory

Aughte neuer siche honoure none of oure elders, 2867

Vnwyne ne Absolone, ne none of thies *other* !

Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,¹

In distress let
 them complain to
 Mary the mild
 queen

That es oure maisters seyne, *that* he myche traistez,

Melys of *that* mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle, 2871

Who so meles of *that* mayde, myskaries he neuer !¹

Be *these* wordes waiesaide, they ware noghte ferre be-hynde

The enemy come
 upon them

Bot the lenghe of a launde, and "Loiayne !" askryes

Was neuer siche a justynge at *journé* in erthe, 2875

Never was there
 such a jousting
 Even th it in the
 valley of Jehonath
 that was not
 equal to it

In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,

Whene Iulyus *and* Ioatalle ware juggede to dy,

As was whene *the* ryche mene of *the* Rownde Table

Rusche in-to *the* rowte one ryalle stedes ! 2879

ffor so raythely *thay* rusche with roselde speris,

That the raskaille was rade, and rane to *the* grefes,

The rascal rout
 run to the groves

And karede to *that* courte as cowardes for euer !

"Peter !" sais *sir* Gawayne, "this gladdez myne heite !

Gawayne rejoices
 at the sight of
 the rabble

That 3one gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbre,

I hope that thees harlottez salle harne vs bot littille,

ffore they wille hyde theme in haste with-in 3one holte

enis ! 2886

Thay are fewere one ffelde *than* *thay* were fyrste nombirde,

[leaf 84]

Befourtty thousande in faythe, foralle theyre faire hostes "

Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,

Has joned one *sir* Ierante, a justis of Walis,

A huge giant is
 slain by a justice
 of Wales

Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,

And a fyne gesserawnte of gentille mayles, 2892

Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre !

One a jambe stede *this* jurnee he makes,

¹ *neune struck out, and mene written instead*

Thus es *the* geante for-juste, that erawnte Iewe, 2895
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym *the* more !

Sir Friederick at
tacks the British
forayers

Than the genatours of Genne enjoynes att ones,
And frykis one *the* fiowntere welles a fyve hundreth ,
A freke highte *sir* fiederke, with fulle fele *other*, 2899
fferkes one a frusche, and fresclyche askryes

The knyghts of
the Round Table
advance and fight
valiantly

To fyghte with oure fforreours, *that* one felde hous
And thane the ryalle renkkes of *the* Rownde Table
Rade furth fulle earnestly, and rydis theme agaynes,
Mellis with the medille-warde, bot they ware illemachede,
Of sicke a grett multytude was *meruayle* to here
Seyne at *the* assemblé the Sarazenes discoueres
The soueraynge of Sessoyne, that saluede was *newe* ,
Gyawntis for-justede with gentille knyghtes, 2908
Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to *the* herte !
They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,
That the hiltede swerdes to *thaire* hertes rynnys !
Than *the* renkes renownde of *the* Rownd Table
Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayede wreches , 2913
And thus they dreuene to *the* dede dukes and erles,
Alle *the* dreghe of *the* daye, with dredfulle werkes !

Sir Priamus and
his followers de-
sert to the side
of Arthur's men

Tthane *sir* Priamous *the* prynce, in presens of lordes,
Presez to his penowne, and pertly it hentes,
Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys
To *the* ryalle rowte of *the* Rownde Table , 2919
And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,
ffor they his resone had rede on his schelde ryche
Owte of *the* scheltrone *they* schede, as schepe of a folde,
And stens furth to *the* stowre, and stode be *theire* lorde !
Seyne theysent to *the* duke, and saide hym *thise* wordes,—
“ We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex 3ere and more ,
We for sake *the* to-daye be serte of owre lorde , 2926
We sewe to oure soueraynge in sere kynges londes
Vs defawtes oure feez of *this* foure wyntteres ,
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes ,
Oure wages are werede owte, and *this* werre endide,

They upbraide the
Duke of Lorraine
for not having
paid them their
wages

We maye *with* oure wirchipe weend whethure vs lykes !
 I ied *thowe* trette of a trewe, and trofie no lengere,
 Or *thow* salle tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene "
 "fya debles!" saidet *the* duke, "the deuelle haue *your* bones!" The Duke answers furiously [leaf 84, back]
 The dawngere of *3on* doggez drede schalle I neuer !
 We salle dele this daye, be dedes of armes, 2936
 My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes !
 Sicke sowdeours as *3e* I sett bot att lyttile,
 That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde !" 2939
 The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,
 Drawes hym a dromedarie, with diedfulle knyghtez,
 Graythes to *syn* Gawayne, with fulle gret nowmbyre He charges Arthur's knights on a dromedary
 Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuouse are holdene 2943
 Thas fresche horsede mene to *the* frownt rydes,
 felles of oure fforreours be fourtty at ones ! His men fell many of the forayers
 They hade foughttene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe,
 It was no ferly, in *faythe*, *thofe* they faynt waxene
 Thane *syn* Gawayne was grefede, and grypys his spere,
 And gyrdex in agayne with galyarde knyghttez, 2949 Sir Gawaine grasps his spear
 Metes *the* maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,
 As man of *this* medille-erthe, that moste hade greuede
 Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of *the* kynges chambyre,
 Was warde to *sir* Wawayne of *the* weste marches, Child Chastelaune slays Sir Cheldrik,
 Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,
 With a chasyng spere he chokkes hym thurghe ! 2955
 This chekke hyme eschewede be chauncez of armes,
 So *thay* chase *that* childe, eschape may he neuer !
 Bot on Swyane of Swecy, with a swerde egge,
 The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre ! 2959
 He swounande diede, *and* on *the* swarthe lengede, and is slain by Swyan
 Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more !
Than *syn* Gawayne gretes with his gray eghne, Gawaine grieves for him
 The guyte was a gude mane, be-gynnande of armes
 ffore the charry childe so his chere chawngide, 2964
 That the chillande watire one his chekes rynnyde !
 "Woo es me," quod Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hade ,

I salte wage for that wye alle *that* I welde, 2967
 Bot I be wrokene on that wye, that thus has hym wondyde!"
 He dresses hym dreuly, and to *the* duke rydes,
 He slay a one Sir Dolphyn, Bot one *sir* Dolphyne the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,
 And *sir* Gawayne hym gyrd with a grym launce, 2971
 That the groundene spere glade to his heite!
 And egeuly he hente owte, and huite a-nothe*r*,
 then Hurdolf, happy in armes, An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes,
 Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hym*e* thorowe, 2975
 That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes!
 Thare es slayne in *that* slope, be elagere of his hondes,
 and sixty more Sixty slongene in a slade of sleghe men of armes!
 Thofe *sir* Gawaynne ware wo, he wayttes hym by,
 And was warre of *that* wye that the childe wondyde,
 He rvenge*s* the chid, And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,
 That he swyftly swelte, and on *the* erthe swounes!
 [leaf 85] And thane herayke*st* to *the* owte, and iuysches one helmys,
 and cuts his way through the enemy Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes, 2984
 Rydes one a rawndoune, and his rayke holdes,
 Thorow-owte *the* rereward*e* he holdes wayes,
 And thare raughte in the reyne this ryalle *the* ryche,
 And rydez in-to *the* rowte of *the* Rownde Table
 The great deeds of Arthur's chivalrous men secure the victory
 Thane oure cheualrous¹ men changene theire horsez,
 Chases and choppes downe cheftaynes noble,
 Hittes full*e* hertely on helmes and scheldes, 2991
 Hurtes and hewes downe haythene knyghtez!
 Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to *the* scholdurs!
 Was neuer siche a clamour of capitaynes in erthe!
 Thare was kynges sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,
 And knyghtes of *the* contré, that knawene was ryche,
 Lordes of Lorayne and Lumbardye bothene 2997
 Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure lele knyghttez,
 Thas *that* chasede that daye, theire chaunce was betune,
 Swiche a cheke at a chace escheu*e*de theyme neuer!
 Sir Florent presses on with five score knights
 When *sir* fflorent, be fyghte, had *the* felde wonene,
 He fferkes me be-fore with fyve score knyghttez,

¹ MS cheualrou*s*

Theire prayes and *theire* presoneres passes one aftyre,
 With pylours, and pausers, and pryse mene of armes
 Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghttez,
 Gas in at *the* gayneste, as gydes hym telles,
 ffore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes 3007
 Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche
 ffore-thy they stode at the straytez, and with his stale
 houede,

*Sir Gawayne fol-
lows with cau-
tion,*

Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis,
 Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede,
 Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene 3012
 An hawrawde hyes be-fore, the beste of the lordes,
 Hom at *the* herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes,
 Tornys tytte to *the* tente, and to the kynges telles 3015
 Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spede,—
 “Alle thy forreous are fere, that forrayede with-owttyne,
 Sir fflorent, and *sir* ffloidas, and alle thy ferse knyghtez,
 Thay hafe forrayede and foghtene with fulle gret nowm-
 byre, 3019

*and sees the city
which Arthur
is besieging
won on the same
day*

*A herald hies
to Arthur and
tells him of the
victory of his
knights,*

And fele of thy foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe!
 Oure wirchipfulle waidayne es wele escheuyde,
 ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipe for euere,
 He has Dolfyne slayne, and *the* duke takyne! 3023
 Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes!
 He has presoners price, prynceez and erles,
 Of *the* richeste blode *that* regnys in erthe!
 Alle thy cheuallious mene faue are eschewede, 3027
 Bot a childe Chasteleynne myschance es be-fallene”
 “Hawtayne,” sais *the* kyng, “harawde, be Criste!
 Thow has helyd myne heite, I hete the for-sothe!
 I zife the in Hamptone a hundreth pownde laige” 3031

*and how Sir Ga-
wayne has won
worship for ever*

*Then the king
rejoices and gives
him a hundred
pounds*

[leaf 82, back]

*Arthur assembles
his knights to as-
sault the city*

The kyng *than* to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,
 With somercastelle and sowe appone seie halfes,
 Skyftis his skotferis, and skayles the wallis,
 And iche wache¹ has his warde with wiese mene of
 armes 3035

¹ Or wathe

- Thane boldly *thay* buske, and bendes engynes,
 Payses in pylotes and proues theue castes ,
 Churches and chappels are beaten to earth Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to *the* erthe,
 Churches and chapelles chalke-whitte blawnchede 3039
 Stone [s]tepelles fulle styffe in *the* strete ligges,
 Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many cheefe inns,
 Paysede and pelid downe playsterede walles ,
 The paine of the people is pity to heu The pyne of *the* pople was peté for to here ! 3043
 Thane *the* ducheze hire dyghte with damesels ryche,
 The cowntas of Crasyne with hir clere maydyns,
 Knehs downe in *the* kymnelles thare the kyng honede,
 On a couered horse comlyly arayedé , 3047
 They knewe hym by contenance, and criede fulle lowde,—
 “Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to *these* wordes !
 We be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as soueraynge and lorde,
 That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oune Criste ! 3051
 Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,
 Or *the* ceté be sodaynly with assawte wommene !”
 He weres his vesere with a vowt noble ,
 With vesage vertuous, this valyante bierne 3055
 Meles to hir myldly with fulle meke wordes,—
 “Salle no mysse do 3ow, ma dame, *that* to me lenges ,
 I gyf 3ow chartre of pes, and 3oure cheefe maydens,
 The childre and *the* chastemene, the cheualrous knyghtez ,
 The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littyle ! 3060
 He salle idene *the* fulle wele, dout 3ow noghte elles”
 Thane sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordes,
 ffor to leue *the* assawte, the cete was 3oldene , 3063
 With *the* erle eldeste sone he sent hym *the* kayes,
 And seside *the* same nyghte, be sent of *the* lordes
 The duke to Douere es dyghte, and alle his dere knyghtez,
 To duelle in dawngere and dole *the* dayes of hys lyue
 Thare fleede, at the ferrere 3ate, folke withowt tyne
 nombyre, 3068
 ffor ferde of *sir* fflorent and his fers knyghtez ,
 Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,
 With vetaile, and vesselle, and vestoure so ryche 3071

Thay buske vpe a banere abowne *the* brode zates

Of *sir* fflorent, in ffay so fayne was he neu^r !

The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to *the* wallys,

And saide, "I see be zone syngne the ceté es oures !"

*Sir Florent sees
by a sign that
the city is won*

Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayede, 3076

*Arthur enters
with his hosts*

Euene at *the* vndrone etles to lenge

In iche leuere on lowde the kyng^e did crye,

Of payne of lyf and lym and lesyng^e of londes,

[leaf 86]

That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede, 3080

*He forbids his
liegemen to lie
with the ladies*

Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,

Ne be no burgesse wyffe, better ne werse,

Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to *the* burghe longede

Whene *the* kyng Arthure had lely conquerid, 3084

*Arthur provides
for the govern-
ment of Lorraine
which he has
conquered*

And the castelle couerede of *the* kythe riche,

Alle *the* crowelle and kene, be craftes of aimes,

Captayns and constables, knewe hym foi lorde

He deuyssede and delte to dyuerse lordez, 3088

A dowere for *the* duche^e and hir dere childne,

Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle *the* lond^e,

That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his weise

knyghtez 3091

Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,

Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leef^e t[h]oghte,

And one *the* Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez,

*At Lamm^es he
goes to Lucerne*

Lengez thare at laysere with lykyng^e i-nowe, 3095

Thare his galays ware graythede, a full^e gret nombyre,

*His fair galley^s
are assembled*

Alle gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,

With cabanes couerede for kynges a-noyntede,

With clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and othe^r,

Sone stowede theire stuffe, and stablede theire hoises,

Strekes streke ouer *the* st^em in-to *the* straye lond^e

*He leads his
forces over the
high mountains
by marvellous
ways,*

Now he moues his myghte with myrthes of herte,

Ouere mowntes so hye, thase meruailous wayes, 3103

Gosse in by Goddarde, the garet^t he wynny^s,

*passes the St
Gothard after de-
feating the gar-
rison,*

Graythes the garnison^e grisely wondes !

Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys

With his hole bataylle, be-haldande a-bowte, 3107

looks down on
Lombardy, and
advances to
Como

Lukande one Lumbaidde, and one lowde melys,—

“ In 3one lykande londe, lorde be I thynke ”

Thane they cayre to Combe, with kynges a-noyntede,
That was kyde of *the* coste, kay of alle *other* 3111

Sir florent and *su* ffloridas *than* fowndes be-fore,

With ffeike mene of ffraunce welles a fyve hundreth ,

To *the* ceté vn-sene thay soghte at *the* gayneste,

Sir Florent and
Sir Floridas plant
an ambush,

And sett an enbuschement, als *theme* selfe lykys 3115

Thane ischewis owt of *that* ceté, fulle sone be *the* morne,

Slale discoverours, skyftes there horses ,

Than skyftes *thes* skouerours, and skippes one hyllis,

Diskoueres for skulkers that they no skathe lympene ,

Pouelalle and pastorelles passede one aflye, 3120

With porkes to pasture at the price 3ates ,

Boyes in *the* subarbis bourdene ffulle heghe,

At a bare syngleie that to *the* bente rynnys

Thane brekes oure buschemenit, and the bugge wynnes,

and capture the
city
[leaf 86, back]

Brayedez in-to *the* burghe with baners displayede, 3125

Stekes and stabbis¹ thorowe that them a-zayne-stondes ,
ffowre stretis, or *thay* stynte, they stroyens fore euere¹

The conqueror
holds his court
in Como

Now es the conquerour in Combe, and his courte holdes

With-in *the* kyde castelle, with kynges enoyntede ,

Reconsaillez² the comouns *that* to *the* kyth lengez,

Comfourthes *the* carefulle with knyghtly wordez , 3131

Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene ,

Bot alle *the* contré and he fulle sone ware accordide

The lord of
Milan sends to
offer submission
and tribute

The syre of Melane herde saye *the* ceté was wonnene,

And send to Arthure sertayne loides, 3135

Giete *sommes* of golde, sexti horse chargegid,

Be soghte hyme as souerayne to socoure *the* pople,

And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for euere ,

And make hyme *ser* uece and suytte for his sere londes ,

ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pownte Tremble, 3140

ffor Pyse, and for Pavy, he *pro*fers fulle large,

Bothe purpur, and palle, and precious stonys,

Palfrayes for any prynee, and prouede stedes , 3143

¹ MS stablis

² Or Beconsaillez

And ilke a ȝere for Melane a melione of golde,
 Mekely at Martynmesse to menske with his hoides,
 And euer withowttyne askyng he and his ayers
 Be homagers to Arthure, whilles his lyffe lastis 3147
 The kyng be his concelle a condethe hym sendis,
 And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde

He pays homage
to Arthur at
Como

In-to Tuskane he tournez, whene *thus* wele tymede,
 Takes townnes fulle tyte with towres fulle heghe,
 Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152
 Townes he turnes, and turmentez *the* pople,
 Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,
 Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngens theire handis, 3155
 And alle he wastys with weie, thaire he awaye rydez,
 Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandiethe he
 wroghte!

Arthur enters
Tuscany,

and ravages the
country

Thus they spryngens and spiede, and sparis bot lyttle,
 Spoylles dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes, 3159
 Spendis vn-sparely, *that* sparede was lange,
 Spedis theme to Spolett with speris newe!
 ffo Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hyme
 sprynges, 3162

And spekyngs of his spencis, dissprite es fulle hugge!
 Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes,
 Avissely in *that* vale he vetailles his biernez,
 With vernage, and *other* wyne, and venysone bakene,
 And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge 3167

In the Vale of
Viterbo he
victuals his men

Vertely the awawmwarde voydez theire horsez,
 In the Vertennone vale, the vines r-mangez;
 Thaire suggeornes this souerayne, with solace in herte,
 To see whene the senatours sent any wordes, 3171

Reuelle with riche wyne, riotes hym selfene,
 This roy with his ryalle mene of *the* Rownde Table,
 With myrthis, and melodye, and manykyne gamies,
 Was neuer meriere men made one this erthe! 3175

The king and his
knights make
[leaf 87]
great merriment

Bot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thare-aftyre,
 The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede
 Knelis to *the* conquerour, and karpes thre wordes,

The cunningest
Cardinal of Rome
is sent to him,

and offers that
the Pope shall
crown him as
sovereign in
Rome

Hostages are
given for the
truth of his
words

The Roman sena-
tors are solemnly
feasted

Arthur glorifies
himself for his
great success

Prayes hym for *the* pes, and profyis fulle large, 3179
To hafe peté of *the* pope, *that* put was at-vndere ,
Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Loide,
Bot a seuenyghte daye to *thay* ware alle semblede,
And they schulde sekeilye hym see the Sonondaye
ther aftyre, 3183

In the ceté of Rome, as soueraynge and loide ,
And crowne hym kyndly with kysomede hondes,
With his ceptre, as soueraynge and lorde
Of this vndyrtakynge ostage are comyne, 3187
Of ayers fulle auenaunt awughte score childrenne,
In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde
And be-tuke theme the kyng, and his clere knyghttes
When they had tretide thiére trewe, with trowmpynge
ther-after 3191

They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables whare raysede ,
The kyng hym selfene es sette, and certayne lordes,
Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez,
Alle the senatours are sette sere be *thame* one, 3195

Seifed solemnly with selcouthe metes
The kyng myghtty of myrthe, with his mylde wordes,
Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,
Comforthes the caidynalle so knyghtly¹ hym seluene ,
And this roye iyalles, as romawns vs tellis, 3200
Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table

The tawghte mene and *the* conynge, whene theme tyme
thoghte,

Tas there lefe at *the* kyng, and tornede agayne , 3203
To *the* ceté *that* nyghte *thay*e soughte at *the* gayneste,
And thus the ostage of Rome with Arthure es leuede

Than this roy royalle iehersys theis wordes,—
“ Now may we reuelle and riste, fore Rome es oure
awene ! 3207

Make oure ostage at ese, *thuse* auenaunt² childyrene,
And luk 3e hondens theme alle that in myne oste lengez,
The emperour of Almayne, and alle theis este marches ,

¹ MS kynghtly

² MS auenaunt

+

We salle be ouerlynge of alle *that* one the erthe lengez ¹
 We wille by *the* Crosse dayes encroche ¹ *theis* londez,
 And at *the* Crystynmesse daye be crowned ² ther-aftyre , He will be crown
ed at Christm is
in Rome, and
hold his Round
Table there
 Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my Rownde Table,
 Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes , 3215
 Syne graythe ouer *the* grette see with gud mene of armes,
 To reuenge the renke that one the rode dyede ¹”
 Thane this comlyche kynge, as cronycles tellys,
 Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte , 3219 He goes to bed
and dreams
 Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdille,
 And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis
 Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede ,
 He mett in the morne-while fulle meruaylous diemes ¹ [leaf 87, back.]
 And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to *the* ende,
 The kynge dares for dowte, dye as he scholde , 3225
 Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles,— He sends for his
philosophers, and
tells them the
dream
 “ Sene I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer ¹
 ffor-thy rawnsakes redyly, and rede me my swefennys,
 And I salle iedily and ryghte rehersene the sothe
 Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one,
 That I ne wiste no waye whedire *that* I scholde, 3231 He was in a
wood among wild
beasts,
 ffore woluez, and whilde swynne, and wykkyde bestez ,
 Walkede in that wasternne, wathes to seche ,
 Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde *there* tuskes,
 Alle fore lapyng of blude of my lele knyghtez ¹ 3235 which were lick
ing from their
teeth the blood
of his knyghts
 Thurgh *that* foreste I fiede, thare fioures whare heghe,
 ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thynggez ,
 Merkede to a medowe with montayngnes enclosyde, He flew to a
beautiful meadow
enclosed with
mountains, and
having vines of
silver and grapes
of gold
 The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde ¹
 The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,
 With clauer and clereworte cleder euene ouer ,
 The vale was enuerownde ³ with vynes of siluer,
 Alle with grapis of golde, gretter ware neuer, 3243
 Enhorilde with arborye and alkyns trees,
 Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez *there*-vndyre ,

¹ MS Encroche encroche² MS crownend³ MS euene rownde

Alle froytez foddemid was *that* floreschede in erthe,
ffaire futhed in frawnke appone tha free bowes, 3247
Whas thare no downkyng of dewe that oghte dere
scholde,

With *the* diowghte of *the* daye alle drye waie *the* flores !

A beautiful
duchess de-
scended from the
clouds,

Than discendis in the dale, downe fra *the* clowddez,
A duches dereworthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis, 3251
In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely hewede,

dressed in gor-
geous apparel

Alle with loyotoun ouer-laide lowe to *the* hemmes,
And with ladyly lappes the lenghe of a 3erde,
And alle redily reueisside with rebanes of golde, 3255

She whirled a
stunne wheel
with her hands

Bruchez and besauntez, and *other* byghte stonys,
With hir bake and hir breste was brochede alle ouer,
With kelle and with corenalle clenliche arayede,
And *that* so comly of colour one knowene was neuer !
A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hui whitte hondez,
Ouer-whelme alle qwayntly *the* whele as cho scholde,
The 1owelle whas rede golde with ryalle stonys,
Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe, 3263

Thereon was a
char of silver,
ornamented with
carbuncles
Kings clawe to
the wheel one
after another

The spekes was splentide alle with speltis of siluer,
The space of a spere lenghe springande fulle faire,
There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer,
And chekyrde with chareboole chawngyng of hewes,
Appone *the* compas ther clewde kyngis one rawe,
With corowns of clere golde *that* krakede in sondre

Six had fallen
from the settle,
and lamented
their misfortune

Sex was of *that* setille fulle sodaynlliche fallene, 3270
Ilike a segge by hyme selfe, and saide theis wordez,—
'That euer I reignede one *thir* rog, me rewes it euer !

[leaf 86]

Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in erthe !
Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte elles,
Bot reuaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone the pople ! 3275
And thus I drife forthe my dayes, whilles I dreghe
myghte,

The first was a
litle man with
lean loms and
long hair

And there-fore deiflyche I am dampnede for euer !'
The laste was a litylle mane that laide was be-nethe,
His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche to schewe, 3279

The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a 3erde,
 His lre and his lyghame lamede fulle sore ,
The two eyne of the byeryne was brighttere thane siluer,
 The *tothe* was 3alowere thene the 3olke of a naye

'I was lorde,' *quod* the lede, 'of londes 1-newe, 3284
 And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in erthe ,
 And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,
 Bot lightly now ame I loste, leue iche mane the sothe !'

He had been lord
 of many lands,
 but now was lost

The secunde *sir* for-sothe *that* sewede theme aftyre,
 Was sekerare to my sighte, and saddare in armes ,
 Ofte he syghede vn-sownde, and said theis wordes,—
 'On 3one see hafe I sittene, als souerayne and lorde,
 And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes , 3292
 And nowe my lordchippes are loste, and laide for euer !'

The second had
 sat on the seat as
 sovereign and
 lord.

The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the
 schuldrys,

The third was
 stout and strong

A thra man to thrette of, there thretty waie gaderide ,
 His dyademe was droppede downe, dubbyde with stonys,
 Endente alle with diamawndis, and dighte for the nonis ,
 'I was dredde in my dayes,' he said, 'in dyuerse rewmes,
 And now dampnede to the dede, and dole es the more !'

He had been
 dredded in his
 day

The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,
 The fayreste of fegure that fourmede was euer !
 'I was frekke in my fathe,' he said, 'whilles I one
 fowlde regnede,

The fourth was a
 fair man, but foul
 mischance had
 now happened to
 him

ffamows in fferre londis, and floure of alle kynges , 3303
 Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapsede,
 ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-leuyde !'

The fifte was a faire mane *thane* fele of *thies other*,
 A fforsesy mane and a ferse, with fomand lppis , 3307
 He fongede faste one the feleyghes, and fayled his armes,
 Bot 3it he failede and felle a fyfty fote large ,
 Bot 3it he sprange and sprete, and spraddene his armes,
 And one the spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes thire wordes—

The fifth was very
 fierce and violent

'I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312
 As souerayne and seyngnour of sere kynges londis ;

He had been
 sovereign in
 Syria, but was
 now fallen

Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,
And for sake of my syne, 3one sete es me rewede !'

The sixth had a
psalter well
bound, a harp,
and a sling

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire, 3317
A harpe and a hande-slynge with haide flynte stones,
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes

He had been
among the
[leaf 88, back]
doughtiest in
his day, but had
been marred by
the maiden

One of the doughtyeste that duelled in eithe,
Bot I was meiride one molde in my moste strengththis,
With this maydene so mylde, *that* mofes vs alle' 3323

Two kings were
climbing to the
chirn, but failed
to reach it

Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one
heghe,

The creste of *the* compas they couette fulle 3erne,
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange
here-aftyre,

As two of *the* cheffeste chosene in erthe !' 3327

The childre ware chalke-whitte, chekys and *other*,
Bot the chayere a-bownne cheuede they neuer

The one was pass-
ing fair of feature,
and arrayed in
blue with fleurs
de lis of gold

The forthirmaste was freely, *with* a fiount laige,
The faireste of fyssnamy *that* fow mede was euer, 3331

And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,
With flourdelice of golde floreschede al ouer,

The other was
clad in silver,
with a cross of
gold

The *tother* was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,
With a comliche crosse coruene of golde, 3335

ffowre crosselettes krafty by *the* crosse ristes,
And ther-by knewe I the kynges, *that* crystned hyme
semyde

Arthur greeted
the Duchess, who
welcomed him

Thane I went to *that* wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis ! wele arte thou
fowndene, 3339

The aughte to wirchipe my wille, and thou wele cowthe,
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in eithe,
ffore alle thy wirchipe in werre by me has thou wonnene,
I hafe bene frendely, freke, and fremmede tille *other*,
That has *thow* fowndene in fairthe, and fele of *thi* biernez,
ffore I fellid downe *su* Frolle *with* frowaide knyghtes,
ffore-thi the fruytes of Fiaunce are freely thynne awene

- Thow salle *the* chayere escheue, I chese *the* my selfene, He was chosen to achieve the chair,
 Be-fore alle *the* cheftaynes chosene in this erthe ' 3348
- Scho lifte me vp lightly with hir lene hondes,
 And sette me softly in the see, *the* septe me rechede, and was set there in
 Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351
- That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte,
 Diessid oñe me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire, The kingly ornaments were given to him
 And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonys,
 Ënamelde with azoure, the erth there-ones depayntide,
 Selkylde with the salte see appone sere halves, 3356
 In sygne *that* I sothely was souerayne in erthe
- Than broght cho me a brande with fulle bryghte hultes, A sword with a bright hilt was brought to him
 And bade me brawdysche *the* blade, '*the* brande es
 myne awene 3359
- Many swayne with *the* swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede,
 ffor whilles thow swanke with the swerde, it swykkede
the neuer'
- Than raykes cho with roo, and riste whene hir likede,
 To *the* ryndes of *the* wode, richere was neuer, 3363
 Was no pomarie so pighte of pynce in erthe,
 Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot *paradys* one
- Scho bad *the* bewes scholde bewe downe, and bryng to He was taken to the wood, and the boughs were made to yield their fruit to him
 my hondes 3366
- Of *the* beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe,
 Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at oñes,
 The hegheste of iche a hurste, I hette þow for-sothe
- Scho bade me fythe noghte *the* fruyte, bot fonde whilles He was bid take [leaf 89] freely of the finest
 me likede,
- 'ffonde of *the* fyneste, thow freliche byerne, 3371
 And reche to *the* ipeste, and ryotte thy seluene '
 Riste, thow ryalle roye, for Rome es thyne awene '
 And I salle redily rolle *the* roo at *the* gayneste,
 And reche *the* riche wyne in rynsede coupes ' 3375 The lady drew wine for him from the spring,
- Thane cho wente to *the* welle by *the* wode emis,
 That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnes,
 Kaughte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire, 3378
 Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene and bade him drink to her

- And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owie,
 With alle lkynges and luffe, *that* any lede scholde ,
 Bot at *the* myddaye fulle ewyne alle hir mode chaungede,
 And mad myche manace with meruayllous wordez ,
 Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe hir browes
 ‘ Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste *that* me made !
 ffor thow salle lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,
 Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe ! ’
- Abowte scho whirles the whele, and whirles me vndire,
 Tille alle my qwarters *that* while where qwaste al to
 peces ! 3389
- And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire !
 And I hafe cheuende for chele, sen me this chance
 happenede
- Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle wey for-dremyde, 3392
 And now wate thow my woo, woide as *the* lykys ”
- “ ffreke,” sais the philosophre, “ thy fortune es passede !
 ffor thow salle fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykys !
 Thow arte at *the* hogheste, I hette the for-sothe ! 3396
 Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more !
 Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyede,
 Sakeles, in cirquytme, in sere kynges landis , 3399
 Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende !
 Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kyng, take kepe ȝif the lyke,
 ffor thow salle fersely falle with-in fyve wynters ! 3402
- ffownde abbayes in ffraunce, *the* froytez are theyne awene,
 ffore ffroulle, and for fferawnt, and for thir feise knyghtis,
 That thowe fremydly in ffraunce has faye be-leuede ,
 Take kepe ȝitte of *other* kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,
 That were conquerours kydde, and crownede in erthe ,
 The eldeste was Alexandere, *that* alle *the* erthe lowttede ,
 The *tother* Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume ,
 The thurde Iulyus Cesare, *that* geant was holdene,
 In iche jorne jentille, a-juggede with lordes , 3411
- The ferthe was *sir* Iudas, a justere fulle nobille,
 The maysterfulle Makabee, the myghttyeste of strengthes ,
- She spoke to him fiercely and told him that he should lose his life
- She whirled the wheel round, till his quarters were quashed and his chine chopped asunder by the chair
- The philosopher interprets the dream, and tells Arthur that his good fortune is passed
- He is to prepare for his end,
- and to found abbeyes in France
- He is bid take heed of the other kings who tried the chair
- The first was Alexander, the second Hector, the third Julius Cesar,
- the fourth Judas the Maccabee,

The fyfte was Iosue, *that* joly mane of armes, 3414 the fifth Joshua,

That in Ierusalem oste fulle myche joye lymppede ,

The sexte was Daud *the* dere, demyd *with* kynges

the sixth David,
who slew the
great Goliath.

One of *the* doughtyeste *that* dubbede was euer,

ffor he slewe *with* a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,

Golyas the grette gome, grymmeste in eithe , 3419

Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes,

[leaf 89, back.]

That in *the* sawtire ere sette *with* selcouthe wordes

The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe,

Of the two kyns
who were climb-
ing, one shall
be Carolus of
France,

Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng sone of Fraunce ,

He salle be crowelle and kene, and conquerow holdene,

Couere be conqueste contres ynewe , 3425

He salle encroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene,

he shall win the
crown that Christ
bare, and the
lance that leapt
to his heart,

And *that* lifeliche launce, that lepe to his heite,

When he was crucyfiede one crose, and alle *the* kene

naylis,

Knyghtly he salle conquere to Cristyne men hondes

The *tother* salle be Godfraye, that Gode schalle reuenge

One *the* Gud Frydaye *with* galyarde knyghtes , 3431

He salle of Lornayne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire,

the other shall be
Godfrey, the lord
of Lorraine, who
shall recover the
true cross

And syne in Ierusalem myche joye happyne,

ffor he salle couer the crosse be craftes of armes, 3434

And synne be corownde kynge, *with* krysomeenoynttede,

Salle no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyne,

Ne siche myschefe dreghe, whene trewthe salle be tryede !

ffore thy ffortune *the* fetches to fulfille the nowmbyre,

Arthur is needed
to make up the
number of the
nine noblest

AHs nyne of *the* nobileste namede in erthe , 3439

This salle in romance be redde *with* ryalle knyghttes,

Rekkenede and renownde *with* ryotous kynges,

And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442

He shall be cele-
brated for ever
as the doughtiest
on earth
Many clerks shall
tell of his deeds

ffor *the* doughtyeste *that* euer was duelland in erthe

So many clerkis and kynges salle karpe of 3oure dedis,

And kepe 3oure conquestez in cronycle for euer !

Bot the wolves in the wode, and the whilde bestes,

The wolves in
the wood and the
wild beasts are
wicked men that
are warring on
his people

Are some wikkyd mene *that* werrayes thy rewmes, 3447

Es entirde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,

And alyenys and osten of vncouth landis
 Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes, 3450
 That some torfere es tydde, sene thow fio home turnede,
 I rede thow rekkyne and reherse vn-reasonable dedis,
 Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes!
 Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,
 And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule!" 3455
 Thane rysez the riche kyng, and rawghte one his wedys,
 A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,
 A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille,
 And one he hentis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,
 A pauys pillhone hatt, *that* pighte was fulle faue 3460
 With perry of the Oryent, and precyous stones,
 His gloues gayliche gylte, and grauene by the hemmys,
 With graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe,
 His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no bycune
 elles, 3464
 And bownnes ouer a biode mede, with breth at his herte,
 ffuith he stalkis a styte by *the* stille enys,
 Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hymne one,
 Att the surs of the sonne, he sees there commande,
 Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes, 3469
 A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmme clothes,
 With hatte, and with heyghe schonehomely and rownde,
 With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle ouer,
 Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hynnges,
 With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,
 Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde 3475
 The gome graythely hym giette, and bade gode morwene,
 The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,
 Of Latyne corroumppede alle, fulle louely hym menyng,—
 "Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne?
 Qwhylyes *this* werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde,
 Here es ane enmye with oste, vndire zone vynes,
 And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes,
 Bot 3if thow hafe condethe of the kyng selfene, 3483

He will have
some tidings
withun ten days

He is bid to re-
pent and amend

The king rises
and puts on his
robes

He sees a man
approaching in
the garb

[leaf 90]

of a pilgrim

He asks him
whither he is
going,

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thow haues,
 And if *thou* halde *the* hey waye, they hente the also,
 Bot if thow hastyly hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes "

and tells him the
 dangers of the
 way

Thane karpes *sir* Cradoke to the kynge selfene, 3487

"I salle for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe!
 Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes!
 Latte the keneste come, that to *the* kyng langes,
 I salle encountre hym as knyghte, so Criste hafe my
 sawle! 3491

The stranger
 says that he fears
 no dangers

ffor thow may noghte reche me, ne aieste thy selfene,
 Thoffe *thou* be richely arayed in fulle riche wedys,
 I wille noghte wonde for no werie, to wende whare me
 likes, 3494

Ne for no wy of this werlde, *that* wroghte es one erthe!

Bot I wille passe in pilgrimage *this* pas vn-to Rome,
 To purchase me *pardon* of the pape selfene,
 And of paynes of purgatorie be *plenely* assoyllede,
 Thane salle I seke sekirly my souerayne lorde, 3499

He is bound in
 pilgrimage to
 Rome

Sir Arthure of Englande, that auenaunt byerne!
 ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,
 Ostayande in this Oryente with awfulle knyghtes "

Then he has to
 find Arthur of
 England

"*Fro* qwyne come *thou*e, kene mane," *quod the* kynge
 thane, 3503

The king asks
 him whence he
 comes, and
 whether he knows
 Arthur and his
 knights

"That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also?
 Was *thou*e euer in his coure, qwylls he in kyth langede?
 Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte!
 Well wele has *thou* wente, and wysely *thou* sechis,
 ffor *thou*e arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche "

"Me awghte to knowe *the* kynge, he es my kyddle lorde,
 And I calde in his coure a knyghte of his chambue,
 Sir Craddoke was I calide, in his coure riche, 3511
 Kepare of Karlyone, vndir the kynge selfene,

He tells him that
 his name is Sir
 Cradok, a knight
 of Arthur's cham-
 ber, and keeper of
 Caeleon

Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, with kare at my herte,
 And that castelle es cawghte with vncowthe ledys "

Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes, 3515
 Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hym fulle sone,

The king kisses
 and welcomes sir
 Cradok

Saide, "welcome, *sir* Craddocke, so Criste mott me helpe!
Deine cosyne of kynde, thowe coldis myne herte!

How faris it in Bretaynne, with alle my bolde berynns?
Are they brettene, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue?
Kene *thou* me kyndely whatte caase es be fallene, 3521
I kepe no credens to crafe, I knawe the for trewe"

Sir Cradok tells
him of the evil
[leaf 90, back]
deeds of Modred

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys,
ffor he wandreth has wroghte, sen *thou* a-waye passede,
He has castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,
Kaughte in alle *the* rentis of *the* Rownde Tabille,
He devisede *the* rewme, and delte as hym likes, 3527
Dubbde of *the* Danmarkes, dukes and erles,
Disseueride *them* sondrwise, and cites dystroyede,
To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,

He has gathered
forces of paynims
and outlaws,

He has sembled a sorte of selcouthe berynes, 3531
Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,
Of Peyghtes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes
Of Irelande and Orgaile, owlawede berynes,
Alle thaa laddes are knyghttes *that* lange to *the* mowntes,
And ledyng and lordechippe has alle, als theme selfe
likes, 3536

who rob the re-
ligious and ravish
the nuns

And there es *sir* Childrike a cheftayne holdyne,
That ilke cheualous mane, he chargges thy pople,
They robbe thy religeous, and ravische¹ thi nonnes, 3539
And redy ryddis with his rowtte to rawnsone *the* pouere,
ffro Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,

He has seized the
whole of England
and all Arthur's
castles,

And alle *the* cowntré of Kent be couenawnte entayllide,
The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,
The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,
Alle *that* Henguste and Hors hent in *theire* tyme,

He has a fleet of
seven score ships
at southampton.

Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,
ffawghte fulle of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547
ffor to fyghte with thy ffrappe, whene *thow* theme
assailles

But, worst of all,
he has taken
Guinever, and
holds her as
his wife!

Bot ȝitt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte *the* werste!
He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wiewfe holdis,

¹ MS ravichse

And woynys in the wilde bowndis of *the* weste marches,
 And has wroghte hire with childe, as wittnesse tellis !
 Off alle *the* wyes of *this* woulde, woo motte hym worthe,
 Ahs wardayne vnworthye women~~e~~ to zeme !
 Thus has *sir* Modrede meriede vs alle ! 3555
 ffor thy I merkede ouer thees mowntes, to mene *the* the
 sothe "

Than the burliche kyng, for brethe at his herte,
 And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede !
 "By *the* rode," sais *the* roye, "I salle it revenge ! 3559
 Hym salle repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes !"
 Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis ,
 Vnwynly this wyesse kyng, he wakkenysse his berynes,
 Clepid in a clamoune kynges and othire, 3563

Arthur is over
 come by the
 tidings, and vows
 revenge

Callys theme to concelle, and of *this* cas tellys,—
 "I am with tresone be-trayede, for alle my trewe dedis !
 And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydys no bettare !
 Hym salle torfere be-tyde, *this* tresone has wroghte,
 And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde !
 This es Modrede, *the* mane that I moste traystede,
 Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hyme seluene,
 With renttes and reches of the Rownde Table , 3571
 Has made alle hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,
 And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,
 To sowdecours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes !

He calls a council
 and tells them the
 ill news

He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes,
 And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettire !
 They hafe sembled on the see seuene schore chippis,
 ffulle of ferrome folke, to feghte with myne one !

[leaf 91]

ffor-thy to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579
 ffor to brettyne *the* berynne that has this bale raysede !
 Thare salle no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,

They must pro-
 ceed to Britain
 with all speed

That are fraustede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez
 Sir Howelle and *sir* Hardolfe here salle be-leue, 3583
 To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges ,
 Lokes in-to Lumbardy, *that* thare no lede chaunge,—

Sir Howell and
 Sir Hardolf shall
 remun behind to
 govern Rome and
 Italy.

Athur and his
best knights
journey rapidly
towards Britain

And tenduly to Tuskayne take tente alls I hyde ,
Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene *that* are rekkenedo ,
Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede,
Or elles alle *the* ostage, with-owttyne *the* wallys, 3589
Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones ! "

Nowe bownes the bolde kyngewith [his] beste knyghtes,
Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre ,
Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littalle, 3593
Lyghte noghte in Lumbaddye bot whene *the* lyghte
faledde ,

Meikes ouer the mowntaynes fulle mervaylous wayes,
Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste , 3596
fierkes evynne in-to flawndiesche with hys false
knyghtes ,

In fifteen days his
fleet is assembled
He embarks and
sets sail

With-in fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,
And thane he schoupe hyme to chippe, and schownnes
no lengeie, 3599

He discovers the
fleet of the enemy
armed and pre-
pared for fight

Scherys with a chaipe wynde ouer *the* schyre waters ,
By *the* roche with ropes he rydes one ankkere,
Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede,
With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyrs, 3603
Charggede evyne chekefulle of cheualrous knyghtes ,
And in *the* hynte^r one heghte, helmes and crestes,
Hatches with haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndye,
Prowdhche purtrayed¹ with payntede clothys, 3607
Iche a pece by pece pykkyde tyll *other*,
Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they some ,
And thus *the* derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre
chuppys, 3610

Then he makes
ready his ships
for the battle,

That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde
Than the roye and *the* renkes of the Rownde Table
Alle ryally in iede arrayes his chippis ,
That daye ducheieyes he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes,
Dresses diomowndes and dragges, and diawene vpe
stonys, 3615

¹ MS purtrayede

The toppe castelles he stuffede with toyelys, as hym
lykyde,

Bendys bowes of vys biotlyly *thare*-aftyre,

Tolowris tentyly takelle they ryghttene,

The tool men
righten the
tickle,

Brasene hedys fulle brode buskede one flones,

Graythes for garnysones gomes arayes, 3620

Gryme gaddes of stele, ghywes of iryne,

grim goods of
steels and gyves
of iron

Styttelys¹ steirne one sterynne with styffe mene of aimes,

Mony lufliche launce appone lofte stonndys,

Ledys one leburde, lordys and *other*, 3624

Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,

One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez

Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schurestrandys, [leaf 01, back]

Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware *theire*

wedys 3628

The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,

The bold king in
a burge rows
about barehorded

Alle bare-heuvede for besye with beueryne lokkes,

And a beryne with his bronde, and ane helme betyne,

Mengede with a mawncelet of maylis of siluer, 3632

Compaste with a coronalle, and couerde² fulle riche,

Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knyghttes

To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—

He cries loud to
Cleges and Clere
mound, to Laonel
and Lancelot,

“O Gawayne! O Galyrane! thies gud mens bodyes”

To Loth and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys, 3637

And to sir Lawncelot de Lake lordliche woidys,—

“Lat vs couere *the* kythe, the coste es owre ownne,

“let us recover
our land and
make yon blood
hounds blench
hiew down heartly
the heathen
hounds”

And gere theme brotheliche blenke, alle zone blod-hondes!

Bryttyne them with-in bourde, and brynnne theme *thare*

aftyre! 3641

Hewe downe hertly zone heythene tykes!

Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette zow myne honnde!”

Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,

He reaches his
ship takes his
helmet and mail,
and displays his
banners

Kaughte his comliche helme with *the* clere maylis,

Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,

With coronys of clere golde clenliche arraiede, 3647

¹ MS Sturttelvs

² MS couerde

His chief device
is a picture of our
Lady and the
Child,

Bot *thare* was chosene in *the* chefe a chalke-white
maydene,

And a childe in hir arme, *that* chefe es of hevynne
With-owtten *chanyng*e in chace, *thies* ware *the* cheefe
armes 3650

The sailors busy
themselves to get
the ships under
weigh

Of Arthure *the* auenaunt, qwhylls he in erthe lengede
Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,
Merly iche a mate menys tille *other* ,

Of there termys they talke, how *thay* ware tydd,
Towynne trvsselle one trete, trvsene vpe sailes, 3655
Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches ,

They strike across
the stream and
the strife begins

Brawndeste browne stele, braggede in tiompes ,
Standis styffe one the stamyne, steris one aftyre ,
Strekyne ouer *the* streme, thare stryvyng *be-gynnes*
ffio *the* wagande wynde owte of *the* weste rysses, 3660
Brethly bessomes with byrre in berynes sailles ,
With hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,
Qwhylls *the* bilyng *and the* beme brestys in sondyre ,
So stowtly *the* forsterne one *the* stam hyttis, 3664

There is grent
dashing together
of ships

That stokkes of *the* stere-burde strykkys in peces !

Grapplings are
thrown out

Be thane cogge appone cogge, krayers and *other*,
Castys crepers one crosse als to *the* crafte langes 3667

A mighty strug-
gle ensues

Thane was hede-rapys hewene *that* helde vpe *the* mastes ,
Thare was conteke fulle kene, and crachyng *of* chippys !
Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre !
Mony kabane clevede, cabilles destroyede ! 3671

Masts fall and kill
the mariners

Knyghtes and kene mene kyllide the braynes !
Kidd castelles were corvene with alle theire kene wapene,
Castelles fulle comliche, *that* coloured ware faire !
Vpcynes eghelyng *thay* ochene *thare*-aftyre, 3675
With *the* swyng *of* the swerde sweys *the* mastys ,
Ovyre-fallys in *the* firste frekis and othure,
ffrekke in *the* forchupe fey es byleuefede !

[leaf 92]

Boardings are
made and hand
to hand fights
take place

Than brothely they bekyre with boustouse tacle, 3679
Bruschese boldlye one burde brynyede knyghtes,
Owt of botes one burde was buskede with stonys,
Bett downe of *the* beste, brysus the hetches ,

Som gomys thourghe-gyde with gaddys of yryne,
 Gomys gayliche clede¹ englaymous wapene¹ 3684
 Archers of Inglande fulle egerly schottes,
 Hittis thourghe *the* harde stele fulle hertly dynntis¹
 Sonne hotchene in holle the *huthenne* knyghtes,
 Hurte thourghe *the* harde stele, hele they neuer¹ 3688
 Than they falle to *the* fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,
 Alle the frekkeste one frownte *that* to *the* fyghte langes,
 And ilkone flechely fraystez theire strengthes, 3691
 Were to fyghte in *the* flete with theire felle wapyne
 Thus they dalte *that* daye, thure dubbide knyghtes,
 Tille alle *the* Danes ware dede, and in *the* depe throwene¹
 Than Bretones brothely with brondis they hewene,
 Lepys in vp one lofte lordeliche berynes, 3696
 When ledys of owt-loedys leppyne in waters,
 Alle oure lordes one lowde laughene at ones¹
 Be thane speris whare sprongene, spalddyd chippys,
 Spanyolis spedily sprentyde ouer burdez, 3700
 Alle *the* kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and *other*,
 Killyd are colde dede, and castyne ouer burdez¹
 There swyers sweyftly has *the* swete leuyde,
 Hethene heuande on hache in *ther* hawe rydes, 3704
 Synkande in *the* salte see seene hundrethe at ones¹
 Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude, he has *the* gree wonnene,
 And alle *the* cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes, 3707
 Sir Geryne, and *sir* Grisswolde,² and othir gret loides;
 Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of *thaire* hedys¹
 Thus of *the* false flete appone *the* flode happenede,
 And thus *theis* feryne folke fey are beleuede¹ 3711
 Jitt es *the* traytoure one londe with tryede knyghttes,
 And alle trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,
 Schewes theme vndir schilde one *the* schire bankkes,
 He ne schownttes forno schame, bot schewes fulle heghe¹
 Sir Arthure and Gawayne ayvede theme bothene 3716
 To sixty thosandez of mene, *that* in theire syghte houede
 Bethis the folke was fellyde, thane was *the* flode passede,

The archers of
England make
hawe among the
heathen knights

The Danes of
Modred's fleet
are all slain

Arthur's lords
laugh to see their
foes leap into the
water

All Modred's
keen men are
killed

Sir Gawaine gives
the ships to his
knights

Thus befell the
false fleet.

But Modred the
traitor has a land
army of tried
knights

¹ Or clade

² MS Grisswolde

Thane was it slyke a slowde in slakkes fulle hugge,
 That let *the* kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyie ,
 ffor-thy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,
 To loke of his lege mene, and of his lele knyghtes
 3if any ware lamede or loste, life 3ife they scholde
 Than *ser* Gawayne *the* gude a galaye he takys, 3724
 And glides vp at a gole with gud mene of armes ,
 Whene he growndido, for grefe he gyrdys in *the* watere,
 That to *the* gudylle he gos in alle his gylte wedys ,
 Schottis vpe appone *the* sonde in syghte of *the* loides,
 Sengly with hys soppe, my sorowe es the more !
 [leaf 92, back] With baners of his bagys beste of his armes, 3730
 He braydes vp-on the banke in his bryghte wedys ,
 He byddys his baneoure, " buske *thow* be-lyfe
 To 3one brode batayle that one 3one banke houes ,
 And I ensure 3ow sothe I salle 3owe sewe aftyre , 3734
 Loke 3e blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyne,
 Dot berns downe of *the* beste and bryng theme o-dawe !
 Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde one *the* erthe,
 3e haue my baneres boine in batailles fulle hugge ,
 We salle felle 3one false, *the* fende hafe theire saules !
 ffightes faste with *the* frape, *the* felde salle be owres ,
 May I *that* traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,
 That this tresone has tymbyde to my trewe lorde !
 Of siche a engendure fulle littyll joye happyns, 3743
 And *that* salle in this *jou*nnee be juggede fulle euene ! "
 Now they seke ouer *the* sonde *this* soppe at *the* gayneste,
 Sembles one *the* sowdeous, and settys theire dyntys ,
 Thourghe *the* scheldys so schene schalkes *they* towche,
 With schaftes scheueride schoite of *thas* schene launces ,
 Derfe dynttys they dalte with daggande sperys ,
 One *the* danke of *the* dewe many dede lyggys, 3750
 Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghttys ,
 The doughttyeste of Danemarke vndone are for eue !
 Thus *thas* renkes in rewthe rittis there brenyes,
 And rechis of *the* richeste vn-rekene dynttis , 3754
 Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to *the* erthe

Arthur waits for
the tide to rise
before he lands

Sir Gawaine
wades ashore

He bids his
standard bearer
advance against
Modied's host

" We shall fell
yon false men,
the field shall be
ours "

He and his little
band charge the
whole army

Of the thiaeste mene thre hundiethe at ones ! 3756 They slay three hundred of the bravest
 Bot *sir* Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,

Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,
That bare of gowles fulle gaye, with gowces of syluere,
 He gydes hym in at *the* gorge with his gryme¹ launce,
That the growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre ! 3761 *Sir* Gawayne kills the king of Goth land
 With *that* boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye !

The kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes
 Thayre awawwaide than alle voydes *thare*-aftyre,
 Als venqueste verrayely with valyant berynes, 3765 The vanguard of the army flies
 Metis with medilwarde, that Modrede ledys !

Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—
 ffor hade *sir* Gawayne hade grace to halde *the* gene hille,
 He had wuchipe i-wys womnnene for *ue* ! 3769 Gawayne rashly advances against the centre, where Modred is, with the Montagus and other great lords

Bot *thane* *sir* Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym welo
 To wreke hyme on this weilaughe, *that this* werremouede,
 And merkes to *su* Modrede amonge alle his beryns,
 With the Mownttagus, and *other* gret lordys

Than su Gawayne was greuede, and with a gret wylle Gawayne puts a good spear in rest and assails Modred with reproaches
 ffewters a faire speire, and freschely askryes,— 3775
 “ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !

ffy one the, felone, and thy false werkys !
 Thow salls be dede and vndone for thy deife dedys,
 Or I salls dy this daye, 3if destanye worthe ! ” 3779

Thane his enmye, with oste of owlawede berynes, [leaf 93] The host of the enemy, numbering sixty thousand men, surround Gawayne and his little band
 Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghttez,
 That the traytoure be tiesone had tryede hym seluene,
 Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783

And leders of Lettowe, with legyous mewes,
 Vmbylappyde oure mene with launcez fulle kene,
 Sowdeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,
 Sixty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787

Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,
 Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strands
 Thane *su* Gawayne grette with his gray eghene,
 ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde, 3791 Gawayne weeps and laments for the danger of his men

¹ *growne struck out, and gryme written instead*

He wyste that *thay* wondyde ware, and wery for-
foughttene,

And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede
And thane syghande he saide, with sylande terys,—

“We are with Sarazenes be-sett appone seie halfes !

I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde , 3796

Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more

Bes dowghtty to-daye, 3one dukes schalle be 3oures !

ffor dere Dryghttyne this daye, dredys no wapyne

He comforts
them with pro-
mises of blessings
in heaven.

We salle ende this daye ahs excellent knyghttes, 3800

Ayere to endelesse joye with angelles vnwemmyde

Thofe we hafe vnwittlyly wastede oure selfene,

We salle wirke alle wele in *the* wirchiye of Cryste

We salle for 3one Sarazenes, I sekire 3ow my trowhe,

Soupepe with oure Saueoure solemply in heuene,

In ptesence of *that* precious, prynce of alle *other* 3806

They shall sup
with prophets,
patriarchs, and
apostles

With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys fulle nobill’,

Be-fore his feliche face that *fourmede* vs alle !

He that yields
unslain, be he
nevermore saved
or succoured of
Christ !

3ondue to 3one 3aldsones, he *that* 3eldes hyme euer,

Qwhyyles he es qvykke and in qwerte vnquellyde with
handis,

Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socourede with Cryste,

Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to heHe !” 3812

Then Gawaine
grimly grips his
weapon.

Than grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,

Agayne *that* gret bataille he graythes hym sone ,

Radly of his riche swerde he reghttes *the* cheynys,

In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare ,

Bot ahs vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *the* gayneste,

and rushes into
the fray

Wondis of thas wedirwynys with wrakfulle dynttys,

Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes , 3819

And *thofe* hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttalle,

Bot wrekyys at his wirchiye *the* wrethe of hys lorde !

He performs
mighty deeds of
arms

He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefulle knyghttes,

That sterynemene in theresterapesstone-dede*thay* lygge !

He ryvys *the* ranke stele, he ryttes *the* mayles , 3824

Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was
passedde !

He felle in a fransye for fersenesse of herte,
 He feghttis and fellis downe *that* hyme be-fore standis ! He fights like a
unadman
 felle neuer fay mane siche fortune in erthe ! 3828
 In-to *the* hale bataile hadlyngs he rymys,
 And hurtes of *the* hardieste *that* one the erthe lenges !
 Letande ahs a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,
 Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes ! 3832 [leaf 93, back]
 3it *su* Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttlle,
 Bot woundis of *thas* wedirwynes with wondirfulle dyntes,
 Alls he *that* wold wilfully wastene hyme selfene ,
 And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede, 3836
 That wode ahs a wylde beste he wente at *the* gayneste, Mad as a wild
beast, he leues
all wallowin, in
blood where he
passe
 Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede ,
 Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-*other* ! 3839
Than hemouesto *su* Modrede amange alle his knyghtes,
 And mett hyme in *the* myde schelde, and mallis hyme
 thorowe ,
 Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schownttes a littlle,
 He schare hyme one *the* schorte rybbys a schaftmonde He wounds Mo-
dred in the side
 large ! 3843
 The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,
 That *the* schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys,
 And schewede one his schynbawde, *that* was schire
 burneste ! 3846
 And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to *the* erthe, Modred falls to
the earth
 With *the* lussche of *the* launce he lyghte one hysschuldrys,
 Ane akere lenghe one a launde, fulle lothely wondide
 Than Gawayne gyrd to *the* gome, and one *the* groffe
 fallis , 3850
 Ahs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre !
 He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with siluere, Gawayne strikes
at him with a
knife, but misses
his blow
 And scholde haue slottede hyme in, bot no slytte
 happenede ,
 His hand sleppid and slode o slante one *the* mayles,
 And *the* tother slely slynges hym vndire 3855
 With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes, The traitor hits
him
 MORIE ARTHURE 8

through the
helmet and the
head

Thorowe *the* helme and *the* hede, one heyghe one *the*
brayne

Gawaine is gone,
the good man of
arms¹

And thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes,
With-owttynne reschewe of renke, and rewghes *the* more !

Thus *su* Gawayne es gone, that gyede many othre ,
ffro Gower to Gernesay, alle *the* gret lordys 3861
Of Glamour, of Galys londe, *this* galyarde knyghtes,
ffor glent of gloppynyng¹ glade be they neuer !

King Frederick
asks who he was

Kying ffrodenke of Fres faythely *thare*-afyre, 3864
ffraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ,
“ Knew thou euer this knyghte in thi kith ryche,
Of whate kynde he was comene? be-knowe now *the* sothe ,
Qwat gome was he this *with* the gaye armes, 3868
With *this* gryffounne of golde, *that* es one growffe fallyne ?
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !

Modred tells
him that he was
Sir Gawaine the
good, the merri-
est, the kindest,
and the bravest
of knights¹

Gyrde downe oure gude mene, and greuede vs sore !
He was *the* sterynneste in stoure that euer stete werryde,
ffore he has stonayed oure stale, and stroyede for euer ! ”
Than *sir* Mordrede *with* mouthe melis fulle faire , 3874
“ He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ,
This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, *the* gladdeste of othre,
And the gracouseste gome that vndue God lyffede,

The hardest of
hand, the hap-
piest in arms, the
most courteous in
hall¹

Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes, 3878
And *the* hendeste in hawle vndue heuene riche ,
The lordelieste of ledyng qwhylls he lyffe myghte,
ffore he was lyone allossede in londes 1-newe ,

[leaf 94]

Had thou knowene hym, *su* kyng, in kythe thare he
lengede, 3882

His konyng, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,
His doying, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede *the* dayes of thy
lyfe ! ”

Modred weeps
and curses his
destiny,

3it *that* traytour aHs tite terns lete he falle, 3886
Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,
Went wepand a-waye, and weres the stowndys,

¹ MS gloppynyngnyng



That euer his wordes ware wroghte sicke wandiethe to that ever he was
fated to work
such woe
wyrke

Whene he thoghte on *this* thyng, it thirlede his herte,
ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys, 3891

When *that* renayede renke remembirde hym seluene,
Of reuerence and ryotes of *the* Rownde Table,

He remyd and repent hym of alle his rewthe werkes, He repents of his
wickedness and
retreats,
Rode awaye with his rowte, ristys he no lengere, 3895

ffor rade of oure riche kyng, ryve *that* he scholde

Thane kayres he to Cornewaile, carefulle in herte, goes into Corn
wall,

Be-cause of his kynsemane that one the coste ligges

He taries tremlande ay, tydandis to herkene 3899

Than the *tiaytoure* tieunted *the* Tyseday *thar*-aftyre,

Tynnys in *with* a trayne tresone to wike,

And by *the* Tambire *that* tide his tentis he reis,

and pitches his
tents by the Ia
mar,

And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes,

And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, and from thence
writes to G uine
ver,

And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede, 3905

One floode foughtene *with* his fleete, and fellyd theme
o lyfe,

Bade hir ferkene oo ferre, and flee *with* hir childre,

Whills he myghte wile hym awaye, and wyne to hir
speche, 3908

Ayere in to Irelande, in-to *thas* owte-mowntes,

bidding her fly
into Ireland

And wonne thare in wildernesse *with-in* *tha* wast landys

Than cho jermys and 3ee at 3orke in hir chambrie,
Gronys fulle grysely *with* gretand teres, 3912

Passes owte of *the* palesse *with* alle hir pryce maydenys,

Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *the* wayes,

Dighte hir ewyne for to dye *with* dule at hir herte,

Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile,

But she goes to
Caerleon and
takes the veil

Askes thare *the* habite in *the* honoure of Criste,

And alle for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde!

Bot whene oure wise kyng wiste *that* Gawayne was
landede, 3919

He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes, Arthur is grieved

for Gawaine's
rash landing, and
follows him
wading through
the water

Geis lawnche his botes appone a lawe watire,
Londis als a lyone with loidliche knyghtes,
Slippes in in the sloppes o slante to *the* girdylle,
Swalters vpe swyftly with his sweide drawene, 3924
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,
Buskes ouer *the* biode sandes with breth at his herte,

He hastens to the
field where ten
thousand of the
traitor's men and
seven score of
his own knights
lie dead

fferkes frekkly one felde *thare the* feyo lygges,
Of the traytours mene one tiappede stedis, 3928
Ten thosandez ware tynte, *the* trewghe to acownt,
And certane on owre syde seuene score knyghtes
In soyte with theire souerayne vn-sownde are belenede!

[leaf 94, back]

Arthur slays
dukes and earls,

The kyng comly ouer-keste knyghtes and othire,
Erles of Awfrike, and Estliche berynes 3933
Of Orgaile and Oiekenay, *the* Iiesche kynges,
The nobileste of Noiwaye, nowmbus fulle hugge,
Dukes of Danamaike, and dubbid knyghtes,
And the guchede kyng in the gay armes 3937
Lys gronande one *the* grownnde, and girde thorowe eue!

he seeks for the
knights of the
Round Table,

The riche kyng ransakes with rewthe at his herte,
And vp rypes the renkes of alle *the* Rownde Tabylle,
Ses theme alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one, 3941
With *the* Sarazenes vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte,

and finds Sir Ga-
wayne lying dead

And *sir* Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,
Vmbegrippede the giuse, and one grouffe fallene, 3944
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowlles,
His brand and his brade schelde al bloody be-rouene,
Was neuer oure semliche kyng so sorowfulle in herte,
Ne *that* sanke hyme so sade, bot *that* sighte one 3948

With groans and
tears he kisses
the body

Than gliftus *the* gud kyng, and glopyns in herte,
Gronys fulle grisely with gretande terns,
Knelis downe to *the* cors, and kaught it in armes,
Kastys vpe his vmbreie, and kyssis hyme sone, 3952
Lokes one his eye-liddis, *that* lowkkide ware faire,
His hppis like to *the* lede, and his lire falowede!

He bitterly la-
ments the good
knight

Than the corownde kyng cryes fulle lowde,—
“Deie kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede!” 3956

ffor nowe my wuchipe es wente, and my were endide !
 Here es *the* hope of my hele, my happynge of armes !
 My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede !
 My concelle, my comforthe, *that* kepide myne herte !
 Of alle knyghtes *the* kyng *that* vndu Criste lifede,
 Thou was worthy to be kyng, *thofe* I *the* corowne bare !
 My wele and my wurchipe of alle *this* werlde riche 3963
 Was wonnen^e thourghe *su* Gawayne, *and* thourghe his
 witt one !

It was through
 his wit that all
 his conquests
 were made

Allas ! " saide *su* Arthure, " nowe ekys my solowe !
 I am vtirly vndone in myne auene landes !
 A doughtouse deife dede, *thou* duellis to longe ! 3967
 Why diawes *thou* so one dreghe ? thow drownnes myne
 herte ! "

Then swe[^l]tes the swete kyng and in swounne fallis,
 Swafies vp swiftly, and swetly hym kysses,
 Tille his burliche berde was bloody be-rowne, 3971
 Alls he had bestes birtene, and broghte ow t of life,
 Ne had *su* Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,
 His bolde herte had broustene for bale at *that* stownde !

Arthur swoons
 for grief, then
 starts up and
 kisses the dead
 knight
 His beard is
 smeared in the
 blood of Gawayne

" **B**lyne," sais this bolde mene, " thow blondirs *thi*
 selfene, 3975

Su Fwayne and
 his knyghts re
 strain him

This es botles bale, for bettir bees it neuer !
 It es no wurchipe i-wysse to wryng thyne hondes,
 To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene !
 Be knyghtly of contenance, als a kyng scholde, 3979
 And leue sicke clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuene ! "
 "ffor blode," said the bolde kyng, " blyne salle I neuer,
 O1 my brayne to-briste, or my breste *other* !
 Was neuer solowe so softe that sanke to my herte,
 Itt es full^e sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more !
 Was neuer so sorowfull^e as yghteseyne with myne eyghene !
 He es sakles supprysede for syne of myne one ! "
 Downe knelis *the* kyng, and kryes full^e lowde, 3987
 With carefull^e contenance he karpes thes wordes,—
 " O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe thow be-holde !

[leaf 95]

He excuses him
 self on account
 of the greatness
 of the grief

He collects Ga
waine's blood in
a helmet,

and carries away
his body
Then he makes a
solemn vow that
he will take no
pleasure in the
chase till Ga
waine be
avenged

The body was
sent straight to
Winchester,

and met by a pro
cession of monks

Arthur gives or
ders that all hon
our should be
paid to the dead

*This ryalle iede blode iyne appone erthe ,
It wae worthy to be schiede and schrynede in golde,
ffor it es sakles of syne, sa helpe me oure Loide !* 3992
*Downe knelis the kyng with kare at his herte,
Kaughte it vpe kyndly with his clene handis,
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and couede it faire,* 3995

And kayres furthe with the cors in kyghte thare he lenges
“Here I make myn avowe,” quod the kyngthane,
“To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwenne of
heuene,

I salle neuer iyyave, ne iacches vn-cowpylle
At roo ne iayne-dere, thit iynnes apponne erthe , 4000
Neuer growhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,
Ne neuer fowle see fellhde, that flieghes with wenge ,
ffawkone ne formaylle appone liste handille,
Ne 3itt with gerefawcone rejoyse me in erthe , 4004
Ne iegane in my royaltez, ne halde my Rownde Table,
Tille thi dede, my deie, be dewly reuengede !
Bot euer droupe and daie, qwylls my lyte lastez,
Tille Drightene and deife dede hafe done qwate theme
likes !” 4008

Than kaughte they vpe the cors with kare at theire hertes,
Karyed [it] one a counsere with the kyngthane selfene ,
The waye vn-to Wynchestre thay wente at the gayneste,
Wery and wandsomdly, with wondide knyghtes , 4012
Thare come the prior of the plas, and professide monkes,
Apas in processione, and with the prynce metys ,
And he be-tuke thame the cors of the knyghte noble
“Lokis it be clenly kepyd,” he said, “and in the kuke
holdene,” 4016

Done for derygese, as to the ded fallys,
Menskede with messes, for mede of the saule
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,
And at the body be bawmede, and one erthe holdene,
3iff thou kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe 4021
At my comyng a gayne, 3if Crist wille it thole ,

A-byde of *the* beryenge tille they be broughte vndire,
That has wioghte vs this woo, and *this* werre mouede "

Than sais *sir* Wycher *the* wy, a wyese mane of armes,
"I rede 3e warely wende, and wikes the beste ,
Soioine in this ceté, and semble thi berynes, 4027

Sir Wycher advises that he should stay in Winchester and rally his forces

And bidde *wit*h thi bolde mene in thi burghe riche
Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castelles holdes,
And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,
ffor we are faithely to fewe to feghte *wit*h theme alle,
That we see in his sorte appone *the* see banks " 4032
With krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis
wordes,—

"I praye the kare noghte, *sir* knyghte, ne caste *thou* no [leaf 9a, bick]
diedis !

Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone, 4035
And I may hym see *wit*h sighte, or one hym sette hondis,
I salle evene amange his mene malle hym to dede,
Are I of *the* stede styre halfe a stede lenghe !

Arthur declares that though he be alone if he may see Modred he will mall him to death among all his men

I salle [stryke] hym in his towre, and stroye hym foreuer,
And *thare*-to make I myne aŵowe devotily to Chyste,
And to hys modyre Maie, *the* mylde qwene of heuene !
I salle neuer soioin ne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,
In ceté ne in subarbe sette appone erthe, 4043
Ne 3itt slomyre ne slepe *wit*h my slawe eyghne,
Tille he be slayne *that* hym slowghe, 3if any sleyghte
happene

He will never s3ioun in city or town till Modred be slain

Bot euer pursue the payganys *that* my pople destroyede,
Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place *thare* me
likes " 4047

Thare durstenorenke hym areste of alle *the* Rownde Table,
Ne none paye *that* prynde *wit*h plesande wordes,
Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne,
So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes ! 4051

None of his lige men dare look him in the eyes

Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,
Derefullu dredlesse with drowppande teris ,
Kayeris in-to Kornewayle with kare at his herte,

Arthur follows
Mordred into
Cornwall and at-
tacks him

The trays of *the traytoure* he trynys fulle eucenne, 4055
And turnys in be *the Treyntis the traytoure* to seche,
flyndis hym in a foreste *the Frydaye* there-aftre,
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,
And *with* his feliche folke he has *the felde nommene*!

A vast host of
aliens assault Ar-
thur's men

NOW isschewis his enmye vndre *the wode* eynys,
With ostes of alynes fulle horrebille to schewe!
Sir Mordrede the Malebianche, *with* his myche pople,
ffoundes owte of the foreste appone fele halfes, 4063
In seuene grett batailles semliche arayede,

There were sixty
thousand against
eighteen hun-
dred

Sexty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle huggre,
Alle fyghtande folke of *the fere lanndes*,
ffane fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondes!
And alle Arthurs oste was amede *with* knyghtes 4068
Bot awghtene hundrethe of alle, entiede in rolles,
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghttis of Criste,
To melle *with* that multitude in *thase* man londis
Than the royalle roy of *the Rownde Table* 4072

Arthur on a
charter arranges
his men

Rydes one a riche stede, arayes his beyns
Buskes his awawmwarde, als hym beste likes,
Sir Ewayne, and sir Errake, and othre gret lordes,
Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare-aftre,
With Merrake and Meneduke,¹ myghtty of strengthes,
Iduous and Alymere, *thire auenaunt* childrene,
Ayeis *with* Arthure, *with* seuene score of knyghtes,
He iewlis *the* rerewardre redyly thare-aftre, 4080
The rekeneste redy mene of *the Rownde Table*,
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,
And syene comforthes his mene *with* knyghtlyche
wordes—

He beseeches
them to do well
that day and not
to fear

“ I be-seke 3ow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde, 4084
That 3e doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene!
ffighttes fersely now, and fendis 3oure seluone,
ffellis downe 3one feye folke, the felde salle be owrs!
They are Sarazenes 3one sorte, vn-sownde motte they
woithe! 4088

[leaf 96]

¹ Or Menyduke

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of oure Loide !
 3if vs be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,
 We salle be hewede vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde !
 Loke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche , 4092
 Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende !
 Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me iekke,
 Bes besy one my baners with 3oure brighte wapyns,
 That they be strenghely stuffede with steryne knyghtes,
 And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe , 4097
 3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone
 Wukes now my wirchiue, to-daye my werie endys !
 3e wotte my wele and my woo, wukkys as 3ow likys !
 Crist comly with crowne comforthe 3ow alle, 4101
 ffor the kyndeste creatours that eue kynge ledde !
 I gyffe 3ow alle my blyssyng with a blithe wille,
 And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe !"
 They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approches theme nere,
 Pris mene and priste proues theire strengthes,
 Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumppes, 4107
 In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghttes assembles,
 And thane jolyly enjoynys theis jentylle knyghttes ,
 A jolyere journé ajuggede was neuer,
 Whene Bretones boldly embraces theire scheldes, 4111
 And Cristyne encroyssede theme, and castis in fewtre !
*T*han sir Arthure oste his enmye askryes,
 And in they schokke theire scheldes, schontes no
 lengare ,
 Schotte to the schiltiones, and schowttes fulle heghe,
 Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche !
 Redily thas rydde mene of the Rownde Table 4117
 With ryalle ranke stele rittys theire mayles ,
 Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,
 Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre !
 ffyghtande with fyne stele, the feye blod rynnys, 4121
 Of the frekkeste of frounte, vn-fers ere be-leuede
 Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges
 Enverounes oure awawmwarde with venymmos beynes , The vanguard is

If they are slain
 they will be taken
 straight up to
 heaven

To day his war
 ends !

He gives them
 his parting bless-
 ing

The Britons at-
 tack the enemy,
 without delay

surrounded by
the enemy, and
many of them
slain

Peghttes and paynmes with perilous wapyns, 4125
With speies disspetounely disspoylles oure knyghttes,
And hewde downe the hendeste with hertly dynttys!
Thorow the holle batayle they holdene there wayes,
Thus ferly they fyghte appone sere halves, 4129
That of the bolde Bretones myche blode spillis
Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in eithe,
Thesteryne waretharesostedde, and stuffede wit[h] othere
He durste noghte sture a steppe, bot stodde for hyme
seluene, 4133

Arthur bids Sir
Idrus rescue him
[leaf 90, back]

father, Sir
Uwayne

Tille thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hyme one!
"Idious," quod Arthure, "ayre the by houes!
I see sir Ewayne ouer-sette with Sarazenes kene! 4136
Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone!
Iye the with hardy men in helpe of thy fadire!
Selt in one the syde, and socoune zone lordes,
Bot they be socoured and sounde, vnsawghte be I
neuer!" 4140

Sir Idrus replies
that his father
has commanded
him not to leue
the king

Idious hyme ansuers earnestly thare-aftyre,—
"He es my fadire in fathre, for sake salle I neuer,
He has me fosterde and fedde, and my faure bretherene,
Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe, 4144
And sothely alle sybriedyne bot thy selfe one,
I breke neuer his biddynge for beyrne one lyfe,
Bot euer bouxvme as beste blethely to wyke!
He commande me kyndly, with knyghtly wordes, 4148
That I schulde lelely one the lenge, and one noo lede elles,
I salle hys commandement holde, 3if Criste wil me thole!
He es eldare thane I, and ende salle we bothene,
He salle feirke be-fore, and I salle come aftyre 4152
3iffe hyme be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,
Criste comly with crowne take kepe to hys saule!"

"If he be destined
to die, Christ
keep his soul!"

Than remys the riche kyng with rewthe at his herte,
Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to the heuene
lokes,— 4156

"Qwythene hade Dryghttyne destaynede at his dere wille,

That he hade demyd me to daye to dy for 3ow alle !
 That had I leuer than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme, 4159
 Off alle *that* Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe
 lengede "

Arthur wishes
 that he might die
 instead of his
 kin, his

Sir Ewayne and sir Errake, *thes* excellent beryns,
 Enters in one *the* oste, and egerly strykes , 4162
 The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irsche kynges,
 Thay gobone of *the* gretteste with growndene swerdes,
 Hewes one *thas* hulkes with *theire* harde wapyns,
 Layed downe *thas* ledes with lothely dynttys , 4166
 Schuldurs and scheldys *thay* schrede to *the* hawnyches,
 And medilles thourghe mayles *thay* merkene in sondire !
 Sicke honoure neuer aughte none erthely kyng
 At theue endyng daye, bot Arthure hyme seluene !
 So *the* doughte of *the* daye dyede *theire* hertes, 4171
 That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was *the* more !

Sir Ewayne and
 Sir Errak per-
 form great deeds
 of valour betore
 they are over-
 powered and
 slain

Now mellys oure medille warde, and mengene to-gedire
 Sir Moidrede *the* Malebranche with his myche pople,
 He had hide hyme be-hynde with-in *thas* holte eynys,
 With halle bataile one hethe, harme es *the* more ! 4176
 He hade sene *the* conteke al clene to *the* ende,
 How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes !
 He wiste oure folke was for-foughttene, *that* *thare* was
 feye leuede ,

The centre of Ar-
 thur's army en-
 gages
 Sir Modred has
 been watching
 the battle, and
 preparing to at-
 tack the king

To encowntere *the* kyng he castes hyme sone, 4180
 Bot the chuiles chekyne hade chaungyde his armes ,
 He had sothely for-sakene *the* sawturoure engrelede,
 And laughte vpe thre lyons alle of whitte siluyre,
 Passande in purple of perrie fulle riche, 4184
 for *the* kyng sulde noghte knawe *the* cawtelous wiche !
 Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre ,
 Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe,
 Karpis to sir Cadors *thes* kyndly wordez,— 4188
 "I see *the* traytoure come 3ondyr trynande fulle 3erne ,
 3one ladde with *the* lyones es like to hyme selfene !
 Hym salle torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones, 4191

But first he
 changes his arms
 to conceal him-
 self

[leaf 97]

But Arthur knows
 him at once, and
 points him out
 to Sir Cador

The two famous
swords Clarent
and Caliburn,
shall this day be
tried one against
the other

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, als I am tiew loide !
To-day Claient and Caliburne sallen kythe theme to-gedurs,
Whilke es kenere of keife, or hardare of eghge !
ffiaiste sallen we fyne stole appone fyne wedis • 4195
Itt was my derlyng daynteuous, and fulle dere holdene,
Kepede fore encorowmentes of kynges enoyntede,
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erles ,
It was burliche borne be the bryghte hiltes ,
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes, 4200
Bot euer kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene

Arthur recog-
nizes his sword
which he had
left at Walling-
ford under the
cue of the Queen

ffor I see Claient vn-clede, that crowne es of sweides,
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ,
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene, 4204
Scho hade the keypyng he selfe of that kyldde wapyne,
Off cofres enclosede that to the crowne lengede,
With rynges and relikkes, and the regale of ffaunce,
That was ffowndene one sir ffrolle, whene he was feye
leuyde " 4208

Sir Marrik fights
with Modred
and is forced to
withdraw

Than sir Marrike in malyncoly metys hym sone,
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes ,
The boidoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,
That the schire rede blode ouer his brene rynnys ! 4212
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,
Bot zitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes !
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euere ony syluer,
That was sir Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs, 4216
In the wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede,
Thare-with the derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,
The tother with-drewe one dreghe and durste do none
other ;

for sir Marrik
was married with
old age

ffor sir Marrake was mane merrede in elde, 4220
And sir Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste
strengthis ,
Come none with-in the compas, knyghte ne none other ,
With-in the swyng of swerde, that ne he the swete leuyd
That peysayfes oure prynce, and presses to faste, 4224

Strykes in-to *the* stowre by stienge of hys handis , Arthur forces his
Metis with *his* Mordrede, he melis vn-faire,— way to Modied,

“Turne, traytoure vniuewe, *the* tydys no bettyre, 4227 ^{and upbraids}
Be gret Gode, thow salle dy *with* dynt of my handys ^{him} !
The schalle rescowe no renke ne reches in erthe !”

The kyng *with* Calaburne knyghtly hym strykes,
The cantelle of *the* clere schelde he kerfes in sundrye,
In-to *the* schuldryre of *the* schalke a schaftmonde large,
That the schire rede blode schwede one *the* maylys!

Then he strikes
hym with Cal-
burne and cuts
through his
shield and into
the shoulde!

He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttlle,
Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys, 4235 [leaf 97, back]

The ffelonne <i>with the ffyne</i> swerde freschely he strykes,	Modred, though
The ffelettes <i>of the</i> ffferrere syde he flassches in sondyre,	wound, strikes
Thorowe jopowne and jesserawnte of gentille mailes !	Arthur and gaves
	him a terrible
	wound in the
	side

The fieke fchede in *the* flesche an halfe fotte large,
That derse dynt was his dede, and dole was *the* more
That eue*r* *that* doughtty sulde dy, bot at Dryghttyns
wylle ! 4241

3itt with Calyburne his swerde, fulle knyghttly he
strykes,

Arthur with Calyburn cuts off the sword hand of Mordred.

Kastes ine his clere schelde, and coueres hym fulla faire,
Swappes of *the* swerde hande, als he by glentes, 4244

Ane iuche fro *the* elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,
That he swounnes one *the* swarthe,¹ and one swym fallis,
Thorowe bracer² of browne stele, and *the* bryghte mayles,
That the hulte and *the* hande appone *the* hetheliggis³

Thane fiescheliche *the* frēke the ffente vpe rererys,
Brochis hym in with the bronde to *the* bryghte hultys, and pierces him
with his sword

"In faye," says *the feye kynge*, "sore me for-thynkkes
That euer sicke a false theefe so faire an ende haues "

Arthur declares
that his end is
too good for him

Qwene they had ffenyste *this* feghte,thane was *the* felde
wornene 4254

And the false folke in *the* felde feye are by-leuede!
Tille a fforeste they fledde, and felle in the greuys,

¹ MS swrathe

² MS brater

Modred's men
are defeated and
pursued

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftye,
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,
Mourtherys in the mowntaygnes *sir* Mordrede knyghtes,
Thare chapyde neuer no childe, cheftayne ne *other*,
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot
littyll ! 4261

Arthur finds the
dead bodies of his
knights

Bot whene *sir* Arthure anone *sir* Ewayne he fyndys,
And Errake *the* auenawnt, and *othe* grett lordes,
He kawghte vp *sir* Cador with care at his herte,
Sir Clegis, *sir* Cleremonde, *thes* clere mene of armes,
Sir Lothe, and *sir* Lyonelle, *sir* Lawncelott, and Lowes,
Marrake and Meneduke, *that* myghty ware eue, 4267
With langoure in the launde thare he layes theme to-
gedire,

Lokede one theyre hghames, and with a lowde steuene,
Ahs lede *that* liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis,
Than he *stetays* for made, and alle his strenghe fayler,
Lokes vpe to *the* lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272

He swoons for
sorrow,

Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swoune fallys,
Vpe he couens one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene,—

and bitterly
grieues over his
knights

“Kyng comly with crowne, in care am I leuyde !
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre ! 4276
That me has gyfene gwerdone, be grace of hym seluene,
Mayntenye my manhede be myghte of theire handes,
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe,

In a tenefulle tyme this torfere was rereryde, 4280
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys !

Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,
Rebukkede with a rebawde, and rewthe es the more !

[leaf 98]

I may helpes one hethe house be myne one, 4284
Ahs a wafulle wedowe *that* wanttes hir beryne !

Now he may
weep and wring
his hands, for his
worship is gone
for ever

I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myne handys,
ffor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for eue !
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende ! 4288
Here es *the* Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,
And nowe in *this* journee alle my joy endys !”

Thane relies *the* renkes of alle *the* Rownde Table,
 To *the* ryalle roy thay ride *tham* alle, 4292 The remnants of
his men rally
round him
 Than assembles fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,
 In sighte to *thane* souerayne, *that* was vnsownde leuede,
 Than knelis the crowne kynge, and kryes one lowde,—
 “I thanke *the*, Gode, of thy grace, *with* a gud wylle, He thanks God
for the victory,
and all the glory
which he and his
knights had won
 That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows *this* beryns,
 And vs has graunted *the* gree of theis gret lordes !
 He sent vs neuer no schame, ne schenchipe in erthe,
 Bot euer ȝit *the* ouer-hande of alle *other* kynges 4300
 We hafe no laysere now *these* lordys to seke,
 ffor ȝone laythely ladde me lamede so sore !
 Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none *other*, He desires to be
taken to Glaston
bury
 Thare we mayryste vs *with* roo, and raunsake oure wondys
 Of *this* deie day werke, *the* Dyghtene be louede, 4305
 That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure awene”
 Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,
 And graythes to Glasschenberye *the* gate at *the* gayneste,
 Entres *the* Ile of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes, He enters the
Ile of Avelon
and is taken to a
manor there, for
he could go no
further. A sur-
geon examines
his wounds
 Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire
 A surgyne¹ of Salerne enserches his wondes, 4311
 The kyng sees be asaye *that* sownde bese he neuer,
 And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—
 “Doo calle me a confessour, with Criste in his armes, Arthur sends for
a confessor
 I wille be howselde in haste, whate happe so be-tyddys,
 Constantyne my cosyne he salle the corowne bere, 4316 He appoints Con-
stantine his
kinsman, his heu
 Aȝs be-commys hym of kynde, ȝife Criste wille hym thole !
 Beryne, fore my benysone, thowe berye ȝone lordys,
 That in baytalle *with* brondez are broghte owte of lyfe,
 And sythene merke manly to Mordrede childrene, 4320 He orders Mor-
drede's children to
be slain, and
slung in waters
 That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongene in watyrs,
 Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one *this* erthe,
 I warne fore thy wurchipe, wirke aȝs I bydde !
 I fore-ȝyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene ! 4324 “If Gunnever
have well
wrought, well her
betide.”
 ȝife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir be-tydde !”

¹ MS susgyne

Then he says " In
manus and his
spirit passes
away

[leaf 98, back]

The barons of
Britain bury Ar-
thur at Glaston
bury

Great mourning
was made at his
funeral

This was the end
of Arthur of the
blood of Hector
and of Priamus
of Troy

He saide *In manus* with mayne onemolde whare he ligges,
And thus passes his speyrt, and spekes he no more !

The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire,
Gaythes theme to Glaschenbery with gloppynnande
heites,

To bery thare the bolde kyng, and brynge to the erthe,
With alle wirchipe and welthe that any wy scholde
Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngys, 4332
Dosse messes and matyns with mournande notes
Relygeous reueste in theire riche copes,

Pontyfalles and prelates in precyouse wedys,
Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes, 4336
Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,
Ladys languessande and lowrlande to schewe,
Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,
That schewede at the sepulture, with sylande terns,
Whas neuer so sorowfulle a syghte seene in theire tyme!
Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges, 4342

That was of Ectores blude, the kyng sone of Troye,
And of sir Pryamous, the prynce, praysede in erthe,
ffro thethene¹ broghte the Bretons alle his bolde eldys
In-to Bretayne the brode, as the Bruytte tellys 4346
et c' explicit

Hic jacet Arthurus, rex g[u]ondam rex que futurus

Here endes Morte Arthure, writene by Robert of Thornton.

¶ Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen!

¹ Or thythene.

INDEX OF NAMES.

- Absolone, 2868
 Achinour, 1824
 Acres, 903, *Acre*
 Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Aufrike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa*
 Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle*
 Aladuke, 1739, Alldoyke of Towelle, 1916, Alyduke, 1824
 Alexander, 2634, Alexandere, 3408, 4160, Alexandre, 2602, *Alexander*
 Alexandre, 2607, Alysaunder, 572, *Alexandria*
 Algere, 2837, 2847.
 Alldoyke *See* Aladuke
 Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Germany*
 Alyduke *See* Aladuke
 Alymere, 4078
 Alysaunder *See* Alexandere
 Amazonas, 584
 Ambryganye, 572
 Antele, 2829, 2837
 Anyone, 42, *Amene (in France)*
 Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Arabia*
 Argyle, 4123, *Argyle*.
 Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, &c
 Askanere, 1739
 Asye, 574, *Asia*
 Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of Avelon*
 Aufrike *See* Affrike
 Aungers, 288
 Awguste, 1967, *Augsburg* Lat' *Augusta Vindelicorum*
 Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon*
 Baldake, 586, *Bagdad*
 Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223, Barflete, 835, *Barfleur* Lat' *Baro-fluctum*
 Barouns, 1908
 Basille, 907
 Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384
 Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne*.
 Bayous, 587
 Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar, 2384, Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2238, 2379
 Bedwyne, 1408 Probably a mistake for *Bedwere*.
 Belyne, 277
 Berade, 2384.
 Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914, Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle, 1433
 Bernarde, Mounte, 566
 Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,

- Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378
 Borghite, 1698 A mistake for *But*
 Boyce, Boys See Boice
 Brabane, 36, *Brabant*
 Biemyne, 277
 Bretayne, 2095, 2330, 2362, &c, *Bretayne*, 3519, *Bretayne* the brade, 106, B the brode, 3579, 4346, B the braddere, 55, 1699, B the more, 1018, *Britann*
 Bretayne, 852, B the lesse, 36, B the lyttyle, 304, *Brittany*
 Bretones, 1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretouns, 1348, Bretowns, 4104, *Britons*
 Bretowne, *sg*, 3508
 Brut, 1695, *Brutus*
 Bruytte, the, 4346, *the Brute*
 Bryane, 1606
 Burdeux, 38, *Bordeaux*
 Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383, *Burgundy*
 Cador, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &c, Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors, 4188, Cadour, 259
 Caerlyone, 61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, *Caerleon*
 Calaburne, 4230, Calburne, 4193, Calyburne, 4242, *Caliburn*, Arthur's sword
 Came, 2380, 2385
 Capados, 580, *Cappadocia*
 Capatoylle, the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capytoile, 96, *the Capitol*
 Cardyfe, 2498, *Cardiff*
 Carelele, 480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, *Carlsruhe*
 Castle Blanke, 1225,
 Catrke, 482
 Cayme, 1311, *Carm*
 Cayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &c, *Kay*, Arthur's chief butler
 Chartis, 1619, *Chartres*
 Chastelayne, 2952, Chasteleynne, 3028
 Cheldrike, 2954
 Chestyre, 3914, *Chester*
 Childnke, 3537
 Christofre 2390
 Clarent, 4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword
 Clarybalde, 2497
 Clarymownde, 2497 See *Clere monde*
 Clegys, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &c, Clegys, 1692, 3635
 Clemente, 1828
 Cleremonde, 1603, 4265, Clere-mownde, 3635, Clere-mownde, 1638
 Cleremus, 1603, 1638
 Clowdmur, 1604
 Clyme, the close of, 1639
 Collbrande, 2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = *Caliburn*
 Colome, 623
 Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149, *Como*
 Constantyne, 282, an emperour of Rome
 Constantyne, 4316, Arthur's heir
 Constantyne, 628, 848, Costantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187
 Cordewa, 1866, *Cordova*
 Cornett, 600, Cornette, 1909, *Corneto*
 Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewaile, 1637, Cornewayle, 247, 1777, Korneswayle, 4054, *Cornwall*
 Craddoke, 3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487

- Crasyne, cowntas of, 3045
 Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580
 Cüst, 136, 467, 482, &c, Cüiste,
 227, 285, 296, &c, Cryste, 257,
 308, 346, &c, *Christ*
 Cyrus *See* Cirquytne in Glos-
 sary
 Cyprys, 596, *Cyprus*

 Damaske, 578, *Damascus*.
 Damyat, 578, *Damietta*
 Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke,
 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, *Den-*
mark
 Danamarkes, 3610, Danmarkes,
 3528, *Danes*
 Danes, 3694
 Danuby, 622, *the Danube*
 Daud, 3416
 Dolfinede, 2653, *Dauphiné (?)*
 Dolfyne, 3023, Dolphyne, 2970
 Dorsett, 4052
 Douere, 3066
 Duche-men, 1251, Duche-mene,
 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834, *Germans*

 Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343,
Hector
 Egypt, 576, 2200
 Elamet, 575
 Ermonye, 573, *Armenia* *See*
The Romans of Partenay, II 1637,
 5321, 5372, &c, where it is spelt
Hermeny
 Ermyngalle, 1825.
 Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263
 Eruge, 42
 Esexe, 1740, *Essex*
 Estriche, 45, 3933, *Austria*
 Ewandre, 1868, Ewandyre, 1622,
 Ewaynedyre, 1904
 Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075,
 &c, Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558,
 Ewane fytz Vryenee, 337, Ewayne
 fytz Vriene, 2066
 Ewfrates, 573, *Euphrates*
 Ewrope, 574

 Famacoste, 2761, *Famagosta* in
 Cyprus *See The Romans of Par-*
tenay, I 1299, and Mr Skeat's note
 thereon
 Federike, 2899
 Feltemour, 1382
 Feraunt, 2760, 2765, Ferawnt,
 3404, Ferawnte, 2421
 Ferrer, 2421, Ferrere, 2432
 ff Names beginning with *ff* are
 entered under single *F*.
 Flaundres, 495, Flaundiez, 34,
 494, Flawndresche, 3597, *Flanders*
 Florent, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797,
 &c, Florente, 2433, 2729
 Florent, 2232, Lucius's sword
 Floridas, 2755, 2778, 2780, 2803,
 3018, 3112, Florydas, 2490
 Forawnt, 2490 *Read Feraunt*
 France, 2365, Fraunce, 34, 110,
 367, 435, &c
 Fraunche-mene, 2484, *Fr ench-*
men
 Fres, 3864
 Freselannd, 110, Friselande, 367,
 Fryselande, 2765, *Friesland*
 Frodenike, 3864
 Froille, 3404, Frolle, 3345, 4208,
Frollo
 Fryselande *See* Freselannd

 Galelé, 592, *Gahlee*
 Galuth, 1387, 1470, 3709, Ga-
 luth, 2558, Gawayne's sword
 Galyrane, 3636
 Galys londe, 3862, *Wales*.
 Garyere, 592.
 Gawayne, 1265, 1352, 1368, 2218,

- &c Gawayne, 2979, 3860, Gawayne, 1463, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew
 Gaynour, 84, 705, Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325, Waynore, 3550, 3575, Waynou, 233, 652, 657, 697, Arthur's wife
 Gayous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius
 Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, *Genoa*
 Gerarde, 2896
 Gernaide, 2943, *Granada*
 Gernesay, 3861, *Guernsey*
 Gerone, 863
 Geryne, 3708
 Glamorgane, 59
 Glamour, 3862
 Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glaschenberye, 4308, *Glastonbury*
 Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, *Mount St Gothard*
 Godfraye, 3430
 Golapas, 2124
 Golyas, 3419, *Goliath*
 Gothelande, 37, Gutlande, 3763
 Gowere, 3861
 Grece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, *Greece*
 Grekes, 602
 Grekkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean
 Grisswolde, 3708
 Gryme, 1265
 Gutlande See Gothelande
 Gyane, 37, *Guenne*

 Hamptone, 3031, *Southampton*
 Hardelfe, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583
 Hawyke, 3541
 Henawde, 35, *Hannault*
 Henguste, 3545, *Hengist*
 Herygalle, 1742
 Herylle, 1742
 Hillary, 625
 Holaund, 35, *Holland*
 Hors, 3545, *Horsa*
 Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583
 Humbyre, 3541

 Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, *Jaffa, the ancient Joppa*
 Idirous, 4078, Idrus, 4135, 4141
 Idrus, 1439, 1510, Idrus fitz Ewayne, 1490, 1498
 Iene See Geene
 Iemtalle, 2112
 Ierante, 2890
 Ierusalem, 3415, 3433
 Iewe, 2895
 Ihesu, 863, *Jesus*
 Inde, 573, *Indra*
 Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, *Ynglande*, 283, 710, 724
 Ioatalle, 2877
 Iolyan, 2889
 Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905
 Iosephate, vale of, 2876
 Iosue, 2605, 3414, *Joshua*
 Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909
 Irritayne, 575
 Iudas, 2605, 3412, *Judas Macca-*
beus
 Iulus Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410
 Iulyus, 2877

 Karelyone, Karlyone See Caerlyone
 Karolus, 3423, *Charlemagne*
 Kayone, 2380, a mistake for

- Kayous*, caused by the word *Bayone*
in the line before
- Kayous *See* Cayous
- Kentt, 3542
- Korneawayle *See* Cornewaile
- Lancelott, 1720, Launcelot, 2073,
Launcelott, 368, Launcelotte, 1999,
Lawncelot de Lake, 3638, Lawnce-
lott, 4266
- Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817,
1827, 1900
- Leo, 1971
- Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167,
3784, *Lithuania*
- Lewlyne, 1826
- Londone, 2418
- Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c
Lorrayne, 429, 2418, 2531, &c
- Loth, 2081, 3637, Lothe, 4266,
Lott, 1999
- Lottez, 382
- Lowelle, 1516.
- Lowes, 4266
- Lucerne, 3094
- Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c Lu-
cyus, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86
- Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594, Lum-
baidye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585,
Lumberddye, 498, Lumberdye,
135, 350, 429, 1972, *Lombardy*
- Lusscheburghe, 2388, *Luxemburg*
- Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266
- Macedone, 603
- Makabee, 3413
- Mame, 2869, 3998, 4041
- Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marrike,
4209, Merrake, 4077
- Marschalle de Mowne, 1397
- Mawrelle of Mauncez, 1918
- Mawrene, 1918
- Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, *Metz*
- Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne,
351, 428, *Milan*
- Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of
Mentoche, 1919
- Merrake *See* Marrake
- Messie, 3998, *Messiah*.
- Meyes *See* Mees
- Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M,
1069, Myghelle, 1166, *St Michael*
- Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, *St*
Michael's Mount
- Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766,
3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711,
3874, 4221, 4226, &c Mordiede
the Malebranche, 4062, 4174
- Mownttagus, 3773
- Myghelle *See* Mighelle
- Nauerne, 44, *Navarre*
- Nazareth, 591
- Normandye, 834, Normaundye,
44
- Norwaye, 44, 3935
- Nylus, 591, *the Nile*.
- Orcage, 572
- Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.
- Origge, 1825
- Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934,
Orkkenaye, 4163, *Orkney*
- Owghtreth, 234
- Pamphile, 588, *Pamphilia*
- Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039
- Paresche, 1340, 1888, 2647,
Parys, 1609, 1631, *Parrs*.
- Paule, 2413
- Pavy, 3141, Paye, 568, *Pavia*
- Pawnee, 3140
- Peghttes, 4125, Peyghtes, 3533,
Picts
- Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377,
1544, *Persia*.

- Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883, *Petire*, 2646, *Petyr*, 1256, the apostle
 Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, *Petir*, 1610, *Petire*, 1543, *Petyr*, 1419, a senator
Petyrsande, 352
Peyghites See *Peghttes*
Peyters, 40, *Poictiers*
Porte Iaffe See *Iaffe*
Portyngale, 1028, *Portugal*
Pounte Tremble, 327, 352, *Pownte T*, 3140
Preter Iohne, 588, *Prester John*
Prewsslande, 2788, *Pruyslande*, 604, 2835, *Prussia*
Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, *Priamus*, 2595, 2646, 2690, Gawayne's prisoner
Prouynce, 40, *Provynce*, 2647, *Provence*
Pruyslande See *Prewsslande*
Pryamous, 4344, *Priam*
Pulle, 604, *Apulia*
Pys, 352, *Pyse*, 3141, *Pisa*
- Rawlaunde*, 1607, *Rowlande*, 1745.
Raynalde, 1607, 1995, *Raynalldde*, 1745
Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785
Reone See *Rone*
Reynes, 853
Richeere, 1745, *Richere*, 1607, 1995, 2790
Romayne, 310, 1704, 1733, *Roman*, *pl* *Romaynes*, 120, 174, 221, &c *Romaynez*, 1761, 1877, &c *Romayns*, 1291, 1361, &c.
Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c
Rone, 1338, *Reone* (? *Roone*), 424, *Rhone*
Roodes, 597, *Rhodes*
Rowlande, 1745
Rowne, 1996, *Rouen*.
- Salarne*, 2586, *Salerne*, 4311, *Salerno*
Sandewyche, 447, *Sandwyche*, 490, 635, 720
Sarazene, 2277, *Saracen*, *pl* *Sarazenes*, 624, 1846, 1911, &c *Sarazenez*, 1960, *Sarezenes*, 599, 607, *Sarzanez*, 1854, *Sarzynes*, 1626
Satanase, 3812, *Satan*
Sayne, 1336, *Seine*
Scottlande, 32, 292
Segramoure, 1871
Sessoynne, 1977, 2657, 2907, *Sexone*, 1964, *Saxony*
Sessoynes, 3530, *Saxons*
Sexone See *Sessoynne*
Sextenour, 1700, *Sextynour* of *Lyby*, 1625
Soone, 2482, *Saone*
Sotere See *Sutere*
Southamptonne, 3546
Spanyols, 3700, *Spaniards*
Spayne, 999, 3162
Spolett, 3161, *Spoletto*
Spruyslande, 3162
Suigenale, 3532
Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, &c *Surrye*, 590, 1626, 3312, *Surylande*, 2657, *Syria*
Sutere, 1627, 1910, *Sotere*, 1871-
Suters (?), 501
Swaldye, 57
Swetherwyke, 47.
Swyane of Swecy, 2958.
Swynne, 47
- Tambire*, 3902, *Tamar*
Tartary, 582
Thebay, 583
Tholus, 39, *Tolouse*, 1567, *Toulouse*
Towelle, 1916

- Tleyntis, (1) 4056
 Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343
 Troys, 1629, *Troyes*
 Turkayne, 2408 *Read* Tuskayne
 Turkey, 582, *Turkey*
 Turkys, 1917, *Turks*
 Turoyne, 39, *Touraine*
 Turry, 234
 Tuschayne, 431, Tuskane, 3150, Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593, *Tuscany*
 Valence, 41
 Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047
 Valyant, 2064, V of Vylerns, 1982
 Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025
 Vertennone vale, 3169
 Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048, 3164, *Viterbo*
 Vnwyne, 2868
 Vryelle, 1744
 Vryencee *See* Ewayne
 Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216, Arthur's father
 Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?)
 Vtolfe, 1622, 1868
 Vyenne, 41, *Vienne (in France)*
 Wade, 964
 Walchere, 2680
 Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West Walys, 322
 Walschelande, 334, *Wales*
 Waltyre, 2495
 Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217
 Watlyng-strette, 450, *Watling-street*
 Wawayne *See* Gawayne
 Waynor, Waynore, Waynour. *See* Gaynour
 Wecharde, 2495
 Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656, Westwale, 621, *Westphalia*
 Whycher, 2678, Wychere, 2680, 4025
 Wyghte, 334, *the Isle of Wight*
 Wynchestre, 4011
 Ynglande *See* Inglande.
 Jorke, 636, 3911, *York*

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- A, *conj* and, 2522 2797
 A, *int* ah ' 320, 1671, 1791
 Abaischite, *pp* abashed, 255
 Abaiste, Abayste, *pp* cast down, 1423, 3737
 Abbayes, *s pl* abbeys, 3403
 Abillere, *adj comp* abler, 2635
 Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564, Aboune, 511, Abowene, 823, Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, *prep and adv* above A S *abufan*
 Accorde, *v* agree, 344, *pp* accordide, 3133
 Accountes, *v* 3 *s* reckons, 1102, 1 *s* acounte, make account of, care for, 405, *inf* acownt, tell, 3929
 Actone, *s* acton, 902, 3457, *pl* aketouns, 2626
 Affraye, *s* fright, terror, 3226.
 Affrayede, *v pret* frightened, 2804, *pp* affrayede, 2256
 Aftire, Aftyr, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c
 Agaste, *adj* aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728
 Agayne, Agaynes, Agayne, Agayns, *prep* againt, towards, 774, 1268, 2681
 Agayne-stande, *v* resist, 3757, *pl* agayne-standes, 3126
 Ajournede, *pp* adjourned, put off, 340
 Ajuggede, *pp* judged, deemed, 862, 1658, 3411, 4110
 Ake, *s* oak, 1096 A S *ac*
 Akere, *s* acre, 3849.
 Aketouns See Actone
 Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, *adj* old
 Alegges, *v pl* allege, 4342
 Alet, *s* alette, shoulder-plate, 2565
 Alfyne, *s* 1343, a term of reproach, it literally means the *bishop* in chess See *Promptorium Parvulorum*
 Algarde, *s* a kind of wine, 202
 Alkyne, Alkyns, *adj* of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244
 Allblawsters, *s pl* crossbow-men, 2426
 Alle-weldand See Alweldande
 Allone, *adj* alone, only, 541, 2312
 Allossede, *pp* renowned, esteemed, 3881
 Alls See Als
 Alofede Read Alosede, *pp* praised, renowned, 2418
 Alouer, *adv* all over, 2027
 Alowe, *v* praise, 1036, 3 *s* alowes, 396
 Als, Alls, *conj* as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590, also, 1194

- Alweldande, 397, Alle-weldand, 1059, *adv* all ruling, all-powerful
 Alynnes, *s pl* aliens, 4061
 Amange, *prep* among, 4037, *adv* at times, sometimes, 1238
 Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c
 Amede, *pp* estimated, 4068
 "Aesmer, aasmer, aemer, aumer, easmer Juger, estimer, comparer, croire, penser, être d'avis"—*Ro quefort* Lat *estimare*
 Ancestres, Auncestres, *s pl* ancestors, 276, 521, 1310
 And = an, if, 134, 339, 1023
 Ane, *adv* an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661
 Anely, Anly, *adv* only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981
 Anentis, *prep* against, 2568
 Anes, *adv* once, 360 *See* Ones
 Angerde, *pp* angered, angry, 265, 1938, 1957
 Angers, *impers v* Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848
 Ankkere, *s* anchor, 3601, *pl* ankers, 740, ankys, 493
 Anlace, *s* a sort of dagger, 1148
 "Besides the dagger, Olfaucer, in his Canterbury Tales, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side" Meyrick, *Critical Inquiry into Antient Armour*, vol II p 100
 Anly *See* Anely
 Anone, *adv* anon, soon, 2716
 Ansuere, *v* answer, 98, 306, *pret* answard, 288
 Ansuere, *s* answer, 1324.
 Anter *See* Awnter
 Anterous, *adv*. adventurous, bold, 2524
 Apas, *adv* with measured step, 4014
 Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Ap-
 ponne, 4000, *prep* upon
 Appaïrelles, *v pl* apparel, dress, 500, *pp* appayrelle, 2461
 Apparant, Apparaunt, *adv* appar-
 ent, 1944, 2606
 Apparaylle, *s* apparel, 3365
 Apperte, *adv* open, 688
 Appertily, 1478, Appertilyche, 589, *adv* openly
 Appone *See* Apone
 Approches, *ref v pl* draw near, 4105
 Ar, Are, *adv & conj* before, 254, 331, 1722
 Arase, *v* snatch away, 4098
 Araysede, *pp* raised, drawn up, 1677
 Arborye, *s* trees, 3244
 Ardant, Ardaunt, *adv* burning, 193, 1087
 Are *See* Ar
 Are, *conj* or, 1944
 Areste, *v* arrest, stop, capture, 633, *pret* areste, 329, arestede, 1429
 Areste, *s* arrest, 1456, 1473, place of meeting, 311, 548
 Arowes, *s pl* arrows, 2105
 Arrabyes, Arrahys, *s pl*. animals of some kind, perhaps Arabian horses, 2288, 2337
 Arryfedede, 835, Aryefede, 600, Aryuede, 3905, *pp* come to shore
 As armes, (F1) to arms! 2717
 Asawte *See* Assawte
 Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, *v* try.
 Asaye, *s* trial, examination, 4312
 Ascente, Assente, *v* assent, 644, 1506, 1963
 Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, *v* 3 s shouts, cries out, *pl*. ascriez, 1768
 Asches, *v* 2 s askest, 343, 3 s askys, requires, 157, *pret* aschede, asked for, 715

- Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, *s* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053
- Assemble, *s* assembly, 1578, 1852, 1902
- Assingnez, *v* *pl* assign, 727, *pret* assingnyde, 240
- Assoyllede, *pp* absolved, 3498
- At = to (with the infinitive), 1165
- At = that = what, 1842, 3484
- Atheliste, *adj* noblest, 1593 *AS æpele*
- Attamede, *v* *pret* broached, pierced, 2175
 "He let *atume* hys pyement tunne
 To make his gode gestis glad"
 Royal MS 18 A x, leaf 130, bk
 "Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke,
 or abbrochyn Attamino, depleo"
Promptorium Parvulorum
- At-vndere, *adv* down, 3180
- Atyre, *s* attire, 4186
- Auctors, *s* *pl* authors, 4342
- Auditoure, *s* auditor, 1673, *pl* audytours, 661
- Aughte, Awughte, *adj* eight, 278, 2627, 3188
- Aughte, *v* See Awe
- Aughtende, *adj* eighth, 462
- Auncestrs See Ancestres
- Auntire, Auntyre See Awnter
- Austerene, Austeryne, *adj* stern, 306, 414, 571, &c See *Austerne* in *Priske of Conscience*, l 6181
- Auantid, *v* *pret* praised, 1594, *pp* avauntede, 2864
- Avanttwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051, Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmewarde, 2829, 3168, Avawwarde, 3764, *s* vanguard
- Avawmbrace, *s* vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568
- 'Auen aunt, *adj* becoming, graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500
- Aventaile, *s* "a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, *quæventus hauritur*" (—Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Ventaculum*) 910, 2572
- Aventure, *s* adventure, chance, fortune, 642
- Avres, *v* turns towards, directs, 3164 *O Fr vres*, turn
- Avise mente, *s* advice, counsel, 148
- Avissely, Auyssely, *adv* advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165
- Avowe, *s* vow, 296, 308, 347
- Avowe, *v* vow, 357, *pp* avowede, 369
- Anoyeddyde, *v* *pret* quitted, 2051
- Avyede, *v* *pret* showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716
 "Avier Monter le chemin à quelqu'un" *Roquesoit* "Avoyer, aveier, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin, exciter, imiter, s'avoyer, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se diriger, s'occuper de quelque chose" *Burguy*
- Awe, *v* owe, 99, *pl* awes, 455, ought, *pret* aughte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c, *pret* *subj* aughte, oughtest, 289, 'aughie,' as an impersonal verb, 1583, 1595, 3340, awghte, 3509 *Me* aughte = I ought
- Awene, *adj* own, 709, 997, 1594
- Awghtene, *adj* eighteen, 4069
- Awke, *adj* perverse, contrary, 13
- Awkewarde, Awkwarde, *adv*. awry, transversely, 2247, 2564
- Awlde See Alde
- Awncestrye, *s* ancestry, 1907
- Awntere, Auntire, Awntire, *s* adventure, chance, risk, 1905, 2617 2244, *pl* awnters, 1967, at awntere, at random, 2543.

- Awntere, Anter, Auntie, *v* adventure, 360, 1596, 1660, 3 *s* anters, 1498, *pl* awnters, 1596
- Awntrende, *adj* adventuring, bold, 2717
- Awntrouseste, *adj* most adventurous, 1624
- Awughte *See* Aughte
- Ayele, *s* grandfather, 2603
- Ayere, Ayre, *s* heir, 279, 283, 2634, *pl* ayers, 3146
- Ayere, Ayre, *v* go, 455, 470, 1591, 3 *s* ayerez, 617, *pl* ayres, 1329, 1 *p* ayerande, 2880
- Ayther, Aythere, Aythyre, *adj* ether, each, 939, 1991, 2880
- Ay-ware, *adv* everywhere, 614
- Azoure, Azure, *s* blue, 193, 765, 3355
- Azayne, *adv* again, 2713
- Azaynes, A-zaynez, *adv* against, 786, 2117, 2791 *See* Agayne
- Azayne-stondes *See* Agayne-stande.
- Bacenett, *s* cap of steel or other metal, sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2695, 2770, *pl* bace-netez, 1754
 "He hutte him on þe helm on hiht,
 In to þe Brayn þow *Bacinet* briht,
 Thus is his seruyse zolde"
The Kyng of Tars (Vernon MS, leaf 306, b)
- Bachelers, Bachellers, *s* *pl* novices in arms, 68, 567, 1424
- Bade, *v* *pret* abode, 2383
- Bagis, Bagys, *s* *pl* badges, 2303, 3730
- Baiste, *pp* downcast, afraid, 2856
- Baite, *v* feed, 2694
- Bake, *s* back, 2203, 3257
- Bakene, *pp* baked, 3166
- Bakhalfe, *s* backpart, back, 1482
- Balde, *adj* bold, 1968
- Baldly, *adv* boldly, 630
- Bale, *s* harm, grief, sorrow, 805, 3976, *adj* hurtful, 1483 A S *bealu*
- Balefulle, *adj* hurtful, 791, sorrowful, wretched, 1029, 1136
- Bale-fyre, *s* a large fire, properly a fire lighted as a signal of distress, 1048.
- Baltyrde, *v* *pret* danced about, capered, 782 *See* *Balteres*, *Alliterative Poems* (Reprint), p 102, l 459
- Banarettez *See* Banerettes
- Bandez, *s* *pl* bonds, 1485, used metaphorically for "distress," 1180
- Baneoure, *s* bearer of a banner, 3732 "Banyowre, or bannerbeiere *Verillarius, verillifer, primpilus*" Promptorium Parvulorum
- Banerettes, Banerettez, Banarettez, *s* *pl* knights of the higher order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855
- Banke, *s* shore (of the sea), 728, 3731, *pl* bankes, 3714
- Barayne, *adj* barren, 224
- Barbours, *s* *pl* barbers, 2331, 2577
- Barbycane, *s* outer fortification or defence, fortress at the outlet of a city, 1183, 2470
- Bare *See* Bere
- Bare, *s* boar, 3123
- Barefote, *adj* barefoot, 2309
- Bareheuedys, *s* *pl* boarheads, 177
- Bare-heuede, *adj*. bareheaded, 3630
- Bare-legyde, *adj* barelegged, 2122
- Baronage, *s* company of barons, 587, 1242.
- Barowes, *s* *pl* swine, 191. A S *beark*
- Barrers, *s* *pl* barners, 2469.

- Basschode, *pp* cast down, 2121.
 Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Batayle, 2458, Bataylle, 3107, Baytaille, 4319, *s* battle, body of troops, *pl* batailles, 1425, battalles, 4064
 Baterde, *pp* battered, 189
 Bathe, *conj* both, 19, 34, 352, &c
 Bawmede, *v pret* embalmed, 2298, *pp* bawmede, 980, 4020
 Baye, *adj* bay, brown, 918
 Baytaille *See* Bataile
 Baytand, *i p* baiting, 2516, baytaynde, 2671
 Be, Bee, *prep* by, 60, 164, 174, &c
 Be, Bee, *v be, ind pres pl* ber, 97, bene, 2850, *fut* 1 be (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4140, 2 bees, 1688, 2667, heese, 2663, 3 bees, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312, *imp pl* 2 bes, 3798, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737, bez, 222
 Behlede, *v pret* made bloody, 2250
 Bechene, *adj* beechen, 1713
 Bechopes, *s pl* bishops, 4328
 Becommys, *v* becomes, is proper for, 4317
 Bedde, Bede, *s* bed, 758, 805, 2858
 Bede, *adj* craving, hungry, lean, 3464 *See* *Beddy* in *Jamieson*
 A S *biddan*, to ask
 Bedes, *v pl* offer, 505
 Bedgatt, *s* going to bed, 1030
 Bee *See* Be
 Beerynes *See* Berne
 Bees *See* Be, *v*
 Begynnande, *i p* beginning, 2963
 Behalde, *v* behold, 2517, *i p* behaldande, 3107
 Bekez, *v* 3 *s* bakes, warms, 1048
 Bekende, *v. pret* committed, entrusted, 2340, 2355, bekennyde, 482
 Beknowe, *v* acknowledge, confess, 3867
 Bekyre, *v* contend, fight, 3679, *pl* bekys, 2425, *pret* bekerde, 2096
 Bekyne, *s* beacon, 564
 Belde, *v* dwell, 8, *pl* bieldez, 1242, *pret* beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38, *pp* beyldede, occupied, 566
 Belefedede, 1250, Beleuede, 3405, Beleufede, 2380, *pp* left
 Beleue, *v* remain, 3583
 Belyfe, Belyue, *adv* quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732
 Beme, *s* beam, 3663
 Beneyde *Read* Bendyde, *v pret* bent, 2424
 Bente, *s* field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067
 Benysone, *s* blessing, 4318
 Berde, *s* beard, 1012, *pl* berdez, 1002
 Bere, *s* bear, 775, 790, 802
 Bere, *v* bear, 51, 615, *pret* bare, 291, 893, *pp* borne, 3738
 Berkes, *v* 3 *s* barks, 1351
 Bernakes, *s pl* barnacle geese, 189
 Berne, 962, Beryne, 116, Berynne, 3580, Bierne, 1094, Byerne, 2202, *s* man, *pl* bernes, 255, beryns, 148, beerynes, 1050, bieenez, 1483, byernez, 2022, byerns, 1391. A S. *beorn*
 Berouene *Read* Beronene, *pp* run over with, covered, 3946, berowne, 3971
 "On me [the cross] lay þe lambe of love,
 I was plater, hys body above,
 Whan flessche and veynes alle to-clove,
 With blood I was *byronne*"
 Royal MS 18 A x, leaf 128.

- See *Beronen* in *Percy's Folio MS*
ed Hales and Furnivall, vol i p
213, l 31, and vol iii p 63, l
172
- Berye, *v* bury, 4318, 3 *s* beryes,
2379, *p p* beryede, 980
- Beryelle, *s* burial, 1776, 2188
- Beiyenge, *s* burying, 2377, 4023
- Bes See Be
- Besauntez, *s pl* bezants, 3256
- Bese See Be
- Bessomes, *v* 3 *s* besoms, 1 *e*
sweeps, 3661
- Besy, *adj* busy, 4095
- Besye, *s* business, 3630
- Beseke, *v* beseech, 3 *s* besekys,
305, *pl* besekes, 127, *pret* be-
soghte, besoughte, 1234, 1438,
3137
- Bestale, *s* beasts, cattle, 1050
- Beste, *s* beast, 107, 811
- Betakyns, *v* 3 *s* betokens, signi-
fies, 822, 824
- Bet, *v pret* set in order, adjusted,
lit improved, 3656 A S *bétan*
- Beteche, *v* hand over, deliver,
commit, 1611, 3 *s* beteches, 714,
pret betoke, 1889, betuke, 3190,
4015 A S *betēcan*
- Betoke See Beteche
- Betrappede, *p p* entrapped, 1630
- Betuke See Beteche
- Betwyx, *prep* betwixt, 801, 2798
- Betydde, *v* betide, 4325, 3 *s* be-
tyddes, 3482, betyddys, 4315
- Bett, *v pret* beat, 2470, 3682
- Bettes, *v und pres pl* beat,
2808
- Betyne, *adj* beaten, hence, adorn-
ed with beaten gold, or other such
material, 3631, 3646, 3945
- Beueryne = bevering, quivering,
3630 OE *bwer*, tremble A S
bytan Or perhaps beueryne =
beaver-coloured, compare *bewer*
hwed in *Sir Gawayne and the Green*
Knight, l 845
- Bewe, *v* bow, 3366
- Bewes, *s pl* boughs, 3366
- Bewells, *s pl* bowels, 2175, 2203
- Bewschers, *s pl* (?) the lower
parts of the body, 1047 A S
scaru, bowels, &c, bew = bel,
beau, fine, perhaps
- Beyldede See Belde
- Bez See Be
- Bidde, *v* bide, remain, 4028
- Biddis, *v und pres pl* offer, 2310
- Bieldez See Belde
- Bierdez See Birde
- Bilynge, *s* probably the part of
the ship about the *bill* or *rostrum*,
3663 A S *bil*, bill, beak, fore-
part of a ship (See *Bosworth*)
- Birdes, 2190, Birdez, 1029,
Bierdez, 1052, Byrdez, 999, *s pl*
women, ladies A S *brýd*, bride,
wife, woman
- Birenne, 2519 Mistake for
"outene"
- Birtenede, 3972 See Brittene
- Blake, *adj* black, 775, 1090,
4339
- Blanke, *s* horse, 1799; *pl*.
blankes, 1860 See Blonke
- Blasonis, *s pl* shields of arms,
1860 See *Blasoun* in *Sir Gawayne*
and the Green Knight, l 828
- Blawe, *v* blow, 2662
- Blawene, *p p* blown, 1286
- Blawnchede, *p p* whitened, 3039
- Ble, Blee, *s* colour, complexion,
2576, 3332, 3558, 4213
- Blemeste, *p p* blemished, hurt,
2578
- Blendez, *v* 3 *s* blends, is mingled,
1799
- Blenke, *v* blench, wince, 3640,
3735, 3 *s* blenkes, 4213, cause to
blench, overcome, 2857.

- Bleryde, *v* *pret* mouthed, made
wry faces, 782
"Deuels sal gadir about hym þan,

And grymly gryn on hym and *blere*
And hydus braydes mak hym to
fere" Hampole's *Pricke of Con-*
science, l 2226
- Blethely, *adv* blithely, cheerfully,
4147
- Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392,
Blude, 3235, 4282, *s* blood
- Blode-bande, *s* blood-band, a
bandage to stop bleeding, 2576
- Blod-hondes, *s* *pl* bloodhounds,
3640
- Blody, Blodye, *adj* bloody, 793,
3916
- Blondirs, *v* 2 *s* blunderest, 3975
- Blonke, *s* horse, steed, 453, *pl*
blonkes, 615, blonkkes, 1634 A S
blanca, blouca
- Blude See Blod
- Blyne, *v* cease, 1931, 2578, 3975
A S *blinnan*
- "Blyschit, *v* *pret* looked, 116 See
blusched, Alliterative Poems, p 29,
1 980
- Blysse, *s* joy, 1485
- Blyssyng, *s* blessing, 4103
- Bonettez, *s* *pl* additional pieces
of sail, 3656 "Bonnet (*bonnette*,
Fr), an additional part made to
fasten with lathings to the foot of
the sails of small vessels with one
mast, in moderate winds It is
exactly similar to the foot of the
sail it is intended for They are
commonly one-third of the depth
of the sails they belong to" (Fal-
coner's *Marine Dictionary*, ed Bur-
ney)
- Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730,
3641, Burde, 1930, *s* board, table,
board (of a ship)
- Bordoure, *s* border, 4211, *pl*
bordurs, 907
- Bordyrde, *p* *p* bordered, 1002
- Bore, *s* boar, 188, 4214
- Borne, 2519 Perhaps a mistake
for *berne*
- Borne, *p* *p* See Bere
- Bosturs, *s* *pl* boasters, 1393.
- Bot, Bott, Botte, *conj* but, 10,
70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925,
bot if, bot ȝif, bot ȝife, 356, 486,
250, unless, *prep* without, 4070
- Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, *s* amends,
recompense A S *bót, bótú*
- Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547,
2691, 2997, 3716, 4151
- Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976,
Butelesse, 1014, *adj* without re-
medy, cureless
- Bottes, *s* *pl* boats, 748
- Botures, *s* *pl* bitterns, 189 Pro-
bably miswritten for *Betures*, see
Betoure in John Russell's *Boke of*
Nurture, ed Furnivall, ll 421, 541,
696
- Boune, Bowne, *v* make ready,
prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013,
1034, 3 *s* bownes, 3591, bounnez,
783
- Bourde See Borde
- Bourdene, *v* *pl* *pres* and *jest*,
3122, bouredez, 3 *s* *pres* and 1170
- Boure, *s* bower, 2190 A S *búr*.
- Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425,
3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous,
615, 775, 783, 1379, *adj* rude,
rough, harsh, violent
- Bouxome, 2858, Bouxvme, 4147,
adj obedient
- Bouxsomly, *adv* obediently, 107.
- Bowes, *v* 3 *s* turns, 2251, *pl*.
bowes, go, 69, 2310
- Bowes, *s* *pl* shoulders, 188,
boughs, 1711, 3247 A S *bok*,
arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough
(*Bosworth*)
- Bowndene, *p* *p* bound, 3316.
- Bowne, *v* See Boune
- Bownne, *adj* ready, 1633, 2331.

- Box, *s* stroke, blow, 1111
 Boyes, *s pl* 2122, 2856, 3122
 Boystous *See* Boustous
 Brace, *v* fasten, fix, 1182, 3 *s*
 bracez, puts on his arm, 914
 Bracer, 4247, *s* brassart, a defence
 for the arm, *pl* brasers, 1859
 Biade, *adj* broad, 106, 914, 1094,
comp braddere, 55, 1699
 Bragge, *v* blow (in a trumpet), *pl*
pres ind braggene, 1484, braggēs,
 4107, *pret* braggede, 3657
 Biaggeis, *s pl* boasters, brag-
 garts, 1348
 Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914,
 Brannde, 2239, *s* sword A S
brand, brand, brand, torch, sword
 Brankkand, *i p* branking, *i e*
 bridling, checking, curbing, re-
 pressing, 1861 *See* Brank and
Branks in Jameson
 Braste *See* Briste
 Brathely, *adv* hastily, violently,
 fiercely, 1771, 3219
 Braunchers, *s pl* young hawks,
 190
 Braundesche *See* Brawndysche
 Brawle, Biawlle, *v* 2349, 2362,
 3 *s* brawles, 1349
 Brawlynge, *s* confusion, 2176
 Brawnches, *s pl* branches, 3367
 Brawndysche, *v* brandish, 3359,
 3 *s* braundesche, 1056, *pret*
 braundyschte, 782, brawndeste,
 3657
 Brawne, *s* boar, 1095
 Brayd, *v* drive, thrust, dash,
 draw, 1172, 3 *s* braydes, 2695,
 braydez, 2069, 2073, brayedez,
 906, *p p* braydene, cast, 3945
 Brayde, *s* thrust, 3762
 Brede, *s* bread, 2715
 Brede, *s* roast meat, 79, 190,
 1052, *pl* bredez, 1049, bredis,
 2715 A S *brède*
 Brede, *s* breadth, 1224, 2011,
 2273, 3656 A S *brédo*
 Bredes, *v* 3 *s* breeds, 224
 Bregaundez, *s pl* brigands, 2096
 "These foot soldiers were clothed
 in jackets, which were quilted, and
 had pieces of iron within, hence
 called brigandines. Such jackets
 were worn in the time of Elizabeth
 and James I by the English arch-
 ers" Meyrick, *Glossary of Mili-
 tary Terms*, under *Brigantia*
 Breke, *v* break, 4146, 3 *s*
 brekes, 3124
 Breklesse, *adj* without breeches,
 naked, 1048
 Breme, *adj* fierce, 1380
 Bremly, *adv* fiercely, 4107
 Brene, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482,
i cuirass, *pl* brenyes, 3753, brenys,
 1525, 1858, bryneys, 4119 *See*
Bryni in the Glossary to *Havelok*,
 ed Skeat
 Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680,
adj armed with a cuirass
 Breste, *s* breast, 2253, front of an
 army, 1990, *pl* brestez, 191
 Brestys *See* Briste
 Brethe, *s* wrath, anger, 107, 117,
 2213
 Brethly, *adv* angrily, 3661
 Brettene, Brettyne *See* Brittene
 Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, *s*
 bridge
 Briste, *v* burst, break, 214, 3 *s*
 bristez, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482,
pl bristez, 1859, brestys, 3663,
pret braste, 2176, 2271, *pret*
pl broustene, 2544, *p p* brustene,
 2771, broustene, 3974, *weak pret*
 brystedde, 1129
 Brittene, 963, Brettyne, 3580,
 Bryttyne, 106, 1350, *v.* cut or dash
 in pieces, destroy completely, *pret*
 brettene, 1487, brittentyde, 802,
 bryttene, 2212, *p p* brettene, 3520,
 brittene, 1067, birtene,

- 3972 A S *brylluan, brytman*, to divide into fragments, distribute
- Broche, *v* pierce, stab, 1172, 3 *s* broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918, *pl* brochez, spur, 1449, *pret* brochede, broached, tapped, 2714, *pp* brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067
- Brochez, *s pl* spits, 1029
- Brode, *adj* broad, 116, 792, 1047
See Brade
- Brought, 3358, Broghte, 802, *v pret* brought, *pp* broghte, 1013, 1017
- Brokbrestede, *adj* having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095 *See* Brocked in *Jamieson* Compare "Brock faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger"
Brockett
- Bronde, *s* sword, 2566, 3631, *pl* brondes, 2309 *See* Brand
- Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, *adv* hastily, violently, fiercely
- Brothy, *adj* (?) foamy, frothy, 1090
- Browddene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, *adj* woven *See* *Brawdenn* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, II 177, 580 A S *brogden*, *broden*, *pp* of *bregdan*, to weave, braid, &c The "brenyes" were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other
- Bruchez, *s pl* brooches, 3256
- Bruschese, *v pl* brush, dash, 3680
- Brustils, *s pl* bristles, 1095.
- Bryddes, *s pl* birds, 181
- Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, *s* bridle
- Brygge *See* Brigge.
- Brymly, *adv* fiercely, 117, 4214
- Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, *v* burn, 3 *s* brynnez, 1241, *pret* brynte, 117, *pp* brynte, 3520
- Bryneys *See* Brene
- Brynyede *See* Brenyede
- Brystedde, Brystez *See* Briste
- Bryttenede, Bryttyne *See* Brittene
- Burde *See* Borde
- Burgesse, 3082, *s* burgess, citizen, *pl* burgeys, 857
- Burghes, *s* city, 1968, 2424, 3083, *pl* burghes, 1241 A S *burh*
- Burliche, 2190, Burelyche, 304, Burlyche, 586, 730, 1002, 1111, 2010, *adj* tall, stately, grand
- Burliche, *adv* grandly, 4199
- Burneschte, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnyste, 177, 1859, *pp* burnished, polished
- Bus, *impers v* behoves, 2576
Vs bus = we must
- Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, *s* bushes
- Buschede *See* Buske, *v*
- Buschement, *s* ambush, 3124
See Enbuschement
- Buskayle. *See* Buscayle
- Buske, *s* bush, wood, 453, 918, *pl* buskez, 1142
- Buske, *v* make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go, 3 *s* buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073, *pl* buskes, 1754, buskez, 729, 1618, *pret* buskede, 1633; *imp* 2 *s* buske, 1263, *imp* 2 *pl* buskes, 2855, *pp* buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567, buske *vpe*, raise, 3072.
- Bustous *See* Boustous
- Butelesse *See* Botelesse
- Byd, Bydde, Byde, *v* ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323, 3 *s* byddez, 1776, byddis, 2361

- Byddynge, *s* bidding, command, 1030, 1931
- Byde, *v* remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968, 3 *s* byddys, 4214, *pl* byddes, 2808, byddez, 1030, await, wait for, *imp* 2 *pl* byddez, 629
- Byerns, Byeryne *See* Berne
- Byggly, *adv* bigly, strongly, 1376
- Byhalue, *s* behalf, 1674
- Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, *impers* *v* behoves
- Byhyndene, *adv* behind, 694
- Bylefede, 1538, Byleuede, 2145, 2366, Byleufede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, *pp* left
- Bynne, *prep* within, 804 A S *binnan*
- Byrdez *See* Birdes
- Byrre, *s* impetus, violence, 3661
- Byswenkez, *v* 3 *s* toils, 1128 A S *beswincan*, to labour
- Byttes, *v* 3 *s* bites, 791
- Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, *s* hap, occurrence
- Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, *s* cabin, *pl* cabanes, 733
- Cabilles, *s* *pl* cables, 3671
- Cachede, *pp* chased, 3513
- Cachene, *v* *pl* catch, seize, take, 834, *pl* catchez, 480, *pret* caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kawghte, 3916, *pp* cawghte, 3514, kaughte, 2995
- Caffe, *s* chaff, refuse, 1064
- Caire *See* Cayre
- Cantelle, *s* corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231 "*Chantel, Cantel*, coin, quartier, morceau, chanteau" *Burguy*
- Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, *s* captain, *pl* capytayne, 838
- Capyfte, 1589, *s* captive, prisoner, *pl* captifs, 1580
- Care, 859, Kaie, 1838, *s* sorrow
- Carefulle, *adj* unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777
- Caremane, *s* male, man, 957 A S *carlman*
- Carffes, *s* *pl* cuts, 2713
- Carle, *s* fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165 A S *carl*
- Carpe, 2750, Karpe, 1929, 2126, *v* talk, speak, 3 *s* carpys, 132, *pret* carpede, 143, 220 "Carpyn", or talkyn' *Fabulor, confabulor, garrulo* "Promptor um Parvulorum"
- Carpynge, *s* talk, 1672
- Caryage, *s* luggage, 2355
- Caste, *v* cast, consider, purpose, 2 *s* castes, 261, 3 *s* castes, 1998, castis, 1769, *pret* kest, 3384, keste, 113, 280, 943, *imp* 2 *s* kaste 3406, *pp* castyne, 819, 3240
- Castelles, *s* *pl* castles, 27, 849
- Cawtelous, *adj* full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185 Fr *cauteleur*
- Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, *v* go, 3 *s* cayres, 243, *pl* cayers, 480 The original meaning was turn A S *cýrran, cérran*, to turn.
- Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, *adv* certainly
- Certez, 1162, 1342, Certys, *adv* surely, certainly
- Certyfye, *v* tell, inform, 1555
- Ceté, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, *s* city, *pl* cetees, 2609, cetese, 1337
- Chaas, *s* chace, 2269
- Chalange, *v* contest, dispute, 1322, challenge, 2524, 3397, claim, 3326 "*Chalonger*, demander, con-tester, provoquer, attaquer, défendre, refuser, prohiber, blâmer, de calumnia fausse accusation, chicane" *Burguy* under *Chalonge*
- Champayne, *s* champaign, level

- country, 1226, 1362, *pl* champanyse, 1822
- Changenc, *v inf* change, 1405, chawnge, 2301, *pl* changene, 2989, chaungenc, 168, *pret* chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2964, *i p* chawngawnde, 2523, chawngyngc, 3267
- Chapes, *s pl* metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522 "Chape of a schethe *Sparula*" *Prompt Parv* "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword" *Way in Prompt Parv*
- Chapyde, *v pret* escaped, 4260
- Charbokle, 3326, Charebocle, 2523, 3267, *s* carbuncle
- Chare, *s* (?) 3603
- Chare, *v* (?) carry, 1886
- Charge, *v* load, burden, charge, molest, &c, *3 s* chargges, 3538, *pret* chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406, *p p* chargede, 1549, charegyde, 1552, chargegid, 3136, chargege, 3604, chargegide, 2731
- Chargour, 1026, *s* dish, *pl* chargeours, 185
- Chantee, *s* charity, 1019, 1542
- Charottez, *s pl* chariots, 1552.
- Charpe, *adj* sharp, 3600
- Charre, *s* car, 3914
- Charry, *adj* (?) dear, cherished, 2964 *Fr* *cher*, dear, *chéri*, cherished
- Chasse, *s* chace, 2368
- Chasse, *v* chase, 2237
- Chastye, *v* chastise, correct, 1019, *p p* chastyede, 690
- Chasyngc-spere, *s* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955
- Chauffede, *p p* heated, excited, 2236
- Chaunce, *s* chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999, chawncse, 2368, *pl* chauncez, 531, 2936
- Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chaunchelcre, 1541, *s* chancellor
- Chawffe, *v* become heated, 2301
- Chawmbyis, *s pl* chambers, 3041
- Chayere, *s* chan, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347
- Cheefe, *s* chief (Her), 2523
- Cheefe, *adj* chief, 1363, 1404
- Cheekke *See* Chekke
- Cheese *See* Chese
- Chefede *See* Cheue
- Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, *s pl* chieftans
- Chekefulle, *adj* chockfull, 3604
- Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000 Cheekke, 1986, *s* check, repulse, but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to *success* In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy
- Chekyne, *s* chicken, 4181
- Chekyrde, *p p* chequered, 3267
- Chele, *s* cold, 3391
- Chere, *s* face, countenance, 2069, 2964
- Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, *v* choose, hence, choose a way, go towards, *3 s* cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225, *pl* chesene, 1873, *p p* chosene, 2731
- Cheualere, *s* knight, 208, 1551, *pl* cheualers, 2116
- Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheuallrous, 1399, *adj* chivalrous
- Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheuallrye, 531, *s* chivalry, knighthood, knights
- Cheuede, 1117, 1841, Chefede, 869, *p p* fared, thriven, succeeded
- Cheuede, *v pret* attained, 3329
- Cheueride, *p p* shivered, 3391.

- Chewyse, *v* save, 1750 "*Chevr*,
venir à bout de quelque chose, sor-
tir d'une affaire, se tirer d'embarras
"*Burquy*
- Cheynes, *s* *pl* chains, 2522
- Chiftayne, *s* chieftain, 2732
- Childe, *s* applied to a grown per-
son, 2952, 4260, *pl* childre, 1821,
childre, 1025, childrene, 4078,
childienne, 3188, childyre, 845,
1051, childyrene, 3208
- Chillande, *i* *p* chilling, cold,
2965
- Chippe, *s* ship, 3599, *pl* chippes,
3546
- Chippe-burdez, *s* *pl* shipboards,
1699
- Chis, (?) 2217
- Cho, *pron* she, 655, 659, 715,
&c *See* Scho
- Chokkefulle, *adj* chockfull, 1552
- Chokkes, *v* 3 *s* (?) thrusts, 2955,
pp chokkode, 3603
- Chullede, *pp* 1444 "Chulle
To bandy about" *Hallwell*
- Churles, *adj* churlish, 4181
- Chymnés, 3041, Chympnés, 168,
s *pl* brasiers, or other receptacles
for fire, fireplaces
- Chyne, *s* chine, backbone, 3390
- Cirquytne, 3399, Cyrqwyttrye,
2616 (wrongly printed *Cyrus*
wyttrye), *s* pride, arrogance
- Cité, 1696, 1979, Citee, 60, *s*
city *See* Ceté
- Clappyde, 956, Clappide, 1137,
v *pret* smote together
- Claroune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718,
s clarion, war-trumpet, *pl* clarions,
1758
- Claspande, *i* *p* clasping, 4337
- Clasppis, *s* *pl* clasps, 909
- Clathe-sekkes, *s* *pl* cloth-sacks,
733
- Clauer, *s* clover 3241
- Clauerande, *i* *p* clawing, 3324
- Clede, *v* *pret* clothed, 2713, *pp*
cledde, 3334, clede, 3241, 3684,
cleede, 217, clothed, clad
- Clefe, *v* *pret* clave, split, 2559
- Cleffe, *v* cleave, stick, cling,
1312
- Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123,
v 3 *s* clutches, seizes
- Clene, *adj* clean, pure, 201, 217,
bright, fair, good, 1197, 1603
- Clenkkede, *v* *pret* clanked, 2113
- Clenliche, Clenly, Clenlyche, *adv*
well, 216, 628, 654, 1586, entirely,
quite, 581, 673, 850, 2125
- Clepid, *v* *pret* called, 3563
A S *clypman*
- Cleie, *adj* clear, bright, 819, 883,
909, illustrious, 1559, clear, free
from obstacles, 1640
- Clerewoite, *s* 3241 Perhaps =
A S *clæfer-wyrt*, small clover
- Clergialle, *adj* skilful, 1758
- Clergyally, *adv* cleverly, 200
- Clergye, *s* learning, 809
- Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, *s*,
pl clerics, scholars
- Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019,
Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, *s* *pl*
cliffs
- Clewide, *v* *pret* cleaved, clung,
3268
- Close, *v* enclose, 1165, 2003
- Close, *s* prison, 1586, enclosed
space, enclosure, 1639, 3240
- Closse, *adj* secret, 1196
- Cloughes *See* Clewes
- Clowez, *s* *pl* claws, 783
- Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, *s* chff,
pl cleyffez, 2019
- Clymbande, *i* *p* clumbing, 3324,
3422
- Clynges, *v* 3 *s* presses, 1865
- Coblez, *s* *pl* cables, 742

- Coferez, 733, Cofins, 2283, Cofies, 4206, *s pl* coffins, chests
- Cogge, *s* ship, 476, 756, 3634, *pl* coggez, 738 "Carret on the colde ythes cogges & other" *The Destruction of Troy*, E E T S, 1 3242
- Coldis, *v* 2 *s* makest cold, chill-est, 3518
- Coluiez, *s pl* colours, 819
- Comandez, 2392, Comaundez, 1637, Commaundez, 71, *v* 3 *s pres ind* commands, *pret* comande, 1218, comaunde, 2356, comaundy, 1602, commande, 156, 4148, *imp* comaunde, 1585
- Come, *v inf* 1584, 3 *s pres ind* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, commez, 1439, *pl* commez, 1545, *pret* come, 80, 176, 2119, 2 *p* commande, 3468, *pp* comene, 582, 865, commyne, 1419, comyne, 987
- Come, *s* coming, 1203, 1565, 1812
- Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj* comely
- Comes, *impers v* becomes, befits, 1579
- Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v* comfort, strengthen, 3 *s* comfourthes, 3131
- Comforthe, *s* comfort, 3960
- Comlyh, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv* in a comely manner
- Commande *See* Come
- Comone, *v* converse, 1580
- Comouns, 725, Comowns, 2353, *s pl* commons
- Compas, *s* outer part (of an enclosure), 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222
- Compaste, *pp* surrounded, 3633
- Concelle, 259, &c *See* Counsaile
- Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s* council
- Condethe, 3148, 3483, Countdye, 475, Cundit, 414, *s* safe conduct
- Condethes, *s pl* conduits, 201
- Condycyone, *s* condition, 1511
- Confundez, *v* 3 *s* confounds, 1922, *pp* confundede, 1153
- Connygez, *s pl* comes, rabbits, 197
- Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v pret* won, gained, *pp* conqueryde, 402
- Consayle *See* Concelle
- Constable, *s* 1585, 1590
- Contek, Conteke, *s* strife, 2721, 3669, 4177
- Contenance, Contenaunce, *s* countenance, manner, behaviour, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.
- Contié, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Countié, 223, 2304, Cowntre, 3542, *s* country, *pl* contres, 3425, contieez, 27
- Conuaye, *v* convey, 1589, 1604
- Conynge, *adj* cunning, skilful, 3202, *superl* conyngeste, 809, lonyngeste, 3177
- Cope-borde, *s* cupboard, 206
- Copes, *s pl* 4334
- Coppe, *s* cup, 2750
- Coppe-fulle, *s* cupful, 3378
- Corage, *s* heart, 536, 1725, 1922
- Corenalle *See* Coronalle
- Corkes, *s* carcase, 1091
- Corne, (?) 1786, 1837
- Cornettes, *s pl* 1758, 4108
- Cornuse, *s pl* horns, 1809 *Lat cornu*
- Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Core-nalle, 3258, *v*, a kind of ring or crown round a helmet, also, part of a lady's head-dress
- Corone, 291, Coroune, 28, Corowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426, 4202, Crownne, 3352, *s* crown, *pl* corowns, 3269, crounes, 51

- Coroune, 678, Clowne, 3185, *v* crown, *pp* corounde, 142, coroune, 125, corownde, 1654, 2447, 3525, crowned, 3213, crowne, 3049, crownne, 3407
- Corroumppe, *pp* corrupt, 3478
- Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, *s* corpse, body
- Corsaunt, *s* holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See *Corsant* in *English Gilds*, p 97, l 8, and *Corseynt*, *English Gilds*, p 188, l 1.
- Corvene See *Kerues*
- Coseri, *s* (?) 1582
- Coste, *s* coast, 834, 877, 1787
- Cosyne, *s* cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864, *pl* cosyns, 50, 101
- Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, *s* coat
- Couaitte See *Couerte*
- Couatys, *s* covetousness, 1580
- Couaunde Read *Conannde*, *adj* cunning, skilful, 558
- Couched, *pp* set, 909
- Couerte, 1191, Couartte, 51, Couette, 3325, *v* covet, 2 *s* *pres* couettes, 1321, *pp* cowayte, 2397
- Couenawnte, *s* covenant, 3542
- Couent, *s* convent, 1220, 4021
- Couer, Couere, *v* recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434, 3 *s* coueres, 3644, coueris, 941, reaches, coueris *vpe*, gets up, 4274, *pret* couerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858, couerd *vp*, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195, *pp* couerede, won, 28, 3085
- Couere, *v* cover, 1886, 3 *s* *pres* couers, 1110, *pret* couerde, 3378, 3995, *pp* couerde, 1770, 2115, couerede, 3047, 3098
- Couerte, *adj* sheltered, 1780, secret, 1196
- Countyte See *Condethe*
- Coungé, *s* leave, 479 Fr *congé*
- Counsaille, 291, Concelle, 144, 259, 1023, *s* counsel, advice
- Counsayles, *v* 3 *s* advises, 305
- Countere, *v* encounter, 1274, 3 *s* cownterez, 1848, *pp* cownterede, 1893
- Countré See *Contré*
- Coupable, *adj* blameable, guilty, 1317
- Coupes See *Cowpe*
- Coupylde, *v* *pret* coupled, fastened, 2336
- Coursere, *s* 1388, 2166
- Courtays See *Curtails*
- Coutere, *s* elbowpiece (in armour), 2567 *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l 583
- Couthe, *v* *pret* knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340
- Cowardys, *s* cowardice, 1693, 4186
- Cowayte See *Couerte*
- Cowchide, *v* *pret* lay down (as hounds), and hence, became meek and submissive, 122
- Cowle, *s* a large tub, 1051 "Cowle, vesselle *Tina*, Cath" *Prompt Parv* In *English Gilds*, ed Toulmin Smith, pp 371, 382, *Cowle* is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with
- Cowntas, *s* countess, 3045, *pl* cowntasses, 4337
- Cowntere, *s* accountant, 1672
- Cownterez See *Countere*
- Cowpe, *s* cup, 209, *pl* cowpes, 210, 237, coupes, 3375
- Cowpez, *v* 3 *s* smites, strikes, 799, 2059, *pl* cowpenc, 2543
- Cowthe See *Couthe*
- Crachynge, *s* crashing, 3669
- Crafe, *v* crave, 1681, 3522
- Crafte, *s* skill, art, 752, 3667, *pl* craffez, 284, craftys, 24

- Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, *adv* skilfully
 Crafty, *adj* skilfully made, 211
 Crage, *s* crag, 876
 Cramede, *p p* ciammed, 477, 1051
 Crasseches, *v pl* *pries nul* crush, 3670, *met* craschede, 2114, *ciassch* ede, 1109
 Crauaunde, *adj* craven, 133
 Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, *s pl* small vessels "And, for the Revictallyng and Refresshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two *Crayers*, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fyfty [^p fifteen] Tonnes, wherem shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other *Crayer* shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherem shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye"
Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howard Capitaneum Generalem Armata super Mare (A.D. 1512) Rymer, *Federa*, tom xiii p 328, col 2
 Craysed, *p p* broken, 2150 *Fi écrasé*
 Creatoure, *s* creature, 534, 859, *pl* creatours, 4102
 Credens, *s* credentials, 88, 3522
 Creest, Creeste, *s* crest, 1108, 1133, 1185
 Creette, *s* a kind of wine, 200
 Crepers, *s pl* grapnels, 3667 (*Hallwell*)
 Cresmede *See* Crysmede
 Cretoyne, *s*, 197 "A sweet sauce" *Hallwell* Compare "Cretons Lard coupé menu qu'on fait frire dans la poêle" *Roquesfort*
 Crewelle, 132, 1909, Crouelle, 118, Crowelle, 2544, 3424, Cruelle, 43, 88, *adj* cruel, fierce, angry, &c
 Crispid, *p p* 1003
 Cristene, Cristyne, *adj* Christian, 3429, *sb* 1187, 2786, 4112
 Cistenly, *adv* like a Christian, 1208
 Cristyndome, *s* Christendom, 2036
 Cristynmesdaye, *s* Christmas-day, 70
 Cristynnese, 64, Cristynnesse, 839, Crystynnesse, 544, *s* Christmas
 Cionycle, *s* chronicle, 3445, *pl* cionycles, 3218
 Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, cross, one crosse, across, 3667
 Crosse-dayes, *s pl* 3212
 Crosselettes, *s pl* 3336
 Crouelle *See* Crewelle
 Crounes *See* Corone
 Ciowelle *See* Crewelle
 Crownede *See* Coroune, *v*
 Cruelle *See* Crewelle
 Cruschene, *v inf* crush, 1134
 Cryande, *v p* crying, 1137
 Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysmede, 3185, *adj* anointed with chrism
 Crystenede, Crystnede, *p p* christened, 3337
 Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, *s* chrism
 Cukewalde, *s* cuckold, 1312
 Cundit *See* Condethe
 Cunvayede, *v met* convoyed, 482.
 Cure, *s*, care, 673
 Curius, *adj* curious, 61
 Curlues, *s pl* curlews, 196
 Curtais, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, *adj* courteous
 Curtaisie, *s* courtesy, 1274, 1681
 Cury, *s* cookery, 1063

- Dagges, *v pl* pierce, 2102, *i p* daggaide, 3749
- Dagswaynes, *s pl* garments "of irize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609 See *Daggysweyne* and notes thereon in *Promptorium Parvulorum*
- Dalte, Daltene See Dele
- Damesels, *s pl* young ladies, 3044
- Dampnade, *pp* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299
- Danke, Dannke, *adj* dank, damp, 313, 3750
- Dare, *v* lie hid, lie still, 4007, 3 *s* dares, 3225 "Daiyn', or drowpyn', or prively to be hydde *Latito, lateo, Cath*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*
- Darielles, *s pl* a kind of dish, 199 See the recipe *For darials* in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed Morris, p 38
- Dauncesyng, *s* dancing, 2030
- Daugere, Dawngere, *s* power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935
- Daweyng, *s* dawn, daybreak, 1601
- Dawez, *s pl* days, done of dawez, killed, 2056
- Daynteez, *s pl* dainties, 199
- Daynteuous, *adj* dainty, 4196
- Daynttehely, *adv* daintily, 723
- Debles, 2934
- Dede, *s* deed, *pl* dedes, 48, dedys, 13
- Dede, *adj* dead, 975, 1722
- Dede, *s* death, 1253, 1935
- Dede-thrawe, *s* death-pang, 1150
- Deesse, *s* dais, 218
- Defadide, *pp* faded, 3304
- Defawte, *s* default, 2939
- Defawtes, *v pl* are wanting, fail, 2928
- Deffuse, *s* prohibition, 256 Compare "Defaux, deffais, deffois, deiois Lieux défendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser, empêchement, défense" *Roquefort* But it is more than probable that we ought to read "deff[e]nse" = forbidding, prohibition
- Degré, *s* degree, 84
- Dele, *v* deal, 1278, *pret* delte, 49, 3088, *pret pl* daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749, *pp* delte, 1216, 1277, 1564
- Delygens, *s* diligence, 1934
- Delytte, *s* delight, 1970
- Delyuerede, *pp* set free, 1688, 2081
- Demenys, *v* 3 *s* leads, 1988, *pl* demenys, 4076 O Fr *demenier*
- Demyd, Demyde, *pp* deemed, judged, 219, 1564, doomed, 4158
- Depayntide, *pp* depicted, 3355
- Depez, *s pl* deeps, 750
- Depnesse, *s* depth, 746
- Dere, *v* hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200, 3 *s* derys, 2099 A S. *derian*
- Dere, *adj* dear, 974, 1216
- Derefulle, *adj* 4053 Qu for *derffulle*, full of pain or care Compare *derf*, hardship, affliction, pain, in *Stratmann*.
- Dereliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, *adv* dearly
- Dereworthily, *adv* preciously, 3251
- Derfe, *adj* hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652
- Derflyche, *adv* severely, 3277
- Derke, *adj* dark, 754
- Derlynge, *s* darling, 4196
- Derygese, *s pl* dirges, 4017
- Despyne, 183 See Porke despyne

- Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, *s* destiny
 Destaynede, *pp* destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306
 Destruede, *pp* destroyed, 1181
 Deuer, *s* duty, 1940
 Devise, *v* *pret* divided, 3527
 Deuorande, *i* *p* devouring, 2054
 Deuotly, 296, Devottilly, 347, *adv* devoutly
 Devyse, *v* divide, 2400, *pret* deuysede, 3039
 Dewly, *adv* duly, 4006
 Deworyde, *pp* devoured, 851
 Deynttely, *adv* daintily, 2643
 Diamawndis, *s* *pl* diamonds, 3297
 Dictour, *s* spokesman, 712
 Dighte *See* Dyghte
 Dischayte, *s* deceit, 3789
 Discouerours, *s* *pl* scouts, spies, 3117
 Diskoueres, *v* *ind* *pres* *pl* search, 3119, *imp* *pl* 2 discoueres, 1641
 Disseuere, *v* separate, 1575, 3 *s* disseuererez, 1978, *pret* disseueride, 3529
 Disspite, *s* spite, 3163
 Disspysede, *pp* despised, 269
 Dogge-son, *s* dog-son, 1072, 1723
 Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, *s* sorrow
 Dolefulle, *adv* sorrowful, 2054
 Dolphyne, *s* 2054
 Doluene, *pp* burned, 975
 Domesdaye, *s* day of judgment, 1278, 3442
 Doo, *v* do, 1934, 2322, 2 *s* *pres* *ind* dosse, 1954, *pl* *pres* *ind* dosse, 4333, *pp* donne, 1940
 Doubbyd, 48, Doubbyde, 3613, *v* *pret* dubbed
 Douce, *adv* sweet, pleasant, 1251
 Doughttily, *adv* valiantly, 1939
 Doughty, 20, Doughtty, 1738, 2777, Doughtty, 3798, *adv* valiant, *superl* doughtyeste, 219
 Doughtynes, 1563, Doughtynesse, 3884, *s* valour
 Dout, *v* doubt, 3061
 Dowbille, *adv* double, 2834
 Dowblede, *pp* doubled, 3609
 Dowblettez, *s* *pl* doublets, 2625
 Dowcherys *See* Ducherye
 Doweie, *s* dowry, 3089
 Downkyng, *s* moisture, 3248
 Dowte, Dowtte, *s* doubt, 2043, fear, 3225
 Dowtte, *v* fear, 312
 Dowttouse, *adv* dreadful, terrible, 3967
 Drafe *See* Dryffes
 Dragges, *s* *pl* drags, 3615
 Dragouns, *s* *pl* dragons, 1252
 Drawe-bridg, *s* drawbridge, 2474
 Drawes, *v* 3 *s* draws, proceeds, 1251, *pl* drawene, 3615, *pp* drawene, 3924
 Dreche, *v* tarry, delay, abide, 1504, 3 *s* dreches, 2940, 4052, *pl* dreches, 1254, 2154, *pret* drecchede, 754
 Drechede, *pp* troubled, harassed, 811
 "Ac sathanas þe frecche
 Þe saule wule drecche,
 Hwan he agult habbeþ"
Jesus Coll. MS 29, leaf 249
 Drede, *v* dread, fear, 829, 2235, *pret* dredde, 20, *pp* dredde, 3298
 Drede, *s* dread, fear, 46, 754
 Dredlesse, Dredlez, *adv* without doubt, certainly, 1504, 2043, 4053
 Drefene *See* Dryffes
 Dreghe, *s* duration, continuance, 2915

- Dreghe, one, *adv* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4219
 Dreghe, *v* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437
 Dreghely, *adv* enduringly, continually, 2028
 Dremyd, *impers v pret* 760
 Hym dremyd = he dreamed
 Dienschene, *v inf* drown, 761
 Drerely, Drenly, *adv* drearily, 2154, 2969
 Dresce, 550, Dresse, 1072, 2042, 2401, *v* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array, 3 *s* dresses, 2026, dresse, 2833, *pl* diesses, 2473, *pret* dressede, 786, 1055, dresside, 579, diussede, 2052, dryssede, 46, *pp* dresside, 1252, drissid, 218, dresses *vp* = rears
 Dreuene, Drife *See* Dryffes
 Drightene, 4008, Dryghttene, 1278, Dryghttyne, 3799, *s* the Lord, *gen* Dryghtyns, 664, Dryght-
 ynez, 1564 *AS Drihten*
 Diussede *See* Dresce
 Dromondaries, *s pl* dromedaries, 2286
 Dromowndes, *s pl* swift ships, 3615 "Dromon, diomont Gondole, vaisseau de guerre" *Roguefort* "Dromones, Naves cursoriæ, expediti cursus navigia" *Ducange*
 Droupe, *v* lie hid, lie still, 4007 *See* Dare
 Drowghte, *s* dryness, 3249
 Drowppande, *i p* falling, 4053
 Drye, *v* suffer, 704, 1546, 1632
 Dryffes, *v pl* drive, rush, 2757, *pret* drafe, 787, drife, 3276, *pret pl* dreuene, 2914, *i p* dryfande, 761, 816, *pp* drefene, 3224
 Dryghttene *See* Drightene
 Drynchene, *v inf* to drown, 816
 Drynkles, *adj* drinkless, 4172
 Drynkyne, *v pl* drink, 2028
 Dryssede *See* Dresce
 Dubbyde, *pp* adcrned, 3609
 Ducherye, *s* duchy, 2400, 2937, *pl* ducherés, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49
 Duchez, *s* duchess, 852, 974, 3044
 Duell, *v* dwell, tarry, abide, 3067, *pret* duelled, 3321, duellyde, 219, *i p* duelland, 3443, *pp* duellyde, 1200
 Dukkes, Dukkez, *s pl* dukes, 723, 2029
 Dule *See* Dole
 Dule-cotes, *s pl* mourning garments, 4336
 Duspere, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperez, 2029, Duzseperez, 723, Duszperis, 3751, Duszperis, 4336, *s pl* peers, lit twelve peers (Fr douze pairs) Dussepere, *sg* one of such peers, 2329, 2642
 Duttez *Read* Dinttoz, *s pl* strokes, 787
 Dyaperde, *adj* 3251
 Dyghte, *v* order, arrange, dispose, 1253, 1 *s* dyghttes, 2625, *pret* dyghte, 2970, *pp* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dyghte, adorned, 3353
 Dyked, *pp* burned, 975
 Dyme, *adj* dim, 1723
 Dyne, *s* din, noise, 2031
 Dynned, *v pret* sounded, resounded, 2031
 Dynnynge, *s* noise, 2030
 Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s* stroke, blow, *pl* dynttez, 1127, dyntty, 332
 Dysfegoures, *v* 3 *s* disfigures, 2769
 Dyspens, *s* spending, 538
 Dyssaulyde, *pp* deceived, 683
 Dyuerse, *adj* divers, various, 49, 1935

- Dyuysyde, *v pret* divided, distributed, 49, 1389
- Efte, *adv* again, 470, 529, 2349
A S *eff*
- Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591,
Egyrly, 1499, *adv* sharply, fiercely
- Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghge, 4194,
s edge A S *ecg*
- Eghelynge, *adv* edgewise, 3675
- Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358,
Eughe, 1920, Eyghene, 3985,
Eyghne, 1083, 4044, Eyne, 3282,
s *pl* eyes A S *edge, pl eāgan*
- Eghge *See* Egge
- Egle, *s* eagle, 2067, 2245
- Egee, *adj* sharp, eager, 507
- Eke, *conj* also, 44, 572.
- Ekkene, *v inf.* increase, 2009,
3 *s pres ind* ekys, 3965
- Elagere, 2977, is certainly mis-
written The alliteration requires
sl, perhaps we ought to read
sleyghte, skill, dexterity
- Eldare, *adj comp* older, 4151
- Elde, *s* age, 301, old age, 4220
A S *glāo*
- Elders, Eldyrs, *s pl* ancients, 13,
ancestors, 99, 272, 293
- Elfaydes, *s pl* animals of some
kind, 2288
- Elles, *adv* else, 1191, 1209, 2020
- Emange, *prep* among, 375 1917,
2060 *See* Amange
- Eme, *s* uncle, 1347 A S *edm.*
- Enamelde, 2565, 3355, Enamel-
ede, 2027, *pp* enamelled
- Enangylles, *v 3 s* en-angles, 1 *e*
surrounds by troops formed in an
angular figure(?), 3781 *Comp*
en circles
- Enarmede, *pp* 910
- Enbraces, *v pl* put on the arm,
4111, enbrassez, 1753, *pp.* en-
brassede, 2459, 2518
- Enbuschement, *s* ambush, 1407,
3115
- Enbusches, *v 3 s pres ind* sets
in ambush, 1981, *pp* enbuschede,
1712, enbuschide, 1403, ambushed
- Enclesside *Read* Enclosedc,
enclosed, 2396
- Enclined, 479, Enclinede, 1706,
v pret bowed
- Enclines, *s pl* bows, 83
- Enclosez, *v 3 s* 1134, *pp* en-
closede, 4206, enclosyde, 3238
- Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encount-
ire, 3491, Encowntere, 4180, *v*
encounter, *pl* encounters, 2158,
pret encontrede, 1185
- Encorowmentes, *s pl* corona-
tions, 4197
- Encroche, *v* seize, obtain, 3426,
3 *s* encrochez, 1213, *pret* en-
crochede, 2036, *pp* encrochede,
3525
- Encroyssede, *v pret* crossed,
4112
- Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052,
pp endented (Her)
- Endittede, *v pret* indited, com-
posed, 3120
- Endordide, *pp* gilt, 199
- Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, *adv*
enough
- Enfeblesches, *v pl pres* become
weak, 2484
- Enflureschit, *pp* flowered, 198
- Enforce, *v* exert, enforce zow,
endeavour, 225, enforssse, strength-
en, reinforce, 364
- Engenderde, *pp* begotten, 843
- Engendure, *s* begetting, 3743
- Engeynes *See* Engynes
- Englaymez, 1131, Englaymous,
3684, *v pl* render slimy "Gley-
myn", or yngleymyn' *Visco, unvisco*
Promptorium Parvulorum
- Engowschede, *pp* swollen, in-

- lated, 2053 "Engousser Enfler, grossir" *Roquefort*
- Engrelede, *pp* engialed (Her), 4182
- Engynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, *s pl* engines
- Engyste, *v* assign lodgings, 445 "Gister, giter Assigner un gîte" *Roquefort*
- Enhoilde, *pp* surrounded, 3244 See *Enourled* in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B 19 and Glossary
- Enis See Eynes
- Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, *v pl* join in battle, *pret* enjoynede, 2087
- Enkerly, *adv* aidently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2839
- Enmy, Enmye, *s* enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952, *pl* enmyse, 1205, 1240
- Ennelled, *pp* onameled, 1294
- Ennoyntede, 50, Ennoynttyde, 101, Enoyntede, 142, Enoynttede, 544, 2447, *pp* anointed
- Enowe, *adv* enough, 504
- Enpeyrede, *pp* impaired, damaged, 474
- Enpoysons, *s* poison, 213
- Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, *v* besiege, 3 *s* ensegez, 623, *pp* ensegede, 1696
- Enserchede, 3942 Read Enserclede, encircled
- Enserches, *v* 3 *s* searches, examines, 4311, *pl* enserches, 2466
- Ensure, *v* assure, 1689, 2324, 3734
- Entamede, *v pret* cut, wounded, 2203, *p* 1160, 2708 "Entamer, entamer, trancher, blesser, léser, enlever l'intégrité" *Burguy*
- Entayllide, *pp* entailed, 3542
- Entire, *v* enter, 1967, *ind pres* 3 *s* enteres, 2007, 2387, *pl* entres, 4309, *pret* enteride, 2805, *pp* enteride, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrde, 1691
- Enverounes, *v pl* environ, surround, 4124, *pret* enuerounde, went round or about, 2051, 2094, *pp* enuerownde, surrounded, 3242
- Enueryde, *pp* (?) 1694
- Enuyous, *adj* 2047
- Enys See Eynes
- Er, *v pl* are, 166
- Erbeis, *s pl* gardens, 3245
- Echeuesques, *s pl* archbishops, 67
- Ere, *v pl* are, 1538, 1582, 2547
- Ere, *adv* before, 1840
- Erle, *s* earl, 1659, *pl* erlez, 1904, eilles, 3528, 3933
- Erledoms, *s pl* earldoms, 42
- Erles, *s pl* earnest, deposit, 2687
- Erne, *s pl* ears, 1086
- Ernestly, *adv* 2838, 2903
- Erawnte, *adj* arrant, 2895
- Erthe, *s* earth, 109, 161
- Erthely, *adj* earthly, 1664, 4169
- Es, *v* 3 *s* is, 16, 88, 89, *pl* es (= are), 1666, 3448
- Eschape, *v* escape, 1020, 2957, *pret* eschappede, 1881, eschappide, 2367, *pp* eschapede, 1117, 3576
- Escheffe, *v* 2301
- Escheue, *v* attain, 3347, *pret* escheuede, 3000, eschewede, fell out well, 2956, eschewede, met with good fortune, 1620, *pp* escheuyde, 3021, eschewede, 1539, 3027
- Eschewes, *v* 3 *s* draws back, retreats, 1116, *pret* eschewede, 1881, *imp* 2 *pl* eschewes, 1750 "Eschiver, eskiver, escheveur, éviter, fuir, esquiver" *Burguy*
- Ese, *s* ease, 3208
- Este, *adj* east, 1740, 3210
- Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, Easter

- Etene, *pp* eaten, 2716.
 Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, *s*
pl giants. See *Elayn* in *Sir Ga-*
wayne and the Green Knight, II 110,
 723 A S *coln*
 Ettylle, *v* purpose, 554, 3 *s*
 ettelles, 520, etles, 3077
 Euene, 2073, Euenne, 4055,
 Euyne, 78, Evyne, 3596, Ewynne,
 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewyne, 618,
 1122, Ewynne, 2961, *adv.* even,
 straight, right, just
 Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900,
s evensong, vespers
 Eueriche a, 2037, Euerilk a, 212,
adj every
 Euylle, *adv* ill, 1117
 Ewene. See Euene
 Ewyne, *s.* evening, eve, 1006,
 1788.
 Ewyne, Ewynne. See Euene
 Ewyre, *adv* ever, 8
 Eye-liddis, *s* *pl* eyelids, 3952.
 Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. See
 Eghene
 Eynes, 1283, 2308, Eynoz, 1760,
 Eyns, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes,
 2275, Enis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466,
s. pl narrow passages, passes A S
enge, narrow, Germ *enge*, a narrow
 passage
 Faa-mene, *s* *pl* foemen, 303
 Fadire, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre,
 1169, *s* father
 Fadome, *s* fathom, 1103
 Faees, *s* *pl* foes, 403
 Faghte. See Feghte
 Faire, *adv* well, 1110, 3247
 Fairly, *adv* nicely, 954
 Faith, *s* 1155
 Faithely, Faythely, *adv* assured-
 ly, 3864, 4031
 Fakene, *v* *pl* coil, 742 "Fake,
 one of the circles, or windings, of a
 cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed
 in the coil. The fakes are
 greater or smaller in proportion to
 the extent of space which a cable is
 allowed to occupy where it lies"
 Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed
 Bunney. See *falk*, a fold (*Jamieson*)
 Falle, *r* betide, 1006, 3 *s* fallies,
 belongs, 2480.
 Falow, *adj* pale, 1402
 Falowede, *pp* turned pale, 3954
 Fals, *adj* false, 1307
 Falsede, 3918, Falssede, 2860, *s*
 falsehood, error
 Falterede, *r.* *met* quivered, 1092
 Fande. See Fynde
 Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fannde,
 656, *v* endeavour. See Fonde
 Fannge, *r* seize, take, receive,
 425, *ind* *mes* 3 *s* fangcz, 1005,
 1249. See Fongene
 Fare, *r* go, 3581, *ind* *mes* 3 *s*
 fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.
 Fare, *s.* journey, course, 393
 Fare-waye, *s* course, 1357
 Farlande, *s.* foreland, 880, 984,
 1188
 Farly. See Ferly.
 Faucetez, *s* *pl* taps, 205
 Faughte, Faughtie, Fawghte
 See Feghte
 Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, *s*
 falcon, *pl* fawcouns, 925
 Fawe, *adj* variegated, particolour-
 ed, 747 A S *fah*.
 Fawnelle, 2765. Read Fawuelle,
s a horse of a yellowish chesnut
 colour "Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle
 De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur
 le jaune, *fluvir, fulvus*" *Roquesfort*
 Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, *s* little
 child, baby, *pl* fawntekyns, 845
 Fawte, *s* lack, 160, fault, 2737
 Fax, *s* hair, 1078 A S *feaz*

- Fay, *adv* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3828, fey, 121, 517, feye, 2847
- Fay, Faye, *s* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073
- Fayfully, *adv* faithfully, 1715
- Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next, qu faldede, folded
- Fayne, *adv* glad, 1160
- Faythefully, *adv* 1345, 1735, 1913
- Faythely *See* Faithely
- Feble, *adv* weak, bad, 226, 2929
- Fecchede, *v pret* fetched, 169, *pp* techede, 111, fechyde, 437
- Feedde, *pp* fed, 2492
- Feelde *See* Felde
- Feemene, *s pl* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488 A S *feoh*, cattle
- Feghte, 367, 1715, Fyghte, 1345, 1735, *v* fight, 3 *s* feghtty, 789, fyghttez, 2091, *pl* feghttes, 1495, feghttez, 2163, feghttene, 2555, *pret* faghte, 1174, faughte, 2164, faughtte, 1898, fawghte, 2799, *i p* feghtande, 4257, fyghtande, 4066, 4121, *pp* foghtene, 3019, foughtene, 1535, foughttene, 2365
- Feghte, *s* fight, 4254
- Fegue, *s* figure, shape, 781, 3301
- Fekulle, *adv* false 2860
- Felde, 972, 985, Feelde, 1432, *s* field
- Fele, *adv* many, 845, 1247, 1496
- Fele, *v* hide, conceal, 3237 *See* *felen* in *Stratmann* ON *fela*, M Goth *filhan*
- Fele, *v* feel, *pret* feledde, 1874
- Feletez, 1158, Felettes, 2174, 4237, *s pl* illets
- Felwes, *v pl* follow, 2758
- Felleyghes, *s pl* felly, circumference of a wheel, 3308 A S *felge*
- Felle, *s* skin, 1081 A S *fell*
- Felle, *s* mountain, 2489, 2509
- Felle, *v* fell, 1139, 3 *s* fellez, 1247, *pp* fellide, 1851, fellde, 2376
- Felle, *adv* fierce, cruel, severe, 1401, 2769
- Felly, *adv* fiercely, 2141
- Feloweze, *s pl* fellows, companions, 1381
- Felschene, *v inf* (?) renovate, 1975 Halliwell has "*Felsh* To renovate a hat"
- Fende, *s* fiend, devil, 871, 954, *pl* fendez, 843
- Fente, *s* (?) 4249
- Fenyste, *pp* finished, 4254
- Ferant, 2259, Feraunte, 1811, 2140, Ferawnt, 2451, *adv* seemly
- Fercostez, *s pl* ships of some kind, 743 "*Farkost, Navis*" *Felshus*, under the word *Kost* *See* *Farkost* and *Fercost* in *Jameson*
- Ferde, *pp* afraid, 403, 526, 3227, *s* fear, 1875, 3069
- Ferdnesse, *s* fear, 121, 2258
- Fere, *s* fear, 3918
- Fere, *s* companion, *pl* feres, 1608, ferez, 1789, feris, 1578, ferys, 2126 A S *geferu*
- Fere, 1232 *See* Ferre
- Fere, *adv* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017
- Ferke, *v* move, go, 984, 1037, ferkke, 4152, 3 *s* ferkez, 933, 949, *inf* ferkene, 3907, *i p* ferland, 1452, ferkande, 2452
- Ferly, 2842, Ferlyche, 925, *adv* strange
- Ferly, 2440, 2947, Farly, 2485, *s* strange thing, wonder
- Fermes, 425, Fermez, 1005, *s pl* rents, tribute
- Fermysone, *s* (?) some kind of sauce, 180
- Ferre, *adv* far, distant, 3547, fere,

- 1232, be ferre = by far, 11176,
comp ferrere, further, 1196, 3063,
 4237, *superl* ferreste, furthest,
 2711
- Ferreis, *s* a kind of wine, 2711
- Ferrours, 2752 *Reul* Fomours,
 foragers
- Ferrone, *adj* far, foreign, 3578,
o ferrome = afar, 856, 931, 2100
- Fers, 2161, Ferse, 1451, 1537,
adj fierce
- Fersely, 1115, 3402, Fer-ly, 1118,
adv fiercely
- Fersenese, *s* fierceness, 3826
- Ferthe, *adj* fourth, 3412
- Ferthynges, *s pl* round spots,
 3472
- Feryne, *adj* far, foreign, 3711
- Ferynne, *s* fern, 1875
- Ferys *See* Fore
- Fesantcz, 925, Fesaunter, 198, *s*
pl pheasants
- Fesode, *pp* worried, 2842
- Feste, *adj* fast, 2142
- Festenesse, *v 3 s* fastens, 1118,
pl festenez, 934
- Fetché, *v* 1188.
- Feteled, *pp* fettled, set in order,
 2149
- Fethers, *s pl* feathers, 2098.
- Fette, *v* fetch, 557
- Fettede, *pp* fitted, ordered, ar-
 rayed, 4067 *See* Fitt
- Feuerzere, *s* February, 436
- Fewle, *s* fowl, bird, 2071, *pl*
 feulez, 926
- Fewtee, *s* fealty, 112
- Fewtere, 1791, Fewtire, 1769,
 Fewtyre, 1366, *s* rest for a lance
- Fewters, *v 3 s* lays in rest, 3775,
pp fewterde, 1711, fewtrede, 1756,
 with spears in rest
- Fey *See* Fay
- Feyede, *v pret* cleansed, wiped,
 1114
- Feyne, (?) foin, 1734
- Feyne = fine, *v* cease, 1147
- Feyne, *v* feign, 1913
- Feynte, *adj* faint, 1874
- Feyntly, *adv* faintly, 1734
- H Words beginning with *f* are
 entered under single *F*
- Fichene, *v pl* fix, pierce, 2098,
pret fichede, 4239
- Fit, *adj* five, 1756
- Fifte, *adj* fifth, 3306
- Fillez, 1402, Fillis, 1038, *v 3 s*
 fills, *pp* filled, satished, 1032
- Filsmez, *v 3 s* lurks, 881 *Com-*
pare "Fylskni, *Latibulum*" *Ve-*
relius
- Filterede, 1078, 2149, Filtyrde,
 750, *pp* matted, mixed
- Futhe, *s* wood, 1708, 2144
- Fische-halle, *adj* sound as a fish,
 2709.
- Fitt, *v* fit, set in order, array,
 2139, *3 s* fittes, 1989, fittcz, 1755,
 2072, *pp* fittyde, 2455
- Flammande, *v p* flaming, re-
 splendent, 198
- Flappes, *v* strikes, 2781
- Flawez, 773, Flavcs, 2556, *s pl*
 blasts, gusts.
- Flawmande, *v p* flaming, 945,
 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494
- Flawmez, *v 3 s* flames, 1037, *pl*
 flawmes, 2556
- Flawnke, *s* flank, 1158, 2174, *pl*
 flawnkkes, 2100
- Flay, *v* frighten, terrify, 2779,
pp flayed, 2441
- Flayre, *s* flame, 772
- Flede *See* Flee
- Flee, *v* 2021, *pret.* fleede, 494,
 1432, 2729, fiede, 3236, *pp* fiede,
 2488

- Fleete, *v* float, 803, *pret* fletyde, 3602
 Flemede, 2738, Flemyde, 1155, *pp* banished
 Flemesche, *adj* Flemish, 743
 Flenges, *v* 3 *s* flings, 2762
 Fleryande, *i p* gibing, scoffing, 1088, 2778 *Sc* *fleer*
 Flesche, *s* 1160, 2099
 Fleschez, *v pl* flit about, 926
 Flete, *s* fleet, 1189
 Fleterede, *pp* (?) fitted for flight, 2097
 Flethe, *s* (?) 2482
 Flegghes, *v* 3 *s* flies, 4002
 Flitt, *v* shoot (with arrows), 2097
 Flode, *s* flood, 773, 803, 1189
 Floke, *s* flock, company, 2849
 Floke-mowthede, *adj* fluke-mouthed, having a mouth like a flat fish, 2779
 Flones, 3619, Flonez, 2097, *s pl* arrows *A S* *flā, flān*
 Florenez, *s pl* florins, 885
 Flores, *s pl* fields, plains, 2694, 3249
 Floresche, *v* flower, flourish, 2555, *pret* floreschede, 3246, *pp* floreschede, 771, 1708, 3472, floreschte, 924, 1366
 Flour, *s* flower, 1709, 1990, *pl* flourez, 970
 Flourdelice, *s* hly-flower, 3333
 Flowe, *v pret* flew, 772, 2100
 Floynes, *s pl* a kind of small ships, 743 *A Jal* in his *Glossaire Nautique* gives "*Floun* Nom d'un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l'aviron"
 Flude, *s* flood, 494
 Fluke, *s* flounder, or other flat fish, 1088
 Fluriste, *pp* flowered, 180
 Flyeande, *i p* flying, 2451
 Flyngande, *i p* flinging, dashing along, 2757
 Flyschande, *i p* slashing, 2141
 Flysches, *v* slashes, cuts, 2768
 Flyttinge, *s* shooting (with arrows), 2099
 Foddenid, *pp* produced, 3246
 Foghtene *See* Feghte
 Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowlde, 3302, *s* earth
 Fole, *s* foal, 449, 2783
 Fohly, *adv* foolishly, 2841
 Folowes, *v* 3 *s* follows, 1118, *pl* folous, 1360
 Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, *i p* foaming
 Fome, *s* foam, 1079
 Fonde *See* Fynde
 Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, *v* try
 Fondene *See* Fynde
 Fongene, *v pres pl* take, 2799, fonggez, 2753, *pret* fongede, seized, 3308
 Fonode *See* Fonde
 Foo, *s* foe, 1536, 3395
 Foode, *s* offspring, child, person, 3776
 Foomene, *s pl* foemen, 3020
 Foonde, *v. go*, 366, 2489
 Forbere, *v* forbear, 1913
 Forbrittenede, *pp* cut up, slaughtered, 2273.
 Forclupe, *s* foreship, 3678
 Forcyere, *adj comp* stronger, 1176
 Fordremyde, *pp* wearied by dreaming, 3392
 Fore, *prep* for, 256, *conj* for, 1179
 Fore-breste, *s* front, 1494, 1990
 Fore-brustene, *pp* burst, 2272

- Foregyffe *See* Forgyffe
 Forejustyde *See* Foijuste
 Forelytenede, *pp* lessened, 254
 Fore-maglede, *pp* mangled, 1534
Se magil, maigil, to mangle (Jamieson)
 Forestayne, *s* prow of a ship, 742
 Foretoppe, *s* forehead, 1078
 Fore-trauaillede, *pp* fatigued, 806
 Forfette, *v* forfeit, 557, *pp* forfeited, 1155.
 Forfoughttene, *pp* wearied with fighting, 3792, 4179
 Forgyffe, 3488, Foregyffe, 4324, *v* forgive, *pp* forgyffene, 2184
 Forheuede, *s* forehead, 1080
 Forjuste, 2895, Forjustede, 2088, 2134, 2008, Forejustyde, 1398, *pp* overcome in a joust, defeated
 Formaylle, *s* female hawk, 4003
 Forraye, *v* forage, 2489, 3 *s* forrayse, 1247, *pret* forrayede, 3017
 Forreours, *s pl* foragers, 2450, 2901
 Forsake, *v* refuse, 1686, 2734, deny, 1945, 4142.
 Forsesy, *adv* strong, powerful, 3300, 3307
 Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette, 1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161, *pp*
 Forsterne, *s* forepart of the stern, 3664
 Fortethe, *s* front teeth, 1089.
 Forthermaste, *adv* first, 1365
 Forthes, 2827, Forthis, 1850, *v* 3 *s* proceeds
 For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172, Fore-thy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3846, *adv* therefore
 Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340, *adv* further
 Forthine, *v* afford, furnish, 300, 1509
 Forthimaste, *adv* first, 3330
 For-thynkkes, 4252, For-thynk-kys, 971, *impers v* repents, me *f* = I regret, repent
 Fortiodyne, *pp* trampled, 2150
 Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058, Fotte, 933, 1855, *s* foot
 Fote-mene, *s pl* infantry, 1989
 Foughtene, Foughttene *See* Feghte
 Foulde *See* Folde
 Found, 452, Founde, 495, 1189, *v* go, proceed, *pl* fowndes, 3112, fowndys, 2756, *pret* foundide, 1412
 Foundene, Foundyne *See* Fynde
 Fourmede, *r pret* formed, 3808, *pp* 781, 861, 1061
 Foute, *adv* fourth, 3300
 Fourtedele, *s* fourth part, quarter, 916
 Fowlde *See* Folde
 Fowle, *s* bird, 4002
 Fowly, *adv* foully, 1089
 Fowndene *See* Fynde
 Fowndes *See* Found
 Foyle, *s* leaf, 2704
 Foynes, *v pl* fence, thrust, 1494, 2141, 2163, *pret* foynede, 1898
 Fra, *prep* from, 47, 591
 Fraisez, 1248 *Read* Frayes, terrifies
 Fraiste, Frayste, *v* try, test, 435, 881, 3395, 3 *s* fraystez, 1227, *pp* fraistede, 2774
 Fraknede, *adv* freckled, 1081
 Franche, *adv* French, 1250
 Fransye, *s* frenzy, 3826
 Frape, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548, *s* company, troop
 Frappez, *r* 3 *s* smites, 1115.

- Frauncenez, *s* liberty, 1248
 Frawghte, *pp* laden, freighted, 3547
 Frawnke, *s* enclosure, 3247
 Frayedde, *pp* frightened, 2260
 Fraynes, 507, Frayneze, 337, 954, 1441, *v* 3 *s* asks, inquires
 Frayste *See* Fraiste
 Fre, Free, *adj* noble, 1711, 3247
 Frechely, *adv* (?) boldly, (?) freshly, 3691
 Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3308, *adj* noble
 Freely, *adv* 2072, 2140
 Freke, *s* man, fellow, 557, 873, 973, *pl* frekes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898
 Freke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekke, 2454, *adj* bold, *superl* frekkeste, 1536, 2164
 Frekly, 1360, 1451, Frekkly, 3927, *adv* boldly
 Freliche, Frely *See* Freely, *adj*
 Fremdly, 2738, Fremedly, 1250, Fremydly, 3405, *adv* strangely
 Fremmede, *adj* strange, foreign, 3343
 Frenchepe, *s* friendship, 656
 Frendez, *s* *pl* friends, 1442
 Frendely, *adj* friendly, 3343
 Frendles, *adj* friendless, 3305
 Freschely, 1367, 1441, Fresche-liche, 4249, Frescly, 2097, Fresclyche, 2900, *adv* freshly, briskly, vigorously
 Freschene, *v* refresh, 1452
 Fresclyche, *adj* fresh, 2502
 Fresone, *s* (?) Friesland horse, 1365
 Fretene, *pp* (?) adorned, 2142
 A S *frætwan*, to adorn
 Frette, *pp* (?) rubbed, 2708
 Fr *frotter*, to rub
 Fretted, *pp* 1364
 Fretyne, *pp* devoured, 844
 Frithez, *s* *pl* woods, forests, 924
 Frithed, *pp* wooded round, hemmed in with forest, hedged, 3247. Occurs in *Piers the Plowman*, ed Skeat, Text B, v 590
 Fro, *prep* from, 3, 376, 1138
 Fromonde, *s* (?) 1112
 Froske, *s* frog, 1081. A S *frosce*
 Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownte, 2455, Fiunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, *s* brow, forehead, front
 Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, *s* front of an army
 Frowarde, *adj* perverse, 3345
 Froyte, *s* fiunt, 2492, 2707, *pl* froytez, 3246
 Frumentee, *s* a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180 *See* the recipe in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed Morris, p 7
 Frunt *See* Frount
 Frusche, *s* dash, charge, swift attack, 2900
 Fruschene, *v* *pl* dash, smite, 2804 "Frousser, frusser, écraser, froisser, briser" *Burguy*
 Frykis *See* Freke, *s*
 Frysthez, 1248 *Read* Frythez, spares
 Frythes, *v* *pl* spare, 2159, *imp* 2 *pl* 1734, *pp* frythede, 656
 Fude, *s* food, 160, 2486
 Fulfille, *v* fill up, 3438
 Fulle, *adv* foul, 1154, 2436
 Fulsomeste, *adj* foulest, 1061
 Fundene *See* Fynde
 Furlange, *s* furlong, 873, 946, 1538
 Furthe, *adv* forth, 262, 632, 1229
 Furthe, *s* path, ford, 1227, 1525, 1714, 1897, 2144

- Fute, *s* foot, 461
 Fyche, *v* fix, 2162
 Fyfe, *adj* five, 844, 856
 Fyfte, *adj* fifth, 3414
 Fyghtande *See* Feghte
 Fygyred, *p p* 2151
 Fylede, *p p* defiled, 978
 Fylth, *s* foul lust, 1032, 1071
 Fynde, *v* find, *pl* fyndez, 1357,
pret fandē, 1160, fonde, 2775, *p p*
 fundene, 1176, fondene, 675, 808,
 foundene, 92, 163, foundyne, 435,
 fowndene, 3339
 Fyrthe, *v* spare, 3370
 Fyrthe, *s* wood, forest, 1409,
 1850, 1875, 1897, 2159
 Fysnamye, 1114, Fysnamy, 3331,
s physiognomy, face
 Gaddes, 3621, Gaddys, 3683, *s*
pl goads, pricks
 Gaderide, *p p* gathered, 3295,
pret gadyrede, 594
 Gadlynges, 2443, 2728, Gad-
 lynges, 2854, Gedlynges, 2884, *s*
pl fellows, worthless fellows
 "So is mony gedelyng,
 godlyche on horse,
 and is peyh lutel wurp,
 wlonk bi pe glede,
 and vuel at pare neode"
The Proverbs of Alfred, Jesus
 Coll MS 29, leaf 264
 A S *gadelung*, companion
 Gafe, *v* *pret*. gave, 2628, gavest,
 1018, gaffe, gave, 85
 Galaye, *s* galley, 3724, *pl* ga-
 lays, 3096
 Galede, *v* *pret* sang, 927 A S
galan
 Galte, *s* swine, 1101
 Galyarde, *adj* gay, 721, 1265,
 1279 Fr *gaillard*
 Gamene, *s* game, sport, 2811,
pl gamnes, 1730, 3174
 Ganggynge, *s* going, 706
 Gardwynes, *s* *pl* guerdons, re-
 wards, 1729
 Garette, *s* watch-tower, 562, 3104
 "pe garettes oboven pe yhates
 bryght
 Of pe ceté of heven, I lyken þus
 ryght,
 Tylle pe garettes of a ceté of gold,
 þat wrought war, als I before told,
 Of fyne curalle and rych rubys,
 And of other stanes of gret
 prys, " *Hampole's Pricke*
of Conscience, ll 9101-9106
 Garneschit, 722, Garneschit, 563,
 1000, *p p* garnished, furnished
 Garnisone, 3105, Garmysone,
 2471, 2655, Garysone, 3007, *s*
 garrison
 Garte *See* Gere
 Gas *See* Goo
 Gate, *s* going, 4144, road, 4308
 Gayliche, Gaylyche, *adv* gaily,
 913, 2655, 3162, 3684
 Gayne, *v* avail, 165, 3 *s* gaynes,
 4303, *pl* gaynez, 1731
 Gayneste, *adj* nearest, 487, 1041,
 3006
 Gayspande, *v p* gasping, 1462
 Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gy
 aunt, 1122, 1222, *s* giant, *pl*
 geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908
 Gedlynges *See* Gadlynges
 Gedyre, *v* gather, 592
 Gemows, *s* *pl* hinges, 2893
 "Gymowe of a sperynge *Verti-*
nella, gemella" *Promptorium Par-*
vulorum *See* Way's notes on this
 word
 Genatours, *s* *pl* riders on jennets,
 light horsemen, 2897 "Génetaire,
 génesteur, génete, génetaire Sorte
 de cavalier, suivant Philippe de
 Commines" "Géntaires Cavale-
 rie légère" *Roquefort*
 Gentille, *adj* gentle, well-born,
 &c, 987, 1161, 2088, *superl.* gentil-
 este, 862

- Genyuers, *s pl* (?) 375
- Gere, *v* make, cause, 3640, 3 *s* gers, 3572, 3921, *pret* garte, 1886, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975, gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept
- Gere, *s* gear, tackle, 2539, 3008
- Gerefawcone, *s* geifalcon, 4004
- Gers *See* Gere, *v*
- Gersoms, *s pl* treasures, 165, 1729
- Gerte *See* Gere, *v*
- Gessenande, (?) 2521
- Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238, *s* coat of jazeran, *pl* gesserawntes, 2909 "Jazeran Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerno, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvass covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs" *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms* "Jaserant, jazerant, cotte de petites mailles" *Burguy*
- Gestes, *s pl* stories, 2876
- Gettlesse, *adj* without getting anything, 2727
- Getyne, *p p* gotten, 886
- Ghywes, *s pl* gyves, fetters, 3621
- Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, *cony* if Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, *v* give, *p p* gifene, 1729
- Girde, *v* smite, 3709, 3 *s* girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdez, 1470, gyrdis, 2563, *pret* gyrd, 2971, *p p* girde, 3938
- Girdle, Girdylle, *s* girdle, 3458, 3923.
- Grse, *s* grass, 3944
- Gladchiye, *s* gladness, 59, 928
- Gladdez, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, *v* 3 *s* gladdens, encourages, *pl* glad-dene, 928
- Glade, *adj* glad, 1386
- Glade *See* Glydez
- Glaueiande, *i p* talking foolishly, 2538
- Glafte, *s* 3761 "Glaue A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff" *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms*
- Gledys, *s pl* sparks, live coals, 117
- Glent, *s* stroke, 3863
- Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glentys, 2780, *v* 3 *s* glances, ghdes
- Gleterande, *i p* glittering, 595, 1280, 2853
- Ghftas, 3949, Glyftes, 2525, *v* 3 *s* looks
- Gloppynyng, *s* frnght, amazement, 3863
- Glopyne, *v* terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, 3 *s* glopyns, 3949, *pret* glonede, 1074, *imp pl* 2 glo-pypns, 2853, *i p* gloppynnande, 4329
- Glorede, *v pret* stared, 1074
- Glitone, *s* glutton, 1074
- Glydez, *v* 3 *s* ghdes, 1371, *pret* glade, 2972, *i p* glydande, 799
- Glyftes *See* Ghftas
- Gobbede, *adj* full of gab or derision, 1346 *Sc gabbed*, loquacious
- Gobelets, *s pl* glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913 Compare *Gobelot de gland* = acorn-cup (*Roquefort*)
- Gobone, *v* (?) 4164
- Gode, *adj* good, 3476
- Gole, *s* 3725 "A ditch or small stream" *Halliwel*
- Golet, *s* gullet, 1772
- Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409, *s* man, *pl* gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684 A S *guma*

- Goo, *v* go, 213, 1279, 3 *s* gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3101, *pl* gosse, 497, *imp* 2 *pl* gose, 1266
- Gorge, *s* throat, 3760
- Gorgere, *s* gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772
- Gorre, *s* gore, 1130, 1370
- Gos, Gose *See* Goo
- Gosesomere, *s* gossamer, 2687
- Gosse *See* Goo
- Gossehawk, *s* goshawk, 4001
- Gouverneur, *s* 1201
- Gowces *Read* Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759
- Gowke, *s* cuckoo, 927 *A S* *geac*
- Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowlles, 3945, *s* gules (Her)
- Gracious, *adj.* 187
- Grame, *s* anger, 1077, 3008 *A S* *grama*
- Granes, *v* groans, 2562
- Grape, *v* grope, search, 2725
- Grassede, *p p* fattened, fat, 1091
- Graue, *p p* engraved, 3462
- Graunt, 2820, Graunted, 1202, *p p* granted
- Grayhondes *See* Grehownde.
- Graynes, *s pl* 913, 3463
- Graythe, *v* make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266, 3 *s* graythes, goes, 1353, 1384, 3761, *p p* graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373
- Graythelyche, 722, Graythely, 1369, 1384, 1387, Graythly, 1000, *adv* readily, speedily
- Graytheste, *adj* readiest, promptest, 1201
- Gre, 2748, Gree, 1936, 2645, *s* will, pleasure
- Gree, *s* (degree) ascendancy, 3706, 4298.
- Grees, *s* grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658 *See* Grease in Halliwell
- Greesse-growene, *adj* grown over with fat, 1101
- Grefe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Grefe, 3007, 4324, *s* grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow
- Grefe, *v* grieve, 705, *p p* grefede, hurt, 1282, greffede, 1463 *See* Greue
- Griefes *See* Greue, *s*
- Grehownde, 3464, Grehownde, 1075, Grehownde, 4001, *s* grayhound, *pl* grewhondez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521
- Grekkes, *adj* Greek, 594
- Grene, *adj* green, 1266, 1281
- Grenede, *v pret* grinned, showed his teeth, 1075
- Gresse, *s* grass, 1131
- Gret, 256, Grete, 207, Grett, 1, 165, Grette, 539, *adj* great, *comp* gretter, 3243, *superl* gretteste, 1469
- Grete, *v* greet, 1282, 3 *s* gretez, 1077, *pl* gretes, 1233, *pret* giette, 84, 3476
- Grete, *v* weep, 3 *s* gretes, 2962, *pret* grette, 3790, *s p* gretand, 951, 3912
- Gretez, *v* 1774 *Qu* gredez, calls
- Greue, *s* grove, 2540, *pl* greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881
- Greue, *v* grieve, vex, annoy, *pret* greuyde, was vexed, 1352, *p p* greuede, 134, 266, 1173, greuyde, 1022
- Grehownde, Grehownde *See* Grehownde
- Gripe, *v* seize, gripe, grasp, 3008, 3 *s* grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1369
- Grisely, 3105, Grysly, 1075, Grysely, 951, Gryeslye, 1469, Gry[s]-lych, 1101, *adj* horrible, grisly.

- Grisely, 1462, 3950, Grysely, 3912, Gryselyche, 1373, *adv* horribly
- Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, *s* On *g* = flat, sprawling
- Grome, *s* groom, 2526, 3489
- Gronande, *i p* groaning, 1373, 3938
- Grouche *See* Gruche
- Grouffe *See* Groffe
- Groundene, 1371, 2972, Grown-dene, 1281, Grundyne, 1461, *pp* ground, sharpened
- Growffe *See* Groffe
- Growndene *See* Groundene
- Gruche, 706, 2644, Grouche, 2819, *v* be dissatisfied, grudge, *pret* grychgide, 2557, *i p* grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462
- Grundyne *See* Groundene
- Grychgide *See* Gruche
- Gryeslye *See* Grisely
- Gryffounne, *s* griffin, 3869
- Grygyngge, *s* (graying) dawn, 2510
- Grylych, 1101 *Read* Gryslych, and *see* Grisely
- Gryme, *adj* grim, 3621, 3760, *superl* grymmeste, 3419
- Grymly, *adv* grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813
- Grypes, Gryppes *See* Gripe
- Grysely, Gryselyche, Grysly *See* Grisely
- Guchede *Read* Guthede = gouted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937
- Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, *adj* good
- Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, *s pl* goods
- Gudly, *adv* well, 677, 3005
- Gumbaldes, *s pl* (?) dainties, 187
- Gume *See* Gome
- Guschez, *v pl* gush, 1130
- Guttes, 1130, Guttez, 1370, *s pl* guts
- Guyte, *s* child, 2963 *See* *Get* and *Gyte* in Jamieson
- Gwerdones, 4277, Gwerddouns, 2820, *s pl* guerdons, rewards
- Gyaunt, Gyawntus *See* Geant
- Gydes, *v 3 s* gudes, 3005
- Gydes, *s pl* gudes, 3006
- Gye, *v* guide, 4, *pret* gyede, 3860
- Gyf, 3058, Gyfe, 1598, Gyffe, 4, *v* give, 3 *s* gyffes, 1774, *pp* gyfene, 4277, gyffene, 1202, gyffes = makes account of, 539
- Gyrd, Gyrdes, &c. *See* Garde
- Haa, *int* 133
- Habite, *s* dress, 3917
- Habydes, *v 3 s* abides, waits for, 596, *pl* habydez, remain, 1431.
- Hade *See* Hafe
- Hafe, 252, 286, Haffe, 1616, *v* have, 2 *s* has, 100, 140, hase, 1805, 3 *s* has, 846, *pl* has, 12, 369, *pret* hade, 26, 52
- Halsez, *v 3 s* greets, salutes, 1058.
- Hakenayes, 484, Hakkenays, 2284, Haknays, 734, *s pl* hackneys
- Halde, *v* hold, 424, 3 *s* haldes, 64, haldez, 1135, *pret* helde, 1196, *pp* haldene, 387, 1456
- Hale, *v* draw, haul, 748
- Hale, 1260, 2108, Halle, 2651, *adj* whole
- Halely, 764, Hally, 1001, 1085, Holly, 748, *adv* wholly, entirely
- Halfe, *s* half, part, side, *pl* halves, 1853, halfez, 1979, halues, 1966, 3530
- Halowes, *v 3 s* shouts, hollas, 3319
- Hals, *s* neck, throat, 764, *pl* halses, 4120, halsez, 1798

- Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, *adj*
 Hame-holde, *adj* domestic, 1843
 See *Hamald* in Jamieson
 Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunche,
 1157, *s* haunch
 Handez, *s pl* hands, 1137
 Handilez, *v pl* handle, feel, 1156
 Handsomere, *adj comp* more
 handy, 2128
 Hannde-brede, *s* handbreadth,
 2229
 Hansemane, *s* henchman, page,
 2662, *pl* hansemene, 2743 See
Henseman in Jamieson
 Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, *s* hap
 Happe, *v* have good fortune, suc-
 ceed, 2630
 Happene, *v* 1269, obtain, 3433,
pp hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304
 Happy, *adj* fortunate, 1741, 2974
 Happyng, *s* good fortune, suc-
 cess, 3958
 Harageous, *adj* 1645, 1742, 1834,
 2248, violent, stormy (Wright)
 Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde,
 3013, *s* herald
 Harbergage, *s*. quarters, 2475
 Hardare, *adj comp* harder, 4194
 Harde See Here, *v*
 Hardly, *adv* closely, 1084.
 Hardynes, *s* boldness, courage,
 3959
 Hare, *s* hair, 1001
 Hare, *s* 2504
 Harlotte, *s* ribald, rascal, low
 fellow, 2446, *pl* harlottez, 2743
 Not used in the modern sense
 Harmes, 2437, Harmez, 1842, *v*
 3 *s* harms
 Harnayse, *s* armour, 2629
 Harrawnte, *v*. (?) 2449
 Harske, *adj* harsh, hard, 1084
 Has, Hase See Hafe
 Hastily, *adv*. hastily, quickly,
 167
 Hathelle, *adj* noble, 358, 1659,
 1662, *superl* hatheldest, 988, ha-
 theleste, 2109
 Hawberke, *s* hauberk, coat of
 mail, 1156, 2078, 2552 Ger
halsberg
 Hawe, *s* (?) 3704
 Hawle, *s* hall, 3879
 Hawrawde See Harawde
 Hawtayne, *adj* haughty, 1058,
 2612, 2910
 Hawtayne, (?) 3029
 Haylede, *v pret* projected, 2077
 Haythemene, *s pl* (?) heathen
 men, 2295
 Haythene, 1260, 2274, Hathene,
 1284, Heythene, 2285, 3642, He-
 thene, 1834, *adj* heathen
 Hedde, *v* behead, 2311
 Heddys-mene, *s pl* headmen,
 chief men, 281
 Hede See Heuede
 Hede-rapys, *s pl* head-ropes,
 3668
 Hedire, *adv* hither, 2614
 Hedlyngs, *adv* headlong, 3829
 Hedoyne, *s* (?) 184
 Hedyrwarde, *adv* hitherward, this
 way, 25
 Hedys See Heuede
 Heghe = hethe, heath, 2476
 Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe,
 3471, Hey, 3467, 3485, Hye, 39,
 58, Hyghe, 3014, *adj* high, *superl*
 hegheste, 3369
 Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194,
 1119, *adv* high
 Heghe, *s* high place, height, 1146
 Heghely, *adv* hastily, 2294
 Heghte = aughte, *adj* eight,
 2830.
 Heghte = hethe, *s* heath, 2295

- Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, *s* height, *pl* heghttez, 798
 Hekes, *s pl* horses, 2284
 Helledede, *v pret* bowed down, inclined, 3368
 Hele, *s* health, prosperity, 2630, 3958
 Hele, *v* hide, conceal, 3286, *pret* huld, 1120, *pp* hilyd, 3606
 Hele, *v* heal, be healed, recover, 3688, 3 *s* heles, 2209, *pret* helyde, 1825, *pp* helyd, 3030
 Helme, *s* helmet, 1832, *pl* helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551
 Helmede, *adj* having helmets, 1647, 3626.
 Helpene, *v inf* help, 1646, *pp* holpene, 2631, 2661
 Helych, *adv* loudly, 1286
 Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, *s pl* borders
 Hende, *adj* courteous, 167, 1135, 1283
 Hente, *v* seize, take, receive, 3 *s* hentez, 1132, hentes, 2917, *pret* hente, 2973, *pp* hente, 1842, 3319
 Herbariours, *s pl* harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.
 Herberde, *pp* harboured, lodged, 158, 166, 2650
 Herbergage, *s* lodgings, quarters, 1285, 2285
 Here, *v* hear, 12, *pret* herde, 1285, harde
 Herede, *adj* haired, 1083
 Heretyke, *s* heretic, 1307.
 Herkene, *v* hearken, 1646, 3899, *imp 2 pl* herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.
 Herne-pane, *s* brain-pan, skull, 2229
 Herte, *s* heart, 251, 262
 Herte, *v* take courage, 1181
 Hertelyche, 2551, Hertily, 1835, *adj* severe.
 Hertily, 3642, Hertely, 2991, *adv* heartily, severely
 Heslyne, *adj* of hazel, 2504
 Heste, *s* command, 2294, 3368, 4307
 Hetches, *s pl* hatches, 3682
 Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, *v* promise, assure
 Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, *s* heath
 Hethely, *adv* scornfully, 268
 Hethynge, *s* scorn, 1843.
 Hette *See* Hete
 Heuande, *i p* rising, 3704
 Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, head, chief, 1344, *pl* hedys
 Heuedede, *pp* beheaded, 463
 Heuen, *v* raise, 1937 *See* *Heuen* in the Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*, ed Morris
 Heuene, 1167, 1261, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, *s* heaven.
 Hewe, *s* hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524
 Hewede, *adj* coloured, 3252
 Hewene, *v pl* hew, 1860, *pp* hewene, 1825, 2663
 Hewys, *v 3 s* raises, 4156, *pp* hewede, 4091
 Hey, *adj See* Heghe
 Hey, *s See* Hye
 Heyghe, *adj See* Heghe
 Heyghe, *s See* Hethe
 Heyly, *adv* quickly, 464, 2663, 2920
 Heyndly, *adv* courteously, 15
 Heynne, *adv* hence, 2436
 Heynzous, *adj* heinous, 268
 Heythene *See* Haythene
 Highte, *pp* called, named, 2899
 Huld, Hilyd *See* Hele, *v*

- Hilt, *s* hilt, handle of a sword, 1121, *pl* hiltes, 2239, hiltex, 1056, 1149
 Hiltede, *adj* 2274, 2911.
 Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, *pron* her
 Hirste, *s* wood, forest, 3369
 Hittez, *v* 3 *s* hits, 1112, 1125, 1149
 Hode, *s* hood, 3459 *r*
 Hodles, *adj* hoodless, bareheaded, 2308
 Holdene, *v* *pl* hold, 4128, *pp* holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166
 Hole, *adj* hollow, 1083
 Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, *adj* whole, all *See* Hale
 Holly, *adv* wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590
 Holpene *See* Helpene
 Holte, *s* wood, 1283, 1645, *pl* holtez, 1259
 Hom, *adv* home, 3014
 Homager, *s* one who does homage, 3147
 Hondene, *v* (?) serve with hands, 3209
 Hondrethe, 844, Howndrethe, 2108, Hundrethe, 930, *s* hundred, *pl* hundrethes, 281, hunndrethez, 1879
 Honeste, *adj* honourable, good, 3245
 Honnde, *s* hand, 1807, *pl* hondes, 2255, hondez, 1114.
 Honourliche, *adj* honourable, 2298
 Hope, *v* suppose, 2209
 Hopes, *s* *pl* (?) 2503
 Horde, *s* treasure; *pl.* hordes, 3145
 Hore, *adj* hoar, hoary, 1082
 Hornez, *s* *pl* horns, 1286
 Horsse, *s* 463, *pl* horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721
 Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, *adj* horsed, mounted
 Hostaye, *v* lead a host, or make war, 555
 Hotchene, *v* *pl* hack, chop, 3687
 Houe, Hufe, 1688, *v* tarry, 3 *s* houys, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260, *pl* houez, 1283, houys, 377, 2118, *pret* houede, 2031, *v* *p* houande, 1648
 Hoursches, *v* *pl* (?) rush, 2110
 House, *v* dwell, 4284
 Howes *See* Houe
 Howge *See* Hüge
 Howndrethe *See* Hondrethe
 Howntes, *v* *pl* hunt, 4258
 Howselde, *pp* houseled, be h = receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315
 Howsyng, *s* dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285
 Hufe *See* Houe
 Hüge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2889, *adj* huge
 Hukes, *s* *pl* 734 Miswritten for *hakes*, or *hekes*, horses
 Huke-nebbyde, *adj* hooknosed, 1082.
 Hulke, *s* a great awkward fellow, 1058, 1085, 1121, 1149.
 Hunde-fisch, *s* houndfish, 1084.
 Hundrethe, Hunndrethez *See* Hondrethe
 Hurdace, *s* fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.
 Hurdez, *v* 3 *s* (?) lurks, 1010.
 Hurles, *v* 2 *s* rushest, 262
 Hurtez, *v* 3 *s* thrusts, 1772
 Hy *See* Hye
 Hyde, *s* skin, 1157
 Hydede, *pp* hided, skinned, covered, 1001.

- Hye *See* Heghe
 Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, *s* haste
 Hye, *v* hasten, 1645
 Hyely, *adv* hastily, quickly, (or perhaps) loudly, 1058
 Hyene, *adv* hence, 2582, 2744
 Hyled, *pp* hidden, 184 *See* Hele
 Hyme, *pron* him, 1133, 1134
 Hymlande, (?) 2503
 Hyndire, *s* hindpart, 3626
 Hynge, *v* hang, 3 *s* hynnges, 3473, *pret* hyngede, 281, 2 *p* hyn-gande, 1083, *pp* hynggyde, 3590
 Hynter, *s* hindpart, 3605
 Hyrdez, *s pl* shepherds, 3245
 Hyre, *pron* her, 854
 Hyttez, *v* 3 *s* hits, 1122, 1387

 Iche *See* Ilke
 Iche, *v* sally forth, rush out, 1412 O Fr *issir*
 Idene, (?) 3061
 Ife = if, 420, 2438
 Ile, *s* isle, 4309, *pl* ilez, 575, illes, 2359
 Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, *pron* each one, each
 Ilke, *adv* same, 65, 232, 1311 A S *ilc*
 Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, *adv* each Often followed by *a* ilke a, 83, 194, iche a, 2144, 3062, yche a, 3634
 Illes *See* Ile
 Imangez, *prep* amongst, 3169
 In-come, *s* coming in, 2009, 2171
 Ine = in, 1797
 Inewe *See* Inowe
 Inglisce, *s* English, 2529
 Inns, *s pl* dwellings, 3041
 Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, *adv* enough
 Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, *s* iron
 Iresche, 3934, Irsche, 4123, 4161, *adv* Irish
 Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, *adv* wrathful
 Iroulye, *adv* wrathfully, 2530
 Ischewe, *s* issue, 1943
 Isschewis, *v* 3 *s* issues, 4060, *pl* ischewis, 3116
 I-wis, 3339, I-wys, 2020, 2332, 2828, I-wysse, 322, 546, 2685, *adv* certainly
 Jaggede, *v pret* jagged, chopped, 1123, 2087, *pp* 905, 2909
 Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, *adv* active, numble, lit leggy, from Fr *jambe*, leg
 Japer, *s pl* tricks, 1398
 Jentille, Jentylle, *adv* gentle, 115, 904, 3411.
 Jerodyne, *s* (?) 905
 Jerownde, *adv* gyronny (Her), 2891
 Jeryne, *s* (?) 903
 Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte *See* Gesserawnte
 Jocunde, *adv* 2896
 Jogges, *v* 3 *s* jogs, thrusts, 2891, 2893
 Jolyly, Jolyly, *adv* gaily, hand-somely, 245, 373, 2088, 4109
 Joly, *adv* gay, trim, handsome, jolly, 3414, *comp* jolyere, 4110, *superl* jolyeste, 1658
 Jonede, *pp* joined, 2890
 Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, jupon.
 Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnee, 2894, *s* a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work

- Jowelle, *s* jewel, 862
 Joye, *s* 1161
 Joyes, *v* 3 *s* rejoices, 2896
 Joynenyge, *s* joining, encounter, 2133
 Joynez, *v* *pl* join, 2112
 Joynter, *s* joint, 2893
 Juggede, *p p* judged, 2877
 Juggesz, *s* *pl* judges, 246
 Jumette, *s* 1122 *Read* Inmette, *s* intestines *See* *Inmeats* in *Jamesson*
 Juny, *s* June, 345
 Jupone *See* Jopowne
 Jurnee *See* Jorné
 Just, *adv* 1123
 Justere, *s* jouter, 3412
 Justyfy, *v* execute justice upon, punish, 663
 Justynge, *s* jousting, 1657, 2875

 Kabane *See* Cabane
 Kaghte *See* Cachene
 Kaire *See* Cayre
 Kalander, *s* calendar, roll, 2640
 Kalendez, *s* *pl* calends, 2371
 Kambe, *s* comb, 3351
 Kampe, *s* fight, 3670, 3701
 Kane, *v* can, 2750
 Karede, *v* *pret* 2882 *See* Cayre
 Kare *See* Care
 Karfuke, *s* place where four roads meet, 2003 A well-known cross-road at Oxford is called *Carfax* *See* *Carfonkes* in the *Romans of Partenay*, ed Skeat, also a note in *Notes and Queries*, Series III, vol x p 184 O Fr. *carrefour*
 Karnede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, *v* *pret* carried
 Karpe *See* Carpe
 Karyage, *s*, baggage, luggage, 2282

 Kaughte *See* Cachene
 Kaunt, *adv* stout, bold, 2195
 Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, *s* key, *pl* layes, 3064
 Kayere, Kayre *See* Cayre
 Kaysere, *s* emperor, 1651, 1959, *pl* kayseres, 1894, kaysers, 2391
 Kele, *v* cool, 1839, *pret* keled, 2712
 Kelle, *s* caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3258
 Kembede, *v* *pret* combed, 3351
 Kempe, *s* warrior, *pl* kempis, 1003 A S *empa*
 Kempe, *v* fight, 2633
 Kene, *v* tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876, *pret* kende, 481, 2194, kend, handed over, 1590
 Kene, *adj* keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 641, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669, *comp* kenere, 4194, *superl* keneste, 2721, 3490
 Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Kenly, 943, *adv* sharply, boldly
 Kenetez, *s* *pl* kennets, small hounds, 122
 Kepare, *s* keeper, 3512
 Kepe, *s* care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746
 Kepe, *v* keep, 1138, 1780, wait, watch, 2003, heed, regard, care, 2398, 3522, 4021, *imp.* 2 *pl* kepys, await, 628; *pret* kepede, 919, kepyde, 838, 2263; *p p.* kepede, 1586, kepide, 998, kepyd, 2171
 Keppe, *v* catch, seize, 3484
 Kepyng, *s* keeping, 4205
 Kerfe, *s* cutting, 4194
 Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, *v* 3 *s* cuts, *p p* coruene, 211, 3335, 3673
 Keste *See* Caste
 Kettle-hatte, *s* helmet, 3516, 3995; *pl* ketelle hattes, 2993

- Keye *See* Kay
 Kidd, 3673, Kydd, 1272, 1390,
 Kydde, 96, 232, Kyde, 65, 1651,
 adj celebrated, famous
 Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, *s*
 church
 Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542,
 Kyghte, 3996, *s* nation, country
 Kleuys *See* Clewes
 Klokcs, *s pl* claws, paws, 792
 Knafe, 2621, Knaffe, 2637, *s*
 servant, *pl* knafes, 2632, knaues,
 3484, knaue = male, 850, 1025
 Knaue, *v* know, 1003, 1581,
 1672, acknowledge, 2637, 3 *s*
 knaues, 1317, *pret* knewe, 2177,
 pp knawene, 475, 1654, knowene,
 3259
 Knee, *s*, *pl* kneesse, 956, kneys,
 4274
 Knele, *v* kneel, 3 *s* knehs, 3951,
 pl knehs, 3046, *pret* knelyd, 1199,
 2312, *i p* kneland, 1137, 4337
 Knyghte, *s* 1138, *pl* knyghttez,
 1161
 Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619,
 Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, *s* knight-
 hood
 Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche,
 506, 1218, 4083, Knyghttly, 1649,
 adj knightly
 Knyghttly, 1707, 1724, Knyghttly,
 1692, 1790, *adv* knightly, like a
 knight
 Knylles, *v pl* rning, 2353
 Kombide, *pp* combed, 1003
 Konynge, *s* cunning, skill, know-
 ledge, 3883
 Konyngeste, *adj* most knowing,
 3177
 Kosyne *See* Cosync
 Kouerde, *pp* covered, 2381
 Kowardely, *adv* cowardly, 1923
 Krafty *See* Crafty
 Kraftes, *s pl* crafts, 2543
 Krakede, *v pret* cracked, 3269.
 Krayers *See* Crayers
 Kreuelleste, Krewelle *See*
 Crewelle
 Krysme, 2636 *See* Crysume
 Kryspane, *i p* crispng, 3352
 Kroke, *s* crook, curl, 3352 Dan
 Michel uses the verb *croki*, to curl
 "Of þise ydelenesse / ne byþ nazt
 quitte þe men þet doþ zuo grat
 payne ham to kembe and to pouri
 ine sseaweres and ine hare here wel
 to *croki* an to bleue be strengte"
 —*Agenbite of Inwyrt*, ed Morris, p
 176 *See* *Havelok the Dane*, ed
 Skeat, Preface, p vii, footnote
 Krouelle *See* Crewelle
 Krysme *See* Crysume
 Krysmede *See* Crysmede
 Kwne, *v* can, know, 1565, kwne
 thanke = return thanks
 Kydd, Kydde, Kyde *See* Kidd
 Kyghte *See* Kithe
 Kynde, *s* nature, kind, 125,
 2385, 3049, race, 3867
 Kyndly, *adj* natural, proper,
 good, 3883, 4188
 Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712,
 Kyndely, 3521, *adv* naturally,
 kindly
 Kyne, *s* kin, 2618
 Kyngryke, *s* kingdom, realm, 24,
 1272, *pl* kyngrykes, 649, kyng-
 rykez, 820
 Kynredene, *s* kindred, 2604
 Kynsemene, 3898, Kynyse-mane,
 1778, *s* kinsman
 Kyrke *See* Kirke
 Kyrnelles, *s pl* battlements, 3046
 Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024,
 1191, *s* kirtle
 Kyste, *s* chest, *pl* kystys, 2302,
 2336, kystis, 2342, 2355
 Kythe *See* Kithe
 Kythe, *v* show, 1652, 4193

- Lacchene, 750, Lachene, 2541,
v pl catch, take, *pret* laghte,
 2693, 2702, laughte, 2226, 2292,
 lached, 1515, *pp* laghte, 874,
 laughte, 1817, 1828, 1902
- Ladde, *s* lad, 4302
- Lade-sterne, *s* loadstar, the polar
 star, 751
- Ladily, *adj* ladylike, 3254
- Ladyse, *s pl* ladies, 3081
- Laggene, *v pl* (?) get ready, 2542
- Laghte *See* Lacchene
- Laghtirs, *s pl* laughters, 2673
- Lake, *s* lack, 163
- Lakes, *s pl* lakes, pools, 960,
 2149
- Lamede, *v pret* lamed, disabled,
 4302, *pp* 3281
- Langage, *s* language, speech,
 3477
- Lange, *adj* long, 1103, 1269,
 one lange = along, 1045, 2703
- Lange, *adv* long, 868, 1200,
comp langere, 550, 587, lengere,
 736, 889
- Lange, *v* belong, 3 *s* langes,
 402, lengez, 2082, *pl* langez, 1244,
 langys, 244, lengez, 1410, 1479,
pret lengede, 1492, 2221
- Lannges, *v 3 s* longs, 383 -
- Langoure, *s* languor, 4268
- Languessande, *i p* languishing,
 4338.
- Lappe, *s* lappet, 3254, rag, 3286
- Lappe, *v* wrap, fold, enclose,
 3292, *pret* lappede, 2300
- Lapyng, *s* lapping, 3235
- Large, *adv* wide, away, 1040,
 deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376
- Largesce, *s* liberality, bounty,
 163
- Lasschene, *v pl* lash, smite, 2801
- Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt,
 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, *v*.
- let, 3 *s* lattes, lets go, dismisses,
 disperses, 1819, *pret* lete, 3886
- Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez,
 1076, *s pl* features
- Lathe, *s* (?) displeasure, 458
- Latheliche, 3279, Laythely, 4302,
adj loathly, ugly, hateful
- Latte, Lattes *See* Lat
- Laughene, *v pl* laugh, 3698,
pret lughe, 248
- Laughte *See* Lacchene
- Launce, *s* lance, spear, 1379,
pl launcez, 1459, 1754, lawnces,
 2462
- Launches, *v 3 s* leaps, springs,
 2560, *pret* launschide, 194
- Launchez, *v pl* launch, throw
 out (?), 750
- Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, *s*
 plain, lawn
- Laundone, *s* (?) field, 1768 "Lan-
 don petite lande, pâturage,
 terres remplies de broussailles"
Roquefort
- Lawe, *adj* low, 154, 3720,
superl laweste, 2431, on lawe =
 down, 2281
- Lawe, *adv* low, 1270
- Lawnches, *v 3 s* cuts, 3831
- Lawnde *See* Launde
- Laye, *s* (?) 3721
- Laye, *s* law, religion, 2593
- Layere, *s* lair, camp, 2293
- Layke, *s* game, 1599, 3386, 4093
- Layne, *v* conceal, 419, 2398,
 2593
- Laysere, *s* leisure, 2430, 3095
- Laythely *See* Latheliche
- Layttede, *v pret* (?) 254
- Leberalle, *adj* liberal, 2318.
- Leburde, *s* lee-board, 3624.
- Leche, *s* jelly, 194
- Lechene, *v* heal, 2388

- Lechyde, *pp* cut into slices, 188
 Lede, *s* nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997, *pl* ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801
 Lede, *s* lead, 750, 2300, 3954
 Lede, 1268, Leede, 154, *v* lead, treat, *pl* ledes, 303, *pret* ledde, 1515, lede, 3380, *pp* lede, 1827, 1903
 Ledyng, *s* rule, 3536, conduct, 3880
 Lee, *s* shelter, 1446
 Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, *adj* dear, lief, *comp* leuer, 872, 1344, 1573
 Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, *s* leave, permission
 Lefe, *v* leave, 1340, *pl* leues, remain, *pret* leftte, 1516, *pp* lefede, 1397, leuede, 843, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208
 Lefulle, *adj* allowable, lawful, 130
 Lege, 1901, Liege, 1200, Lige, 1768, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2339, Lygge, 1518, *adj* hege
 Legyaunce, *s* allegiance, 2594
 Lele, *adj* leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647
 Lelely, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3084, *adv* faithfully, honestly, truly
 Lemande, *i p* shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672
 Lemete, *pp* limited, 457
 Lenand *See* Lene
 Lende, *v* abide, 1970
 Lendez, *s pl* loins, 1047
 Lene, *v* lean, *pret* lenede, 2703, *i p* lenand, 1045, 2672.
 Lenge, *v* abide, remain, dwell, 72, 128, 152, 3 *s* lengez, 129, *inf* lengene, 1588
 Lengede, Lengez *See* Lange, *v*
 Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, *adv* longer
 Lenghe, *s* length, 1102, 1126
 Lenghene, *v* lengthen, 2845
 Leppe, *v* leap, 2084, *pl* leppyne, 3697, lepyr, 3696, *pret* lepe, 3427, *i p* leppande, 1460.
 Lere, *v* teach, 1035.
 Leskes, *s pl* loins, 1097, 3279
 Lesse, *conj* lest, 2300, 2439
 Lesse, *adj* false, withowttyns lesse = truly, certainly, 139
 Lesynge, 3079, Lesynng, 3721, *s* losing
 Let *See* Lette
 Letande, *i p* (?) appearing, 3831
 Lete *See* Lat
 Letherly, *adv* wickedly, 1268
 Lett, *v* cease, desist, 2325
 Lette, *v* hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721, *pret* let, 3720
 Lette, *s* hindrance, 92, 458
 Lettyng, *s* hindrance, 371.
 Leue *See* Leefe
 Leue, *v* believe, 702, 1097, 2 *s* leues, 2593
 Leuenynge, *s* lightning, 2463.
 Leuere *See* Leefe
 Leueré, *s* delivery, hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform, and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078 *See* Lavery in Halliwell
 Leues, *s pl* leaves, 1708
 Leuetenaunte, *s* lieutenant, vice-roy, 646
 Leuez, *v* 3 *s* lives, 1731
 Life, 3723, Liffe, 1036, *v* live, *pret* hfede, 3961, *pp* liffyde, 252
 Lifeliche, *adj* (?) real, actual, 3427.
 Liffe, *s* life, 430, 1820
 Lifte, *v pret* lifted, 3349
 Lige, Ligge *See* Lege
 Liggez *See* Lygge

- Lighames *See* Lyghame
 Lightly, *adv* 3287
 Likez *See* Lyke
 Likynge, *s* pleasure, 130, 3381
 Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, *s*
 face, visage *A S hleor*
 Liste, *s* desire, pleasure, 12
 Liste, *v pret* desired, 4270
 Lofte, on lofte = aloft, 163,
 916, 942, appone lofte = aloft,
 2800, 3623
 Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, *v*
 lodge, *pl* lugegez, 2280, *pret*
 luggede, 486, *i p* lugande, 1045
 Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke,
 135, *v* look, 3 *s* lukez, 113, *pl*
 lukkes, 751, *pret* loked, 119,
 lukede, 1313, *imp* 2 *pl* lokez,
 1640, *i p* lukande, 3103
 Lokerde, *pp* curled, 779 *Sc*
 lokker, to curl (Jamieson)
 Lokkes, *s pl* locks, 778, 3280
 Lond, *s* land, *pl* londes, 878,
 londez, 427, 1691, 1933
 Londis, *v* 3 *s* lands, 3922
 Longez, *v pl* belong, 2828, *pret*
 lonngede, 3080
 Loo, *int* lo, 974, 1349
 Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, *s* praise,
 renown, good name
 Lordcheppez, 1727, Lordchipez,
 253, 646, Lordechippez, 1970, *s*
 pl lordships
 Lordliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570,
 2032, 2281, 2541, *adj* lordly
 Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely,
 1818, 2227, *adv* in a lordly manner
 Lorne, *pp* lost, 1153
 Losels, *s pl* rascals, wretches,
 252
 Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, *v*
 lose
 Lotes, *s pl* features, 1462 *See*
 Lates
 Lothely, *adj* loathly, horrid, ugly,
 778, 3231
 Lothely, *adv* horridly, 2074,
 3849
 Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, *adj*
 hateful, detestable
 Loue, *v* praise, 369, *pp* louede,
 4305
 Louely, 3478, Louelyly, 2292,
 adv in a loving manner, kindly
 Louerde, *s* lord, 3918
 Lowde, on l = aloud, 1781,
 2032
 Lowe, *s* flame, 194
 Lowkkide, *pp* closed, 3953
 Lowrande, *i p* lowering, looking
 sad, 1446, 4338
 Lowttes, *v pl* bow, 505, *pret*
 lowttede, bowed before, 2631, 3285,
 3408
 Loyotour, *s* embroidery (Perry),
 3253
 Lufe, *s* some part of a ship, 744,
 750 "Loof" The windward side
 of a ship. It is not easy to
 make out exactly what part of the
 ship the *loof* originally was. Du
 loef is a rulloek or oar-pin, scal-
 mus, but the loof was a timber of
 considerable size, by which the
 course of the ship was directed, it
 would seem to be the large oar
 used by way of a rudder, or per-
 haps the tiller" *Wedgwood's Dic-*
 tionary of English Etymology
 Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381,
 s love, sake
 Luffe, *v* love, 1597, *pl* luffes,
 12
 Luffiche, 3623, Luffy, 1459, *adj*
 lovely
 Luffy, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche,
 2674, *adv* in a lovely manner
 Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Lug-
 gede *See* Loge
 Lughe *See* Laughene

- Luk, Lukande, Luke, Lukkes *See* Loke
- Lukyng, *s* looking, 139
- Lumpe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2280, *s* crowd, throng
- Lunggez, *s pl* lungs, 2168
- Lussche, *s* (?) thrust, 3848
- Lutterde, *adj* bowed, bent, 779
Sc luttard (Jamieson)
- Luyschene, *v pl* (?) lash, 1459, *pret* luyschede, 2226
- Lyarde, *adj* gray, 2542, 3280
“*Laart, harde*, gris, gris-pommelé”
Burguy See Laart in Jamieson
- Lyefe, 2845, Lyffe, 1269, *s* life, *pl* lyfez, 1217
- Lyf, *v* live, 1903, 3 *s* lyffes, 405, 537, *pp* lyfede, 868
- Lyfte, *s* sky, 4272
- Lygeaunce, *s* allegiance, 244
- Lygge, *v* lie, 2 *s* lygges, 1060, 3 *s* lyggez, 805, lys, 3938, *pl* lygges, 459, lyggez, 1184, hgez, 1773
- Lyghame, *s* body, 3281, 3286, *pl* lighames, 4269 *AS lchama*
- Lyghte, *v* light, alight, 1270, 3 *s* lyghttez, 933, *pret* lyghte, 3594, *pp* lyghtede, 1782
- Lyghte, *v* lighten, 2846, 3 *s* lyghttys, 368, *pl* lyghttys, 251
- Lyghtenande, *i p* lightening, flashing, 2463
- Lygmane, *s* liegeman, 420, *pl* lyggemene, 1518
- Lyke, *v* be pleased, rejoice, 195, *usually an impers v* likez, 383, lykes, 55, lykez, 1190, lykys, 32, 186, pleases, *pret* lykede, 599, *i p* lykande, being pleased, 248, pleasing, 497, 2406
- Lykyng, *s* pleasure, 701, 2673
- Lyne, 459, 1097, Lymme, 1046, *s* lmb
- Lympe, *v* happen, befall, 1643, *pl* lymppene, incur, 3119; lymppede, gamed, 3415, lympyde, 292
pp lympppyde, incurred, suffered, 875
- Lynd, *s* tree, 454, 486
- Lyukwhyttez, *s pl* linnets, 2674
Sc luntwhite, *AS lnet*, flax, *lnet-wig*, flax-finch, lnnnet
- Lyone, *s* lion, 139, *pl* lyouns, 3234
- Lyppe, *s* lip, 119, *pl* lyppys, 1011, lppis, 3954
- Lyre *See* Lire
- Lys *See* Lygge
- Lythe, 1653 *Read* Kythe
- Lythe, *adj* gentle, 1517, 1600
- Lythe, *v* listen, 12, *pl* lythes, 1810
- Lytheuly, *adv* badly, 1448
- Lythes, *s pl* (?) leases, tenements, 994 *See Luth* in Glossary to *Havelok the Dane*, ed Skeat, and *Lud* in Glossary to *William of Palerne*, ed Skeat
- Lythyre, *adj* wicked, bad, 23
- Lytill, 1021, Litylle, 1719, Lyttill, 754, *adj or adv* little
- Lytte, (?) little, 550
- Lyue, *s* life, 1775, 3067, 3520.
- Lywyng, *s* living, 5
- Ma, *adj* more, 1829
- Mace, *s* 4210
- Mache, *s* match, 4070
- Machede, *pp* matched, 1533, 2904
- Maches, *s* (?) 2950
- Mad, *v pret* made, 50, 112, *pp* mad, 77
- Made, *s* madness, 4271.
- Magestee, 1236, Maestee, 1303, *s* majesty
- Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938, 3652, *s* master
- Maisterede, *v pret* mastered, 2683

- Makk, *s* companion, fellow, 1166
 Makles, *adj* peerless, matchless, 3875
 Malle, *v* hammer, beat, 3038, 4037, 3 *s* mallis, 3841
 Maluesye, *s* a kind of wine, 236
 Malyncoly, *s* 2204, 4209
 Man, *adj* See Mayne
 Manace, *s* menace, threatening, 3383
 Manacede, *v* *pret* threatened, 1383
 Manere, *s* manor, 4310
 Manere, *s* manner, 1383
 Mangere, *s* 1588 Qu Mawgree, ill will.
 Manhede, *s* manhood, 399, 434, 4278
 Manliche, *adj*. manly, 2417
 Manrede, *s* homage, service, 127
 Manykyne, *adj* of many kinds, 8174
 Manys = man's, 76
 Marasse, 2505, Marras, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, *s* morass, marsh
 Marche, *s* frontier, boundary, 318, 1588, *pl* marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77
 Marchez-mene, *s* *pl* bordermen, borderers, 1237
 Marras, Marrasse See Marasse
 Marre, *v* mar, 2015
 Marters, *s* *pl* martyrs, 1066
 Martyre, *v* kill, 560
 Mase, *v* 3 *s* makes, 960
 Masondewes, *s* *pl* hospitals, 3038
 Fr *maison-dieu*, lit house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv
 Mawgree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of
 Maundement, *s* commandment, order, 1587
 Mawene, *p p* mown, 2507
 Mawgree See Mawgree
 Mawncelet Read Mawntelet, *s* mantling, or lambrequin, 3632
 "Mantling, or Lambrequin—a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer"—*Boutell's Heraldry* (3rd edit 1864), p 115 In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail
 Mayles, 2250, Maylez, 904, 1487, 1764, *s* *pl* chan or ringed armour
 Mayne, *s* might, power, 4326
 Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, *adj* main
 Maynoyrede, *p p* worked, 2507
 Mayntene, *v* maintain, 399, *p p* mayntenyde, 4278
 Mayster See Mauster
 Maysterfulle, *adj* victorious, 3413
 Mede, *s* meed, reward, 666, 1068
 Mede, *s* mead, 1290, 2506
 Medille, *s* middle, waist, 2205, 4168
 Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, *s* world
 Medillewarde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1938, *s* centre of an army
 Mekille, Mekylle, *adj* great, 1236, *adv* much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382
 Mele, *v* speak, talk, 990, 3 *s* meles, 382, 679, 1781, *pl* mellys, 3652, *imp* 2 *pl* melys, 2871.
 Melhene, *s* million, 3144
 Melle, *v* mix, join, meddle, deal with, 938, *pl* mellis, 2904
 Melles, *v* 3 *s* hammers, smites, 2950 See Malle
 Mellyd, *adj* (?) made like a *mall* or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210
 Mellys, Melys See Mele

- Mendement, *s* amendment, 989, 1236
- Mendynantez, *s pl* (?) mendicants, beggars, 667
- Mene, *v* speak, tell, 3556, speak of, mention, 2869, 3 *s* menys, talks, 3478, 3653
- Menede, *v pret* meant, 891
- Mengene, *v pl* mungle, join, 4173, *pp* mengede, 3632
- Menske, *s* honour, 126, 399, 433
- Menskes, *v* 3 *s* honours, 1303, 2871
- Mensksfully, *adv* honourably, 631, 940, 1233, 1988
- Mereswyne, *s* dolphin, 1091
"Hic delis pis mere-swin" *Alfred's Grammar*, Cotton MS Julius A n, leaf 31
- Merke, *v* proceed, 351, 427, 4320, assign, 1068, 3 *s* merkes, cuts, 2206, *pl* merkene, 4168, *pp* merked, formed, made, 1304, merkylde, 952
- Merkes, *s pl* bounds, 461, 1147
- Merrede, 1238, 3555, Mernde, 3322, *pp* marred
- Meruaile, Meruayle, *s* marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906
- Meruailles, *v* 3 *s* marvels, 1314
- Meruailous, 260 Meruaylous, 428, Meruaylous, 2287, Meruelyous, 236, *adj* marvellous, wonderful, *superl* meruelyousteste, 129
- Mery, *adj* merry, cheerful, 260, *comp* meriere, 3175, *superl* meryeste, 3239
- Messes, *s pl* masses, 4018, 4333
- Mett, *v pret* dreamed, 3223
- Mette, 2491, *s* meat, food, *pl* metes, 75, metez, 1298
- Mette, *v* meet, 434, *pret* mett, 1175, 3841
- Mette-fulle, *adj* measure-full, in good measure, 2343
- Mette while, *s* measured time, or scanty time, 3903 A S *mdte*, moderate, little
- Meue, *v* move, 2001
- Misdoo, *v* ill-use, wrong, 126
- Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, *adj* more
- Mobles, *s pl* movable goods, 666
- Mode, *s* mind, 3222, 3382, 3454
- Modyr, Modyre, *s* mother, 2, 983, 1211
- Mofes, *v* 3 *s* moves, 3323
- Molde, *s* mould, earth, 129, 952, 975
- Mone, *v* must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820
- Monee, *s* money, 2343
- Monethe, *s* month, 318
- Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntayngnes, 4259, *s pl* mountains
- Monte, *s* mountain, 938, 1069, *pl* montez, 874, 1175, mowntes, 3535, 3556
- Mony, *adj* many, 3623, 3671
- Moo See Mo
- More, *adj* greater, 1018
- Morne, *s* morning, morrow, 1223
- Morne-while, *s* morning time, 2001, 3223
- Morthires, *v* 2 *s* murderest, 1315, *pl* mortherys, 4259, *pp* morthrede, 976
- Morwene, *s* morning, 3476
- Moste, *v* must, 250, 263, 449, *impers v* 2491
- Moste, *adj* greatest, 3322, 4221
- Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, *v* must, may
- Mourmande, *v p* mourning, 4333
- Mourtherys See Morthires
- Mowe, *v suby sg* be able, may, 3812

- Moyllez, *s pl* mules, 2287
 Muskadelle, *s* a kind of wine, 236
 Myche, *adj* great, 1166, 1214, 2033, *adv* much, greatly, 1068
 Myde, *adj* mid, 3841
 Myddes, 1293, Myddys, 2176, *s* midst
 Mylde, *adj* mild, 1211
 Mynde, *s* memory, 1221
 Mynsters, *s pl* monasteries, 3038
 Myrthez, *s pl* mirths, 1532
 Myschefe, *s* trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437
 Myse-bide, *v* offer injury, 3083
 Mysese, *s* trouble, grief, and hence, those who are in trouble, 667
 Myshappene, *v* meet with misfortune, 3454
 Myskaries, *v* 3 *s* comes to grief, 2872, *pp* myscaryede, 1778, myskaryede, 1237
 Myse, *s* wrong, injury, 1315, 3057
 Myste, *s* mist, 2001
 Myx, *s* vile wretch, lit dung, 989 AS *meor*, dung, muck "Ne myhte þe *mures* þo wurse don, Bute a-mong þeones on rode an-hon"
 Jesus Coll MS 29, leaf 265, back
 Na, *adj* no, 160, 310, 1644
 Nakyne, *adj* of no kind, 2350
 Nane, *adj* no, 213, 565, *pron* none, 657, 2613
 Nauallye, *s* navel, 979
 Naye, *s* a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283 Compare *Nerz* in *William of Palerne*, ed Skeat, 1 83
 Ne, *adv* not, 230, 1117, *conj* nor, 10, 161
 Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, *s pl* business
 Nedylle, *s* needle (of a compass), 753
 Neghe, *v* draw nigh, approach, 2133
 Neghe, *adv* closely, exactly, 2658
 Neke-bone, *s* neckbone, 2771
 Nere, *adv* nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135
 Nese, *s* nose, 2248
 Neuewe, *s* nephew, 689
 Newzeie, *s* new-year, 78
 Newzeis daye, *s* new-year's day, 90
 Nextte, *adj* nearest, 2422
 Neynesome, nine in all, 523 See *Sum* in Richthofen's *Altflieusches Wörterbuch*
 Nobille, Nobylle, *adj* noble, 16, 18, 68, *superl* nobileste, 3439, 3935
 Nobilly, *adv* nobly, 1815
 Noblay, *s* splendour, 76, 2433
 Noghte, *pron* naught, 1191, *adv* not, 135, 419, 1174
 Nokyne, *adj* of no kind, 430
 Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, *pp* numbered.
 Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, Nowmbyre, 2942, 3438, Nowmer, 884, *s* number, *pl* nommers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935
 Nomene, 1437, Nommene, 1868, 1872, 2477, *pp* taken
 Nommers See Nombyre.
 None, *s* the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 P M), 78.
 Nomis, 3297, Nonys, 1927, nonce, for the nonce, for the occasion
 Nonkyns, *adj* of no kind, 2363
 Nonne, *adj* no, 3365
 Nonnes, *s pl* nuns, 3539.
 Noo, *adj* no, 4149

- Not, *v* 1 *s* know not, 977
 Notez, *v* *pl* make use of, 1815
 A S *notian*
 Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Now-
 thure, 161, 429, *conj* neither
 Notte, *s* use, hence, business,
 1816 *A S* *notu*
 Nowene, 1806, thi nowene =
 thine own
 Nowmburs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre,
 Nowmer *See* Nombyre
 Nowmerde *See* Nombirde
 Nowthure *See* Nother
 Noyes, *v* 3 *s* harms, grieves,
 1816, 2248
 Nurree, *s* nursing, 689
 Nyghtgale, *s* nightingale, 929
 Nyghttes, *v* 2 *s* gettest benight-
 ed, 161
 Nynne = nine, 3439

 O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907,
 prep on, in
 O, *prep* of, from, 3906
 Occedente, *s* occident, west, 2360
 Occyane, *s* ocean, 31
 Oches, *v* 3 *s* hacks, breaks, 2565,
 pl ochene, 3675, *pret* ochede,
 4245 "*Oscher, ocher, ebrécher,*
 entailler, briser" *Burguy*
 Ocupyes, *v* 3 *s* holds, occupies,
 1663, 2360
 Of = from, 2540
 Oghte, *pron* aught, 1014, 1269,
 2802
 Okene, *adj* oaken, 2722
 Olawe, *adv* below, down, 1517
 Olyfaunte, *s* elephant, 2339, *pl*
 olyfantez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288
 Olyfe, *adv* of life, from life, 802,
 1139, bringe olyfe = kill
 One = on, *prep* 74, 116, 753
 One, *adv* alone, only, 826, 937,
 2519, 2592 *A S* *dne* Myne one,
 by myself, 3230, by myne one, by
 myself, 704, be oure one, by our-
 selves, 1345, thyne one, thysself,
 466, with hyme one, with him-
 self, 597, of hyme one, of himself,
 1793, be thame onc, by them-
 selves, 3195
 Ones, 135, 179, Onez, 1109, 1756,
 adv once
 One-seeande, *i p* looking on,
 525
 Onone, *adv* anon, quickly, soon,
 571, 1178, 1231
 Ony, *adj* any, 2519, 3489, 4215
 Oo *See* O
 Opyne, *adj* open, 2147
 Or, *prep* ere, before, 1269, 1788,
 conj eie, before, 374, 529, 1680
 Ordaynede, *v* *met* arranged,
 1991, *pp* ordande, ordained, 1621
 Oisfaeez, 902, Oisfayos, 2142, *s*
 gold embroidered work, oi fringe
 of gold "*Orf, au, étoffe*
 brochée d'or, brochée en or, frange
 d'or" *Burguy*
 Orrible, *adj* horrible, 1240
 Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904,
 orient
 Osay, *s* a kind of drink, 202
 Oslante, *adv* aslant, 2254, 3923
 Ostage, *s* *pl* hostages, 3187, 3208
 Ostayande, *i p* warring, or lead-
 ing an army, 3502 "*Ostouer,*
 ostouer, osteer, faire la guerre, guer-
 royer, mener ost, attaquer son
 ennemi" *Burguy*
 Oste, *s* host, 1624, *pl* ostes,
 1240, ostez, 2387
 Other-while, *adv* at another time,
 1145
 Othire, *adj* other, 3973, *pron* *pl*
 others, 3932
 Ouer-charggede, *pp* overburden-
 ed, overpowered, 1749
 Ouer-fallene, *pp* fallen upon,
 1154

- Oueigylte, *pp* gilded over, 207
 Ouer-hand, *s* upper hand, master, 1300
 Oueikeste, *v pret* overthrew, 3932
 Oueilynge, *s* superior, lord, 289, 520, 710
 Ouer rane, *v pret* overran, *pp* ouer-ronne, 1206
 Ouer-reche, *v* reach over, afford, 1508, *pl* oueriechcz, reach over, 921
 Ouer-rydez, *v pl* ride over, *pp* ouer riedyne, 1115, 1521
 Ouersette, *pp* overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136
 Ouer-swyngene, *v pl* overthrow, overturn, 1166
 Ouer-whelme, *v* overturn, 3261
 Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, *adv* way Her *ondee*
 "Hire *ownded* here, that sonnyssh was of hewe,"
 She rente
 Chaucer, *Troilus & Criseyde*, bk. iv stanza cii
 Ovyre-fallys, *v pl* fall over, 3677
 Ower, *prep* over, 747
 Ownde See Oundyde
 Owte-iles, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, *s pl* foreign islands
 Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owte londys, 3697, *s pl* foreign countries.
 Owte mowntes, *s pl* far off mountains, 3909
 Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2339, *adv* outside, above
 Owther, 110, 2413, Owthire, 964, *conj* either
 Owtraye, *v* finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328, 3 *s* owtrayes, 1664, *pp* owterayed, 1952, owtrayed, 2617, owtrayed, 2840
 Pacokes, *s pl* peacocks, 182
 Pale, 503, Palosse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, *s* palace, *pl* palasecz, 1287
 Pallay, *s* 3113
 Palle, *s* a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2178, 3142
 Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, *pp* paled (Her)
 Pape, *s* pope, 229, 2327
 Paie, *v* (?) 4047
 Pailement, *s* parliament, 146
 Party, *s* part, 212, *pl* parties, parts, countries, 2596
 Pas, *s* pace, 3496
 Passande, *s* passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4181
 Pastorelles, *s pl* herdmen, 3120
 Patriarkes, *s pl* 3807
 Paume, *s* palm, 776
 Pausone, *s* (?) piece of armour covering the paunch, 3158 "Pancure, *panchire*, la partie de l'armure qui couvre la pausce ou le ventre" *Bugny*
 Pauys, 3160, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage
 Pauysers, *s pl* men who bore the *paus*, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004
 Pavelyouns, 2624, Pauyllyons, 2478, *s pl* tents
 Pawnce, *s* piece of armour for the belly, 2075
 Pawnche, *s* paunch, 2076
 Paye, *v* satisfy, please, 4049, 3 *s* payes, 2646, *pp* payede, 230
 Payganys, *s pl* pagans, 4046
 Payne, *s* penalty, 2329, *pl* paynez, 1546, 1632
 Paynyme, *s* pagan, 1377, *pl* paynymes, 2835, paynymmez, 1544

- Payses, *v pl* weight, load, 3037,
piet payse, overloaded, weighed
 down, 3042
 Payvese, *s pl* pavises, 3625
 Pecez, *s pl* pieces, 1825
 Pechelyne, *s (?)* 1341
 Pekille, *s* a kind of sauce made
 of dipping, wine, mustard, and
 onions, 1027 See the recipe *For*
Pykulle in the *Liber Cure Cucorum*,
 ed Morris, p 31
 Pelid, *v piet* thrust, drove (?),
 3042
 Pelours See Pylours
 Pendes, *v* 3 *s* belongs, 1612,
pl 2624
 Penowne, *s* pennon, flag, 2917,
pl penouns, 2460
 Penselle, *s* small pennon, streamer,
 2076, 2411, *pl* penselles, 2460,
 pensels, 1289
 Percede, *v piet* pierced, 2075
 Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris,
 1637, *s pl* peers
 Perfournede, *p p* performed, 672
 Perrie, 4184, Peirye, 2460, 3461,
s precious stones, jewelry
 Perayfes, *v* 3 *s* perceives, 4224,
piet persayfede, 1631, peisayuede,
 2811
 Persewes, *v* 3 *s* pursues, 2155,
piet persewede, 1476, peisuede,
 1377
 Pertly, *adv* openly, 2917
 Pes, 2411, Pesse, 1542, *s* peace
 Pesane, *s (?)* 3458
 Peté, *s* pity, 2812, 3043
 Payne See Payne
 Pighte, Pyghte, *pp* pitched,
 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c.),
 212, 3354, 3460, adorned (?), 3364
 Pilgram, *s* pilgrim, 3475
 Pilgremage, *s* 3496
 Pillhone hatt, *s* 3460 A kind
 of hat, at one time worn only by
 doctors in theology, but afterwards
 more generally See Peacock's *Re-*
presso, ed Babington, pp 88, 89,
 and Glossary
 Piloum, *s* robber, 2533
 Plas, *s* place, 4013
 Plache, *s* marshy place, 2798
 Platers, *s pl* dishes, 182
 Platez, *s pl* plates, 2075
 Plattes, *s pl* purple cloths, 2478
 "Platta, purpura, vel pannus pur-
 purei coloris" *Ducange* On more
 probably *plattes* is a *pl v* meaning,
 strike, beat A S *plattian*
 Playne, *adj* level, smooth, 1290
 Playsterede, *adj* plastered, 3042
 Plenerly, *adv* fully, 2608, 3498
 Plenteuous, *adj* abundant, 1028
 Plesande, *v p* pleasing, pleasant,
 11, 4019
 Plesauce, *s* delight, enjoyment,
 3140
 Pleyne, *v* complain, 1217
 Plumpe, *s* crowd, 2199
 Plyande, *adj* flexible, 777
 Plytte, *s* condition, 683
 Pomarie, *s* fruit-garden, orchard,
 3364
 Pome, *s* globe, 3354
 Pomelle, *s* small globe (probably
 used as an ornament on a flag-
 staff), 1289
 Pontyficalles, *s pl (?)* bishops,
 4335
 Pople, 100, 1204, Popule, 11, 52,
s people
 Porke despyne, *s* porcupine, 183
 Porkes, *s pl* swine, 3121
 Porte, *s* port, 2609, (?) 3625,
pl portes, gates, 503, 568, portez,
 portholes, 749
 Postles, *s pl* apostles, 2413
 Potestate, *s* power, potentate,
 2327

- Poueralles, *v* poor folk, 3120
 Pouere, *adj* poor, 3510
 Pouerte, *s* poverty, 1545
 Pouppou, *s* purple, 1375
 Powere, *v* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155
 Poyne, *v* work upon, toil at, 2624
 Poyntez, *s* *pl* points, 767
 Piaye, *s* prey, booty, 3003, 3010
 Prekande, Prekes, Piekys, Pickkande, &c. *See* Prike
 Preker, Prekkere *See* Prikkere
 Presant, *adj* present, 1257
 Presante, *s* present, 1021
 Piese, *v* press, 1583, 3 *v* preser, 1374, *pret* presede, 2199.
 Piesono, 1546, Presonno, 1632, *s* prison.
 Presonere, *s* prisoner, 2536, *pl* presoners, 1583, 1636
 Presse, *s* crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522
 Preu , *adj* privy, secret, 2005
 Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Pieualyo, 1609, *adv* privily, secretly
 Price, 94, 355, Pris, 500, 569, Pryce, 230, 746, Prys, 2, 718, Pryse, 1636, Prysse, 1545, *adj* precious, worthy, good
 Prike, *v* prick, ride, 2844, 2 *s*. prykkes, 2533, 3 *s* prekez, 2156, prekys, 718, *pl* prekes, 503, *imp* 2 *pl* prekez, 1609, *s* *p* prekande, 1545, prekkande, 2836, *pp* prykyd, pricked, 2648, prykyde, stitched, 3608.
 Prikkere, 2649, Preker, 1374, *s*. rider, horseman, *pl* prekers, 355, 1479, pekkers, 2835
 Pris *See* Price
 Priste, *adj* ready, 1021, 4106
 Pristly, *adv*. readily, quickly, 2762
 Profire, *v* offer battle, 2534, 2 *s* profits, 2533, 3 *s* profers, 1376, 3111
 Profire, 2857, Profyre, 1257, *s*
 Profitabile, *adj* 11
 Proudly, 1374, Proudliche, 1287, Proudliche, 3607, *adv* proudly, splendidly
 Proue, *v* prove, try, test, 1341, 3 *v* proues, 1478, *pl* prouene, 716, proues, 2161, *pp* prouede, 2596
 Proueste, 1611, 1889, Prouoste, 1632, *s* provost
 Prowde, *adj* proud, 2536, gay, splendid, 2076
 Prowesche, *s* advantage, 1958
 Pryce, *adj* *See* Price
 Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, *v* praise, prize
 Prykkes, Prykyde *See* Prike
 Pryme, *s* the first hour of the day, 93, 4105
 Prys, Pryse, *s* *See* Pryce
 Prys, Pryse, Prysse *See* Price
 Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, *s*
 Purchase, *v* gain, acquire, obtain, 3497
 Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, *s*
 Purple, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purpure, 1288, Pourpour, 1375, *s* purple
 Purtrayed, *pp* portrayed, 3607
 Puruayede, *v* *part* provided, furnished, 2932, *pp* puruayede, 1925, 2477
 Purueaunce, *s* provision, providing, 688
 Put, *v* 2535, put of = ward off.
 Pygges, *s* *pl* pigs, 183
 Pyghte *See* Fichte
 Pyke, *s* pike, staff, 3475, *pl* pykes, points, claws, 777
 Pyke, *v* pick, 2 *s* pykes, 2534, pyke vp, 1636

- Pylotes, *s pl* pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037
 Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, *s pl* (?) archers, or men who worked the engines
 Pymment, *s* a kind of drink, 1028
 Pyne, *s* suffering, 3043
 Pynne, *v* pin, 4047
 Pypez, *s pl* pipes, fifes, 2030

 Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, *s* health, prosperity
 Quarterde, *pp* quartered, 1736
 Quod, *v pret* quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559
 Quytte, *v* requite, 1788
 Qwarelles, *s pl* bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103
 Qwarters, *s pl* 3389
 Qwaste, *pp* quashed, crushed, 3389
 Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, *pron* what.
 Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, 3261, *adv* cunningly
 Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 48, Qwhene, 407, *adv* when
 Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, *s* queen
 Qwerte *See* Quarto
 Qwhene *See* Qwen
 Qwhilles, 4160, Qwhyle, 553, Qwhylles, 3480, 3651, 3810, Qwylls, 3505, *adv* whilst, while, qwylls, 4047, qwylls, 4007, until
 Qwyke, 1736, Qwykke, 3810, *adj* alive
 Qwylls, Qwylls *See* Qwhilles
 Qwyne, *adv* whence, 3503
 Qwythene, 4157, properly means *whence*, in this passage it seems to be miswritten for *Qwyne* = O that! Compare "Whyne myghte I" = "O that I might," l 703

 See the preface to Hampolc's *Pricke of Conscience*, ed Morris, pp xxv and xxvi

 Raas, *v* tear, pluck away, 362, *pret* rasede, tore, 2984
 Racches, *s pl* hounds, 3999
 Rade, *adv* frightened, 1995, 2881
 Rade, *s* fear, dread, 3896
 Rade *See* Ryde
 Radly, *adv* quickly, 1529, 3815
 A S hrædlice
 Radnesse, *s* fear, dread, terror, 120, 310
 Raghte *See* Reche
 Raake, 1525, Rayke, 2985, course, path
 Raissede, *pp* raised, 2057
 Rane *See* Ryne
 Ranez, *s pl* thickets, brushwood, 923 *See* Ronez in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ed Morris, l 1466
 Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2188, *adj* rank, strong
 Rankour, *s* 1666
 Raply, *adv* swiftly, 1763
 Rappyd, *v met* rapped, smote, 785
 Rarede, *v pret* roared, 784, 1124
 Rasches, *v pl* dash, 2107
 Rasede *See* Raas
 Raskaille, *s* rabble, 2881
 Rathe, *adj* swift, quick, 2550
 Rathe, *adv* quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1668, 2022
 Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, *adv* quickly
 Raughte *See* Reche
 Raunsake, *v* search, 4304, 3 *s* ransakes, 3939, *pl* ransakes, 1884, *imp* 2 *pl* rawnsakes
 Raunsone, *s* ransom, 1528

- Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawn-
 sone, 3275, *v* ransom, levy ran-
 som upon, *pret* raunsounde, 293,
 329, *pp* raunsound, 100, rawn-
 sonede, 2667
 Rauschett, *v pret* ravished, 294
 Rawe, *s* row, on rawe = in a
 row, in order, one after the other,
 238, 633, 1292
 Rawghte *See* Reche
 Rawmpyde, *v pret* ramped, 794
 Rawndoune, *s* swiftmess, violence,
 impetuosity, 2985 *See* Randon in
 Roquefort
 Rawnsakes *See* Raunsake
 Rawnsone *See* Raunsone
 Rayke, *v* proceed, go, 3 & raykes,
 1762, raykez, 889, 1057, *pret* ray-
 kede, 237, & *p* raykande, 3169
 Rayke, *s* *See* Raik
 Raylde, *pp* clothed, covered,
 3263
 Raymede, *pp* (?) 100 Halliwell
 has, "Rame To rob, or plunder"
 Raythely *See* Rathly
 Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411,
 Rialle, 1993, Ryalle, 53, 74, 2138,
 Ryealle, 17, *adj* royal, kingly,
 noble, *superl* realeste, 175, 1410
 Realtee, *s* royalty, 155, 228, 423,
pl ryalltes, 3214, ryalltez 1665,
 royaltez, 4005
 Rebanes, *s pl* ribbons, 3255
 Rebawde, *s* ribald, rascal, vaga-
 bond, 1333, *pl* rebawdez, 1416,
 1705
 Rebawdous, *adj* ribald, 456
 Rebelle, *adj* rebellious, 2040
 Rebuke, *v* 1333, *pp* rebukkede,
 4283, rebuyked, 1445, rebuykkyde,
 2234, rebuylyde, 867, 1705, 2153
 Reche, *v* reach, stretch forth the
 hand in giving or receiving, hence,
 hand over, give, take, draw, &c, 3
 & reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792,
pret raghte, 2766, raughte, 1527,
 1884, 3352, rawghte, 3156, rechede,
 1090, 3350, 4218, *pp* raghte,
 2666, rechide, 1013
 Reched, *s* (?) richness, 3263
 Reches, *s* riches, wealth, 2667,
 3571
 Recheste, *adj* richest, 155
 Reconsailliez, *v* 3 *s* reconciles,
 3130
 Recicaunt, *adj* recreant, 2334
 Red, 2932 *See* Rede, *v*
 Reddour, *s* fear, dread, 109, 485,
 1418 *Su* Goth *rædde*, fear
 Reddour, *s* rigour, 1456 *O Fr*
redour, reddur, rigour, severity
 Rede, 550, 2369, Red, 2932, *v*
 advise, interpret, 3228, *pp* rede,
 discerned, 2921
 Rede, 995, 2144, Reelde, 3457,
 Reede, 795, 1526, *adj* red
 Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363,
 Redyly, 1207, 1526, *adv* readily,
 quickly
 Redene *See* Ryde.
 Redy, *v*. make ready, prepare,
 4137, *pl* redycs, 1427
 Redyne *See* Ryde.
 Reedde *See* Rede
 Refe, *v* rob, take away, deprive
 of, *pret* refede, 959, refte, 295,
 1475, *pp* refede, 1820, refte,
 1206, 1733, rewede, 3315
 Regale, *s* regalia, 4207
 Regestre, *s* register, 113
 Reghte, *adv* right, 1057, 1668,
 just, 1301
 Reghttes, *v* 3 *s* rights, puts to
 rights, 3815, *pl* reghttez, 1454,
 ryghttene, 3618
 Regne, 398, Regnne, 4005,
 Ryngne, 3214, *v* reign, 3 *s* regnes,
 310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266,
pl rengnez, 865, *pret* regnède,
 293, 3273, rengnede, 3272, reynede,
 175, ryngnede, 228, & *p* regnande,
 2665

- Rehersene, *v* relate, tell, say, 3229, 3 *s* reheisys, 3206, *pret* rehersede, 1666
- Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, *v* 3 *s* cheers, *pret* rehetede, 221 O Fr *rehaüter*
- Reke, *s* smoke, 1041
- Rekeneste, *adj* (?) quickest, readiest, 4081 A S *recene*, soon, quickly
- Rekenyng, 1678, Rekkynyng, 102, *s* reckoning, account
- Rekke, *v* reck, care, 995, 2040, *pret* roughte, cared for, 3275
- Rekkene, *v* reckon, 1275, 2334
- Reklesse, *adj* reckless, careless, 922, 1670
- Relayes, *v* *pl* relax, slacken, 1529
- Releus, *v* *pl* rally, 2278, *pret* releuyde, 2234, *pp* releuede, 1207
- Relhkes, *s* *pl* relics, 4207
- Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, *v* *pl* rally, *pret* relyede, 1391
- Relys, *v* 3 *s* reels, 2794
- Remenaunt, *s* remnant, remainder, 1553
- Remmes *See* Rewme
- Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, *v* 3 *s* shouts, cries out, *pret* remyd, 3894
- Remowes, *v* 3 *s* removes, 1761
- Renayede, *adj* renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892
- Rengnede, Rengnez *See* Regne
- Renke, *s* man, 1057, *pl* renkes, 1410, renkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, renkkez, 2135
- Rennene, *v* *pl* run, 200
- Rente, *s* rent, tribute, 465; *pl* rentez, 103, 995, renttez, 1509, 1667
- Rependez, *v* *pl* hang back, 2107
- Repent, *v* *pret* repented, 3894, repent, *impers* *v* 1392
- Requit, *pp* paid, 1680
- Rere, *v* move, 2810 Cf Dan *rore sig*, to bestir oneself
- Rereage, *s* amials, 1680
- Rerebrace, *s* 2566 "From the French *arriere-bras* That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow In the reign of Edward II only one plate at fist protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail, but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps" Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*
- Rererys, *v* 3 *s* rears, 4249, *pp* rereryde, 4280
- Rerewarde, *s* rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762
- Resaywe, *v* receive, 3587
- Rescewe, 1752, Reschewe, 2243, Rescove, 4131, *v* rescue, *pp* reschowede, 363
- Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Rescove, 1953, Rescows, 4137, *s* rescue, deliverance
- Resonabillye, *adv* reasonably, 1508
- Resone, 2041, Resoune, 174, 1668, *s* reason, account
- Restreynede, *pp* restrained, 2041
- Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, *s* *pl* retainers, followers
- Retournes, *v* *pl* turn back, 1395
- Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuer, 424, Ryuer, 1292, *s* river.
- Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, *v* hunt by a river "*Rivier, rivièr, chasser en rivière*" *Burguy* under *Rive*
- Reuelle, *s* 1667

- Reuelle, *v* 1969
 Reuengyde, *pp* avenged, 1204
 Reuerssede, *v pret* turned down, 2070, *pp* reueisside, turned up, trimmed, 3255
 Reuertede, *v pret* turned over, 2918
 Reueste, *pp* dressed, clothed, 4334
 Rewdly *See* Ruydly
 Rewe, *v* have pity, 866, cause regret, 1678, 3 *s* rewes, 3272
 Rewede *See* Refe
 Rewfulle, *adj* rueful, pitiful, sad, 1019
 Rewfully, *adv* ruefully, sadly, 1523
 Rewghe *See* Rewthe.
 Rewllez, 1672, Rewlys, 509, *v* 3 *s* rules, governs, *pl* rewles, 1455, rewlys, 726, *pp* rewlyde, 52
 Rewme, *s* realm, 1207, *pl* rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49
 Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, *s* pity, compassion, sorrow, rewthe werkes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894
 Reynede *See* Regne
 Reyuere *See* Reuare
 Rialle *See* Reale
 Riatours, *s pl* ravagers, 2034
 Richely, *adv* 173
 Richeste, *adj* 147.
 Ragge, *s* back, 800 A.S. *hrycg*.
 Rightene, *v pl* put right, 1525
 Rightewisly, *adv* righteously, 1554
 Rightwis, *adj* righteous, 3989
 Riotes *See* Ryot
 Riotous *See* Ryotous
 Raste, 1969, Ryste, 108, 423, *v* rest, 3 *s* rystez, 2170, *pret* risted, 485, rystede, 53, *pp* riste, 2235, ryste, 1428
 Rittez, 2138, Ritis, 3753, *v pl* break, tear
 Roche, *s* rock, 1146, 3601
 Rochelle, *s* a kind of wine, 203
 Rode *See* Ryde
 Rode, *s* rood, cross, 3217, 3559 A.S. *rod*.
 Rog, *s* (?) crowd, 3272 *See* roge in Ibre
 Roggede, *v pret* shook, 784
 Rollede, *pp* enrolled, 2641
 Romawns, *s pl* romances, 3200
 Romede, *v pret* roared, 784
 Romyez, *v* 3 *s* roars, 888, *pret* romyde, 1124
 Rongene. *See* Rynge
 Ronnene *See* Ryne
 Roo, *s* rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304 A.S. *row*
 Roo, *s* wheel, 3374 Fr. *roue*, Lat. *rota*
 Roo, *s* roe, 922, 4000 A.S. *rd*
 Roode *See* Ryde
 Roselde, 2880, Rosselde, 2793, *adj* (?) brandished, shaken Cf. Sw. *ruskla*, to shake, E. *rustle*
 Rosers, *s pl* rosetrees, 923
 Rosse, *s* rose, 3457
 Rosselde *See* Roselde
 Rossete, *adj* russet, 237
 Rostez, *s pl* roasts, 1049
 Roughte *See* Rekke
 ROUNGENE *See* Rynge
 Rowelle, *s* wheel, 3262 "*Roele, rouele, roelle, roue, petite roue, rond, cercle, de rotula.*" *Burguy*
 Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, *adj* roomy, spacious
 Rowte, *v* sleep, lit. snore, 108
 Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, *s* company, troop

Rowtte, *s* road, way, 379
 Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200,
 3273, *s* king Fr 101, Lat 101
 Royaltez *See* Realtee
 Rungene *See* Ryngne
 Rusche, *v* rush, fall, cast, hurl,
 1339, thrust, 2880, 3 *s* rusches,
 falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes,
 392, ruysches, 2983, *pl* rusches,
 2550, ruysches, hurl, dash, 2913,
pret ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte,
 120
 Rusclede, *adj* (?) ruckled, wrin-
 kled, 1096 *Cf* *ruck* in Wedg-
 wood
 Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057,
 1332, *adj* rude
 Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche,
 1877, Rewdly, 2810, *adv* rudely
 Ruysches, Ruysches *See* Rusche
 Ryalle *See* Reale
 Ryalltez *See* Realtee
 Ryally, *adv* royally, 1472, 3613
 Rybbez, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, *s*
pl ribs
 Ryche, *adj* 108, 833
 Rydde, *adj* fierce, 4117 *See*
Rid in Jamieson
 Ryde, *v* ride, 1876, 3 *s* ryddis,
 3540, *pl* ryddez, 2849, rydene,
 2809, *pret* rade, 294, 853, rode,
 1953, roode, 920, *pret* *pl* redene,
 485, *pp* redene, 2598, redyne,
 52, 100
 Ryealle *See* Reale
 Ryfe, 362, Rywe, 2439, *v* rive,
 rend, split, pierce, 3 *s* ryfez, 794,
 1474, ryvys, 3824, *pl* ryffes, 2913
 Ryghte, *adv* straight, 889
 Ryghttene *See* Reghttes
 Ryghttez, 894, 1439, Ryghtys,
 610, *s* *pl*
 Ryghtwise, *adj* righteous, 866
 Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884,
s *pl* trees

Ryne, *v* run, 109, 3990, 3 *s*
 rynnez, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540,
pret rane, 1526, 2881, rynnyde,
 2965, rynnyd, 920, *pret* *pl* ron-
 nene, 922, *i p* rynnande, 392,
 795
 Ryngne, *v* ring, 4332, *pp* rungene,
 462, roungene, 1587, rongene, 976
 Ryngne, Ryngnede, Ryngnes
See Regne
 Rynisch, *adj* either Rhemish, or
 strange, foreign, 203 *See* *Rumisch*
 in Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*
 Rynnande, Rynnez, Rynnyde, &c
See Ryne
 Rynsede, *pp* rnsed, 3375
 Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341,
 Ryotte, 923, 1883, *v* ravage, (with
 the reflexive pronoun) run riot, 3
s ryotter, 619, ryotes, 3172
 Ryotous, 379, 432, Riotous, 363,
adj
 Ryotte, *s* uncontrolled license,
 riot, 294, 412, *pl* ryotes, 388,
 ryotes, 3893
 Rype, *v* search, 1877, 3 *s* rypes,
 3940
 Rysses, *v* 3 *s* rises, 3660
 Ryste, Rystede, &c *See* Riste
 Ryues, *s* *pl* (?) 1764
 Ryvaye *See* Reuaye
 Ryve (= aryve), *v* land, 3896
 Ryvys, Rywe *See* Ryfe
 Sa, *adv* so, 3796, 3870
 Sabyll, 771, Sable, 2027,
 sable, black
 Sadde, *adj* satisfied, 847 *Ger*
satt
 Sade, *adj* sad, 3948, *comp* sad-
 dare, 3289
 Sadilles, 1801, Sadylls, 1855, *s*,
pl saddles
 Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Saddly,
 1458, *adv*

- Safe, *v* save, 3051
 Sagge, *adj* sage, wise, 814
 Saghetylle, *v* become reconciled, 330
 Saise, *v* 3 *s* says, 1162, *imp* 2
pl saise, 1267
 Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3399, *adj* innocent
 Sale, *s* hall, 82, 91, 134, 409
 Salle, 1364 *Read* Sable
 Salle, *v* shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152
 Salve, *v* salute, 3 *s* saluz, 87, *pret* saluzed, 82, saluzede, 933
 Salve, *s* salve, *pl* saluez, 2691
 Salve, *v* heal, 932, *pp* saluede, 2007
 Sandes, 513 Perhaps a mistake for *sandesman*
 Sandes mane, *s* messenger, 1419, *pl* sandismene, 266
 Sae, *adv* sore, sorely, 134, 2248
 Satanase, *s* Satan, 3812
 Satilles, *v* *pl* settle, descend, 2465
 Saughte, *s* peace, reconciliation, 1007, 1548, 3052
 Saule, 666, 1062, Saulle, 2192, Sawle, 1169, *s* soul
 Saunke, *s* blood, 179
 Sawghte, *adj* at peace, reconciled, peaceable, 3194, 4042
 Sawle *See* Saule
 Sawtere, 3316, Sawture, 3421, *s* psalter
 Sawturoire, *s* saltire, one of the ordinaries in heraldry, 4182
 Sayne, *v* bless, cross (oneself), 969, *pret* sayned, 1042, saynned, 966
 Scathylle *See* Skathelle
 Schadande, *v* *p* shedding, flowing, 3845
 Schafte, *s* shaft (of a spear), 2169
 Schaft-monle, *s* 2546, 3813, 4232 "A measure, from the top of the extended thumb to the utmost part of the palm, which in a tall man is about six inches, or half a foot"—Bosworth's A S Diet under *Scaft mound*
 Schake, *v* shake, proceed, 1213, 1992
 Schakke, *s* sudden movement, 1759
 Schalke = chalk, 1226, 1363
 Schalke, *s* man, 1098, 2170, *pl* schukes, 1557, schalkez, 2211
 Schalle, *v* shall, 7, 148, shalt, 102
 Schalyde, *pp* scaled, 766
 Schamely, *adv* shamefully, 2616
 Schamesdede, *s* deed of shame, 3
 Schanke, *s* shank, leg, 3845, *pl* schankez, 1099
 Schape, *v* shape, form, prepare, 312, 1321, 2558, 3400, *pret* schoupe, 3599
 Schappely, *adv* fitly, 2333
 Schappes, *v* 3 *s* shapes, destines, 1716
 Schare *See* Schere
 Schailette, *s* scarlet, 3459
 Scharpe, *s* 3841
 Scharpely, *adv* sharply, smartly, 1212, 2429, 2456
 Schathe *See* Skathe
 Schawe, 2406 *Read* Schewe
 Schawe, *s* wood, 1765, *pl* schawes, 1723, 1760
 Schaylande, *adj* (?) scaly, 1098
 Schede, 2922, Schedde 3398, *v* *pret* shed, poured
 Scheene, 1760, 2457, Schene, 2429, 3747, Schenne, 2676, *adj* fair, beautiful
 Scheftene, Schoftys *See* Skyfte
 Schelde, 914, 1110, Schilde, 3714, Schylde, 2984, *s* shield, *pl* scheldez, 595, scheldys, 2545

Schelde, *v* shield, 3
 Scheldyde, *adj* having shields, 1856
 Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltrone, 1856, Sheltrone, 1992, *s* troop, band, *pl* schiltrouns, 1765, schiltrouns, 1813, 2210 The older form is *schiltrum* A S *scyld*, shield, *truma*, troop
 Schenchipe, *s* disgrace, 4299
 Schende, *v* ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435
 Schene See Scheene
 Schepe, *s* sheep, 2922
 Schere, *v* shear, cut, 2546, 3 *s* scherys, 3600, *pret* schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545
 Scheienkene See Schrenkys
 Schethede, *pp* sheathed, 3852
 Scheuerede, *v* *pret* shivered, split, 1813, *pp* scheueride, 3748
 Schewe, *v* show, 191, 1183, appear, 1717, *imp* schewene, 2457
 Schewynge, *s* showing, manifestation, 3401
 Schifte, Schiftys See Skyfte
 Schilde See Schelde
 Schiltrone, Schiltrouns See Scheltrone
 Schippemene, *s* *pl* shipmen, sailors, 1212
 Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, *adj* bright
 Schirreues, *s*, *pl* sheriffs, 725
 Scho, *pron* she, 853, 860
 Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodurde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, *v* *pret* shuddered, shook, quivered
 Schokke, *v* shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114, 3 *s* schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235, *pl* schokkes, 1759
 Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, *v* should

Schone, *s* *pl* shoes, 3471
 Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, *v* shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way, 3 *s* schownnes, 3599
 Schonte, Schontez See Schountes
 Schore, *s* score, 2344, 3577
 Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325
 Schotande See Schotte
 Schotene, *v* *pl* shut, 749
 Schotte, *v* shoot, 1992, *pl* schottes, 2426, *pret* schotte, 1765, *i* *p* schotande, 1766
 Schotte, *s* shot, shooting, 2105, 2428, *pl* schotys, 3627
 Schotte-mene, *s* *pl* shooters, 2467
 Schouelle-fotede, *adj* shovel-footed, 1098
 Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, *v* *pret* *pl* shaved
 Schoulders, *s* *pl* shoulders, 2546
 Schoune See Schone
 Schountes, 3816, Schownntes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, *v* 3 *s* turns aside, shinks away, hesitates, delays, *pl* schontez, 1759, *pret* schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736, *imp* 2 *s* schunte, 1324
 Schoupe See Schape
 Schove, *v* shove, thrust, 3847
 Schowande, *v*, *p* (?) shuffling, 1099.
 Schownnes See Schone
 Schownntes See Schountes
 Schragges, *s* *pl* jagged ends, 3473
 Schrede, *v* *pret* cut, 2211, 4167, *pp* schrede, 2688
 Schiede, 3991, Schreede, 767, *pp* clothed
 Schredetz, 905, Schredys, 3473, *s* *pl* shreds
 Schrenkys, *v* 3 *s* shrinks, 4234; *pl* scherenkene, 2105, *pp*

- schrenkede, wrinkled, 2211, *v p*
 schrenkande, wrinkling, 1857
- Schrewe, *s* wicked person, 2779
- Schrfte, *s* shrit, confession, 2588
- Schrinkande, *v p* shrinking,
 wrinkling, 767
- Schiowde, *s* dress, 3628 A S
scrūd, garment
- Schryfe, *v* confess, 3400
- Schrympe, *s* deformed creature,
 monster (applied to a dragon), 767
- Schryned, *p p* shrined, 3991
- Schulde, *v* should, 3183, 3791
- Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldrys, 3294,
 Shoulders, 2546, *s pl* shoulders
- Schunte, Schuntes *See* Schountes
- Schwede = schewede, showed,
 4233
- Schyfte *See* Skyfte
- Schylde *See* Schelde
- Schynbawde, *s* 3846, seems to
 mean the *greave* or shin-plate, but
 the form of the word leads one to
 think that it originally meant *himbelt*,
 probably a piece of chain-armour
 or other defence bound round
 the leg *See* Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*,
 ed Madden Compare
 Eng *baldrick* and Lat *balteus*
 "He, and his gambesouns, glomede
 als gledys,
 With graynes of rubyes, that gray-
 thede were gaye
 And his schene schynbawdes,
 scharpe for to schrede"
The Awentyrs of Arthure, ed
 Madden, stanza xxxi
- Schyre *See* Schire
- Scoulders, 766 *Read* Shoulders
- Scippe, *s* 3474
- Seche, Sechis *See* Seke.
- See, *s* seat, 3291, 3350
- See, *s* sea, 490, 1402
- Seegge, *s* seat, proper place,
 2478.
- Seegge *See* Segge
- Seese, *v pl* see, 1405
- Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574,
s man, *pl* seggcz, 1120, 1422
 A S *seeg*
- Segge, 355, *s* siege
- Seggede, *v pret* besieged, 3011
- Segnourry, *s* lordship, 528
- Sekadrisses, *s. pl* 2283 There
 is surely some mistake here, per-
 haps we ought to read *cohadrilles*
 = crocodiles (compare Span *coco-*
drillo) or *cohadisses*, which may
 have the same meaning, since Ro-
 quefort gives, "*Cocutric, cocutric*
Crocodile" Either suits the allit-
 eration, gives some sense, and
 might by a slight mistake of the
 scribe be turned into *schadrisses*,
 which gives no sense at all Croco-
 diles in a Roman camp are not
 more out of place than camels and
 elephants are when crossing the
 Alps with coffins on their backs!
See p 64
- Seke, *adj* sick, 1574
- Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche,
 3233, *v* seck, make for, go (to-
 wards), 2 *s* sechis, 3507, *pret*
soghte, 1041, *soughte*, 720, 2170,
inf sekene, 898, *p p* soghte, 1171.
- Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313,
 Sekyre, 478, 551, *adj* sure, safe,
 trusty, *comp* sekeare, 3289,
superl sekereste, 1492
- Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499,
 Sekyrly, 439, 1420, *adv* surely,
 certainly, safely
- Sekire, *v* ensure, 2585, 3804
- Sektour, *s* executor, 665.
- Selcouthe, 75, 1298, 3531, Sel-
 kouthe, 1948, *adj* strange, rare
- Seldene, *adv* seldom, 1163
- Sele, *s* seal, 85
- Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8,
 Seluene, 10, 34, self
- Selkouthe *See* Selcouthe.

- Selkouthely, *adv* strangely, 3252
 Selkylde, 3356 Perhaps mis-
 written for 'Serkyilde,' encircled
 Seluene, Seluyne *See* Selfene
 Semblant, *s* show, splendour, 75,
 410
 Semble, *v* assemble, gather, meet,
 63, 967, *pl* sembles, 3748, *pret*
 sembled, 409, 1457, *pp* sem-
 blyde, 70
 Semes, 1672, Semez, 133, 1162,
 Semys, 1418, *impers v* seems,
pret semede, 123, semyde, 193 It
 is often used with the objective
 case of the personal pronouns the
 semes = thou seemest, 1672, them
 semyde = they seemed, 193
 Semliche, 3947, Semlyche, 655,
 Semly, 410, 1949, *adj* seemly,
 comely, goodly
 Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787,
adv in a comely manner, well
 Sen, 127, 142, Sene, 526, 952,
adv or conj since
 Sendelle, *s* fine linen, 2299
 Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471,
 2592, Sengly, 3729, *adv* singly,
 alone
 Sent, *s* scent, 1040
 Sent, *s* assent, consent, 1628,
 2615, 3065
 Sepulture, *s* burial, 4340
 Sere, *adj* various, diverse, separ-
 ate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195
 Serfe, *v* serve, 1220, *pret* ser-
 fede, 892
 Serfede, 1068 *See* Serues
 Sergeaunt, *s* servant, 632, *pl*
 sergeantes, 1173
 Serte, *s* desert, 2926, *pl* sertes,
 513 Compare *serve* for *deserve*.
 Seruez, *v pl* serve, 1168.
 Serues, *v pl* deserve, 1315, *pp*
 seruade, 2590, serfede, 1068
 Ses, *v 3 s* sees, 3941
 Sesez, *v 3 s* seizes, 1500
 Seside, *v pret* put in possession,
 3065, *pp* sessede, 2608
 Sessede, *v pret* ceased, 2132
 Sesyne, *s* seizin, 3588
 Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, *s* seat
 Seterdaye, *s* Saturday, 1550,
 3176
 Sethene *See* Sythene
 Setille, *s* settle, seat, 3270
 Seuende, *adj* seventh, 488
 Seuenschore, seven score, 3788
 Seuenyghte, *s* week, 153, 380,
 3182
 Sewes, *s pl* stews, pottages, 192
 Sewe, *v* follow, 2927, *pret*
 sewede, 3288, *i p* sewande, 81
 Sex, *adj* six, 354, 380, *sex*
sum = six in all, 471
 Sexte, *adj* sixth, 3316, 3416
 Sextene, *adj* sixteen, 81, 105
 Sexti, Sexty, *adj* sixty, 179,
 210, 601
 Sexti-faulde, *adj* sixtyfold, 2299
 Seyne, *s* sign, 2055, 2870
 Seyne, *pp* seen, 3985
 Seyne, *adv* afterwards, 188, 192,
 282, 1591.
 Seyngnour, 3313, Seynꝝowre,
 2419, *s* lord, *pl* seynowres, 1577
 Seynt, *s* saint, 1169, *pl* seyntez,
 1163, 1168
 Sheltrone *See* Scheltrone
 Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891,
 Sybbe, 681, *adj* related, akin.
 Siche. *See* Swylke
 Siluere, *s* 1165
 Silueryne, *adj* made of silver,
 185
 Singulere, *adj* single, by himself,
 172
 Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134,
s lord.

- Sittande, *v* *p* becoming, suitable, 953, 1501
 Sittandly, *adv* becomingly, 159
 Sittene, *pp* sat, 3291
 Skalopis, *s pl* scallop-shells, 3474
 Skape, *v* escape, 1562
 Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, *s* hurt, damage
 Skathelle, 1642, Scathylle, 32, *adj* hurtful
 Skathlye, *adj* hurtful, 1562
 Skayles, *v* 3 *s* scales, 3034
 Skayies, *v pl* scare, frighten, 2468
 Skewe, *v* eschew, escape, 1562
 Skiftez *See* Skyfte
 Skilfulle, *adj* reasonable, right, 1561
 Skomfite, *s* discomfit, 2335
 Skomfite, *pp* discomfited, 1644
 Skomfitoure, *s* discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644
 Skomfytüre, *s* discomfiture, 1561.
 Skorne, *v* scorn, 1642, *pret* skornede, 1840
 Skornefulle, *adj* 1840
 Skotifers, 3034, Skottefers, 2468, *s pl* shield-bearers Compare Lat *scutiferi*, squares
 Skouerours, *s pl* explorers, scouts, 3118.
 Skoulkery, *s* lurking, ambush, 1644
 Skowtte-waches, *s pl* sentinels, 2468
 Skrogges, 1641, Skroggez, 1642, *s pl* stunted bushes, shrubs *See* *scrog*
 Skulker, *s* 3119
 Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, *v* shift, dispose, manage, 3
s skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32, *pl* skyfties, 3117, schiftys, 725, schef-
 tene, 3627, scheftys, 2156, schyfte, 3317, *imp* 2 *s* schyft, 1717
 Skyllle, *s* reason, skill, 32
 Skyrmys, *v pl* light, skirmish, 2167
 Slade, *s* green valley, 2978
 Slakes, *v* 3 *s* slackens, loosens, 3220
 Slakkes, *s pl* (?) pools of water in slack or hollow places, 3719
 Slale, *adj* (?) 3117
 Slaughte, *s* slaughter, 2675
 Slawe, *adj* slow, dull, 4044
 Slawyne, *s* slavein, pilgrim's mantle, 3174
 Slayne, *pp* slain, 1824, 2977
 Sleghe, *adj* sly, cunning, clever, 2978
 Sleghte, 3220, Sleghte, 3418, 4015, *s* sleight, skill, craft
 Sleghte, *pp* shipped, 2675
 Slely, 3855, Sleyghly, 2975, Sleyghely, 1321, *adv* slyly, prudently, cleverly
 Slepe, *v* sleep, 4044
 Sleppes, *v* 3 *s* slaps, 2976, *pret* sleppid, 3851
 Slewe, *v pret* 3418
 Slewthe, *s* sloth, 3221.
 Sleyghly, Sleyghely *See* Slely
 Sleyghte *See* Sleghte
 Slode, *v pret* slid, 3854
 Slomowre, *s* slumber, 3221
 Slomyre, *v* slumber, 4044
 Slongene, *pp* slung, 2978, 4321
 Sloppes, *s pl* pools, 3923
 Slote, 2254, Slotte, 2975, *s* pit of the stomach
 Slottede, *pp* stabbed in the pit of the stomach, 3853
 Slonghe, 23, Slowghe, 4045, Slewe, 3418, *v pret* slew
 Slowde, *s* slush, sludge, 3719

- Slowghe *See* Sloughe
 Slydande, *v p* sliding, 2976
 Slyke, *adj* such, 3719 *See* Swylke
 Slynge, *v 3 s* slings, throws, 3220, 3855
 Slytte, *s* slit, 3853
 Slyttes, *v 3 s* slits, 2254, 2975
 Smyttes, 2564, Smyttez, 1148, *v 3 s* smites
 Snelle, *adj* swift, 57.
 Socoure, *v* succour, 2276
 Socoure, 2317, Socure, 1438, *s* succour
 Sodaynly, 80, 599, 1422, Sodaynliche, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1980, *adv* suddenly
 Softe, *adj* softening, melting, 3983
 Softene, *v* soften, ease, 2691
 Soghte *See* Seke
 Soiorne, 4027, Soiourne, 4042, *v* sojourn
 Solauce, *s* solace, recreation, 239, 659
 Solemply, 3196, 3805, Solempnely, 1948, Solempnylye, 525, *adv* solemnly
 Solempnitee, *s* solemnity, 514
 Som, *adj* some, 3683
 Somercastelle, *s* wooden tower, 3033
 Somme, *s* sum, 448, 2347
 Somond, 1212, Somounde, 525, *v pret* summoned, *pp* somonde, 140, sommonde, 267
 Somouns, *s* summons, 91, 104
 Sonde, *s* something sent, 2511
 Sonde, *s* sand, 3728, 3745
 Sondre, 2182, Sondre, 1123, Sondyre, 1388, 1482, *m s* = asunder
 Sondirwise, *adv* separately, 3529
 Sone, *s* son, 1945
 Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, *adv* soon
 Songene, *v pret pl* sang, 745, 2674
 Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, *s* sun
 Sonondaye, *s* Sunday, 501, 2482
 Soo, *adv* so, 1841
 Sope, *s* sup, hasty meal, 1890
 Soppe, *s* crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729
 Sore, *s* disease, 932
 Sore, *adv* sorely, 1173, *comp* sorere, 1163
 Sorowe, *s* 1138, 2224
 Sorte, *s* troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575, *pl* sortes, 606
 Sothe, *adj* true, 1686, for sothe, truly, 1087
 Sothe, *s* truth, 3229
 Sothely, *adv* truly, 172, 239, 319
 Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, *s* sot
 Soueraygne, *adj* 1167
 Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Soueraygne, 141, *s* sovereign, *pl* souerayngez, 1960
 Soughte *See* Seke
 Souppe *See* Sowpe
 Sowdane, *s* soldan, sultan, 590, 1295, *pl* sowdanes, 593
 Sowdeours, *s pl* hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938
 Sowe, *s* some warlike engine, 3033 *See* Sow in Jamieson
 Sowmes, *s pl* sums, 1627
 Sownde, *adj* 1577
 Sowpe, 1298, Souppe, 3805, *v* sup, *3 s* sowppes, 1025, *pret* sowpped, 409, *i p* sowpande, 1044
 Sowper, *s* supper, 1022

- Sowre 1041 *Read* Sowrs, source
 Sowte *See* Soyte
 Soyte, 81, 3931, Sowte, 3941, *s*
 suit, company
 Spakely, *adv* swiftly, quickly,
 2063
 Spalddyd, *p p* split, 3699
 Spanne, *s* span, 2060
 Spayre, *s* the spare or thin part
 of the body, the waist, 2060
 Specyalle, *adj* 999
 Spede, *v* fare, succeed, 2414,
 speed, hasten, 2416, *pret* spede,
 1794, *p p* spede, 3016
 Speke, *v* speak, 2415, 3 *s*
 spekes, 2063
 Spekes, *s pl* spokes (of a wheel),
 3264, 3311.
 Speltis, *s pl* thin streaks or
 splinters, 3264
 Spencas, *s pl* expenditure, 3163
 Spendyde, *v pret* spent, 235
 Spere, *s* spear, 1794, *pl* sperys,
 1898
 Spere-lenghe, *adj* spearlength, of
 the length of a spear, 3311
 Speryt, *s* spirit, 4327
 Spille, *v* perish, 2415, *pl* spillis,
 destroy, 3159
 Spleene, *s* 2061
 Splent, *s* splint, 2061. "Splents
 In ancient armour, several little
 plates that run over each other,
 and protected the inside of the
 arm" *Halliwel* They were also
 worn on the leg (see Jamieson
 under *Splentis*), and probably on
 other parts of the body
 Splentide, *p p* splinted, adorned
 with splinters, 3264
 Sponene, *p p* spun, 999.
 Spoures, 483, Spurres, 2416, *s*
pl spurs.
 Spraddene. *See* Sprede
 Spiangene *See* Sprynges
 Sprede, *v* spread, 3158, *met*
 sprede, 2062, *pret pl* spraddene,
 3310
 Sprente, 2062, 3310, Sprentyde,
 3700, *v pret* sprang, leapt
 Springande, Sprongene *See*
 Spynge
 Sproulez, *v 3 s* sprawls, 2063
 Sprynges, *v 3 s* springs, 3162,
pl spryngene, 3158, *met pl*
 sprangene, 483, *s p* springande,
 3265, *p p* sprongene, 1943, burst,
 1794, spronngene, 3699
 Spycerye, *s* 162
 Spytte, *s* spite, 270
 Sqwyere, *s* squire, 1179
 Stale, *p p* set, placed, 1926
 Stake, *v* put on a stake, 1178
 Stale, *s* company, troop, 377,
 1355, 1435, 1932, *pl* stales, 1980
 Stalkis, *v 3 s* 3466
 Stam, *s* foreship, 3664
 Stamynce, *s* some part of a ship,
 3658
 Standerde, *s* 2080
 Statte, *s* state, rank, 157
 Steddo, *p p* beset, 2824, 4133
 Stede, *s* stead, place, 1748, 2824
 Stede, *s* steed, horse, 1355, *pl*
 stedes, 1280, stedys, 1488, 1647
 Stekes, *v pl* stick, stab, 3126,
 3 *s* stekys, 3322, *pret* stekede,
 1488
 Stele, *s* steel, 1371, 1487
 Stelene, 1488, 2129, Stelyne,
 1354, *adj* steelen, made of steel
 Stepes, *v 3 s* steps, 1229
 Sterape, 2692, Sterepe, 916, *s*
 stirrup, *pl* sterapes, 3823
 Stere-bourde, 745, Stere-burde,
 3665, *s* starboard
 Sterenefulle, 3824, Sterynfulle,
 2692, *adj* stern, fierce

- Steride, Steris *See* Sture
- Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Sturtez, 1932, Styrtetz, 1152, *v* 3 *s* starts, *pl* stirttes, 2692, *pret* sterte, 916
- Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, *adj* stern, *superl* sterynneste, 3872
- Sterynly, *adv* sternly, 745, 2130
- Sterys *See* Sture
- Steuën, *s* voice, 2531, 4269
- Stewede, *v* *pret* enclosed, 1489
"Estuier Serrer, mettre dans un étui, cacher, enfermer, renfermer, envelopper, emprisonner" — *Roquefort*
- Sture, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v* stir, move, 3 *s* sterys, 917, *pl* steris, 2923, 3658, *pret* steride, 1793, *imp* 2 *pl* stirrez, 1748
- Sturtes, Sturtez *See* Stertez
- Sturttelys, *v* *pl* arrange, 3622
- Stodde, Stode *See* Stondez
- Stokes, *s* *pl* (?) estocs, or stabbing swords, 1436
- Stokes, *v* *pl* stab, 2554 "Estiquer, estiquer Frapper, pousser, casser, rompre, briser" *Roquefort*
- Stokkes, *s* *pl* 3665
- Stonays, *v* *pl* stuns, hits stunning blows, 2118, *pp* stonayede, 1933, 3873
- Stondez, 2090, Stonndys, 3623, *v* *pl* stand, *pret* stode, 1489, 2923, stodde, 4133
- Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467, 4271, *v* 3 *s* becomes foolish, mad, dizzy, or stupid "Estouter, estoutoyer Être fou, imprudent, avoir de la témérité, être insensé, stultescere" *Roquefort* Burguy gives the forms "estoteuer, estouteuer, estuteuer, estoutouer, estotouer," but with the meaning "maltraiter."
- Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488, Stowre, 2086, *s* battle.
- Stownde, *s* tune, 3974, *pl* stowndys, 3888
- Stownntyng, *s* stopping, delay, 491
- Stowre *See* Stour
- Strake *See* Stryke
- Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227, 1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes, 4067, *s* *pl* waters
- Strates, 561, Straytez, 3009, *s* *pl* straits, narrow places
- Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230, *adj* strait, narrow
- Streke, *adv* straight, 1792, 3101
- Strekes, Strekyne *See* Stryke
- Strekez, *v* 3 *s* stretches, 1229, 2085
- Streme, *s* stream, 755, *pl* stremes, 1224
- Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte, 796, *s* strength, strong place, 1230, 1435, *pl* strengthes, forces, 1476, 2242, strenghez, 1827, strengthesis, 3322.
- Strenghely, *adv* strongly, 4096
- Strette, *s* street, road, 3467
- Streynez, *v* 3 *s* exerts, 917
- Strondes *See* Strandez
- Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v* destroy, *pl* stroyene, 3127, *pp* stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205
- Stryke, *v* strike, smite, 3 *s* strykez, 1124, strykkys, 1480, *pl* strykkys, 1411, strekes, 3101, *pret* strake, 2080, 2129, *pret* *pl* strekyne, 755, 3659
- Studyande, *v* *p* studying, 3467
- Stuffe, *v* furnish, 1932, *pl* stuffene, 2369, *pret* stuffede, 3616
- Sturdely, *adv* sturdily, 1104
- Stye, *s* path, 3466
- Styghtylle, *v* order, arrange, 157
- Stynte, *v* cease, 3127
- Styre *See* Sture

- Styrtetz. *See* Stertez
 Subarbe, *s* subuils, 4043, *pl* subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466
 Subgettez *See* Sugett
 Suerddes *See* Swerde
 Sugett, 87, Sugette, 3138, *s* subject, *pl* subgettez, 2314
 Suggourne, *v* sojourn, 153, 354, 1335, 3 *s* suggeourns, 54, suggournez, 624
 Sulayne, *adj* alone, 2592
 Sulde, *v* suby *pret* should, 72, 213, 214
 Sundrye, *v* part, separate, 7
 Suppowelle, *v* support, 2818
 Supprisede, 2616, Supprisede, 1845, Supprysede, 3797, Supprysede, 1951, Suppryside, 1420, *pp* taken unawares, overtaken, surprised
 Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, *s* surcoat
 Surepel, *s* cover, 3317
 Surgyne, *s* surgeon, 4311
 Surrawns, *s* assurance, security, 3181
 Surs, *s* rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468
 Suteleste, *adj* subtlest, 808
 Suyche *See* Swylke
 Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, *s* suit
 Swafres, *v* 3 *s* staggers, 3970
Sc swaver, to walk feebly *Jamieson*
 Swalters, *v* 3 *s* (?) 3924
 Swange, *s* loins, 1129
 Swangene, *v* *pret* *pl* swung, 2146
 Swanke, *v* *pret* toiled, 2961, 3361
 Swape, *s* blow, stroke, 314
 Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, *v* 3 *s* smites, strikes, *pl* swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465, *pret* swappede, 1795
 Swarthe, *s* swaid, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960
 Swathes, *s* *pl* 2508
 Swayne, *s* 3360
 Swefene, *s* dream, 812, *pl* swefennys, 3228
 Swefnynge, *s* dreaming, 759
 Swelte, *v* die, 716, 813, 3 *s* sweltes, 2961, faints, 3969, *pl* swelltez, 1166, *pret* swelte, 2982, *p* sweltand, 2146, sweltande, 1465
 Sweperly, *adv* quickly, nimbly, 1129, 1465 *See* *scipper*, quick, swift, nimble *Jamieson*
 Sweppene, *pp* swept, 2508
 Swerle, *s* sword, 47, 715, *pl* swerdder, 1253, swerddis, 314
 Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, *s* life
 Sweetly, 3970, Sweetly, 1297, *adv* sweetly
 Sweyftly, *adv* swiftly, 3703
 Sweys, *v* 3 *s* sways, 57, *pl* 1467, 3676, 4273
 Swiche. *See* Swylke
 Swoghe, *s* swaying motion, 759
 Swoghe, *s* swoon, 1467
 Swoughe, *s* whirr, 1127
 Swoune, *s* swoon, 3969
 Swounes, *v* 3 *s* swoons, 1127, *p* swounande, 1467, 2960
 Swowynge, *s* sound, 931
 Swyer, *s* squire, 2959, 3703
 Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, *v* *pret* deceived
 Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 967, 1031, Syche, 76, 226, *adj* such.
 Swym, *s* swoon, 4246
 Swynge, *s* swing, 3360, 3676, 4223

- Swyre-bane, *s* neckbone, 2959
 Swythe, *adv* quickly, swiftly, 185, 409, 715, very, 1949, as swythe = immediately, 813
 Sybb, Sybbe *See* Sibb
 Sybredyne, *s* kindred, 691, 4145
 Syche *See* Swylke
 Sydlyngs, *adv* sidelong, side-ways, 1039, 1043
 Sydys, *s* *pl* sides, 2148
 Syene *See* Syne
 Syghande, 3794, Sygheande, 3891, *i* *p* sighing
 Syland, 1297, Sylande, 3794, 4340, *i* *p* flowing.
 Syluerene, *adj* silvern, made of silver, 1949
 Sylure, *s* canopy, 3194
 Symple, *adj* mean, 684, few, 967
 Syne, *s* sin, 3315, 3986
 Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syene, 4083, Synne, 3435, *adv* afterwards
 Syneshalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, *s* seneschal
 Synglere, *s* boar, 3123
 Syngne, *s* sign, 3075
 Syngulere, *adj* single, 826
 Synkande, *i* *p* sinking, 3705
 Synne *See* Syne
 Syr, Syre *See* Sir
 Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, *s* grief, sorrow
 Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Sythyne, 56, 169, Sethene, 1977, *adv* afterwards
 Sythus, *s* *pl* times, 2216
 Syttyne, *p* *p* sat, 511
 Tabyll, *s* table, 53
 Tachementez, *s* *pl* attachments, 1568
 Tachesesede (?), 821
 Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, *i* tackle
 Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, *adj* taught, trained
 Tak, *v* take, 144, take, 307, proceed, go, 3 *s* tase, 1890, takes, *pl* tas, 3203, *pret* tuke, 328, 1359, 2242, *p* *p* takyne, 73, gone
 Tale, *s* number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094
 Talmes, *v* 3 *s* falters, 2581 *Du Talmen*, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense *Sewell's Dictionary*
 Talounez, *s* *pl* talons, claws, 800
 Targe, *s* round shield, *pl* targez, 732 The targe was often emblazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal
 Tarsse, *s* kind of cloth, 3189
 Tarye, *v* tarry, 1703
 Tas, Tase *See* Tak
 Tauernez, *s* *pl* taverns, 1568
 Taulde, *p* *p* told, 2618
 Tawghte *See* Taghte
 Temez, *v* 3 *s* empties, 1801
 Temperalle, *s* 2409
 Tempeste, *v* 2408
 Temporaltee, *s* 1570
 Tende, *adj* heedful, attentive, intent, 1916 *Sc tent*
 Tende, *adj* tenth, 73
 Tene = ten, 1421
 Tene, *s* injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956 *AS teona*
 Tenefulle, *adj* harmful, grievous, 4280
 Tenefully, *adv* grievously, 272, 2345
 Tenes, *v* *pl* harm, vex, annoy, 264 *AS teonan*
 Tente, *s* heed, attention, 3586, 4094

- Tentyly, *adv* heedfully, attentively, 3618
- Teraunt, *s* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842, *pl* terauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tyrauntez, 2408
- Terez, *v* 3 *s* tears, 800, *pl* teiez, 1143
- Teris, 3886, Teys, 3794, *s* *pl* tears
- Tha, 77, 157, 377, Thaa, 1993, *pl* of the
- Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron* a *pl*, *gen* thaire, 1143, 1396, there, 13, 20, thiare, 160, 3191, thire, 19, *obj* thaime, 396, thame, 329, 923, thaym, 2276, 2280, theme, 169, theym, 1886, theyme, 1889
- Than, 1212, 2153, Thane, 64, 196, *adv* then
- Thar, 881, Thare, 60, 102, *adv* there, there = where, 59, 1183
- Thare, *impers* *v* 403, hym thare = he needs
- Thare-aftyre, *adv* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028
- Thareby, 190, Thar-by, 1186, *adv* thereby, beside
- Tharefore, *adv* therefore, 2042
- Thare-in, 1242, Thare-ine, 1254, *adv* therein
- Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj* those
- Thedyre, *adv* thither, 2488
- Thee, *s* thigh, 1046, *pl* theese, 1100
- Theeffe, *s* thief, 1150
- Thees, Theis, Theise *See* This
- Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj* than
- Ther, *adv* there, 884, where, 1131, 1219, there = where, 476
- Ther-aftyre, *adv* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339
- Ther-to, *adv* thereto, also, 181.
- Ther-vndyre, *adv* under it, 1156
- Thes *See* This
- Thethene, *adv* thence, 4345
- Thewes, *s* *pl* virtues, good qualities, 21
- Theyne = thine, 3403
- Theys *See* This
- Thie = thee, 104.
- Thiere, Thire *See* Thai
- Thies, Thiese *See* This
- Thukke, *s* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755, *pl* thykkys, 2216
- Thur, Thire *See* This
- Thurlede, Thurleze *See* Thyrie
- This, *pron* or *adv* 410, *pl* thees, 154, 167, theis, 1604, these, 2044, thes, 48, 1356, theys, 2310, thies, 104, 264, thiese, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thur, 1161, 1164, thure, 993
- Thof *See* Thoghe
- Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2688, *conj* though
- Thoghte *See* Thynkes
- Thole, *v* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150
- Thoos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron* those
- Thorowe, Thorughe *See* Thurghe
- Thorowely, *adv* thoroughly, 3294
- Thorowowte, *prep* throughout, right through, 2170, 2986
- Thosande, 1400, Thosande, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s* thousand.
- Thourghe. *See* Thurghe.
- Thourghe-gyrde, *pp* smitten through, pierced, 3683
- Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj* vehement, eager, *superl* thraeste, 3756
- Thrange, *s* throng, 2217
- Thrawe, *s* throe, pang, 1150
- Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v* *pret* strove

- Thrette, *v* threaten, 3295, 3 *s* thretys, 249
 Thretty, *adj* thirty, 3295
 Thrstis, *v pl* thrust, 3755
 Thioly, *adv* vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332
 Thronge, *v* press, 3755
 Throo, *adj* vehement, 3294
 Throstilles, *s pl* throstles, 930
 Throwene, *p p* thrown, 3694
 Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte
See Thurghe
 Thryfye, *adj* 317
 Thryngez, *v* 3 *s* presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217
 Thrystез, *v* 3 *s* thrusts, 1151
 Thryttene, *adj* thnteen, 2216
 Thurghe, 1, 215, 499, Thourghe, 1792, 2253, Thorughe, 495, Thorowe, 5, 24, Throwghe, 1772, Thrughe, 1413, Thrughte, 390, *prep* through A.S *þurh*
 Thurghe-girde, *p p* smitten through, 1461
 Thursse, *s* giant, 1100 A S *þyrs*
 Thykkys *See* Thikke
 Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thynkkys, 2440, *impers v* seems, seems good, 996, *pret* thoghte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230
 Thyrie, *v* pierce, 1413, 3 *s* thirleze, 2167, *pret* thirlede, 1858, 3890, *p p* thyrlede, 2238, 2688
 Thyzandez *See* Tydandis
 Tide, *s* tme, 3902, *pl* tydez, 753
 Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, *prep* to
 Tiltine, *v pl* tilt, topple, 1144
 Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 744, Tytte, 1891, 2583, *adv* quickly, alls tite = as quickly, at once; immediately
 Tittez, *v* 3 *s* makes totter, 1801
 To, *adv* too, 957, 1200
 To, *conj* till, 3182
 To-briste, *v* burst asunder, 3982
 To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, *adv* together
 Tegers, *s pl* clothes, 178
 Toges, *s pl* togas, 3189
 Toile, *s* tussle, broil, 1802 *Sc tualye*
 Tolle, *s* customs, 1568
 Tolownis, *s pl* (?) tool-makers, 3618
 To-morne, *adv* to-morrow, 1587
 Tonges, *s pl* tongues (of a dragon's tail), 821
 Toppe, *s* top, 1144, head, 801
 Toppe-castelles, *s pl* 3616
 To-rattys, *v pl* rend asunder, 2235
 Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tourfere, 2582, *s* harm, mischief
 Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, *v* 3 *s* turns, *pret* tornede, 3203, tournede, 1052
 To-ruscheez, *v pl* dash asunder, 1428
 To-stonayede, *p p* utterly stunned, 1436
 Tother, *adj* other, 234, 3283
 The first *t* is really part of the article, for *the tother* = that other, just as *the tone* = that one
 Toure, *s* tower, 245, 1890, *pl* toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towres, 3153
 Tourfere *See* Torfere
 Towche, *v* touch, 2067, concern, tell, 3 *s* towchez, 800, 1570, 1591, *pret* towchede, 770, towchude, 841; *s p* towchande, 263
 Towne, *adj* trained, 178
 To-wrythes, *v*, 3 *s* writhes, 3920
 Towwyne, *v pl* draw, haul, 3655

- Toylez, 732, Toyclys, 3616, *s pl*
 (-) gear, tools
 Traise, *v* 3 *s* draws, 1629
 Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976,
adv safely, securely
 Traistez *See* Trayste
 Trappede, *pp* covered with trap-
 pings, 1757, 2150
 Trauilleda, *pp* who have toiled,
 1947
 Trauvalande, 1684, Trauelande,
 1630, *i p* travelling
 Trauayle, *s* labour, 3566
 Traylede, *pp* 250
 Trayne, *s* stratagem, 1630, 3901,
 4192
 Trayne, *v* entice, deceive, 1683
 Trays, *s* trace, track, 4055
 Trayste, *i* trust, 669, 3 *s* traistez,
 1987, 2870, *pret* traystede, 1933,
 3569
 Traystely *See* Traistely
 Traytoute, *s* traitor, 2173, 4055
 Trayuelleda, *pp* toiled, laboured,
 2357
 Trebuta, 114, 2611, Trebutte,
 2344, Tribute, 271, Tributte, 2357,
s
 Tremlande, *i p* trembling, 3899
 Trenchande, *adv* trenchant, sharp,
 3856
 Tresone, *s* treason, treachery,
 1629, 2017
 Tresoure, *s* treasure, 668, 886,
 991
 Trete, *s* (?) row, 3655
 Trett, 250, Trette, 263, 878,
 2932, *v* treat, *pp* trettyd, 407,
 tretide, 3191
 Treunt, *v* steal a march, 1976,
pret treuntede, 3900, *pp* treunt,
 2017
 Trew, 263, 992, Trewe, 879,
 2932, *s* truce
 Trewage, *s* tribute, 2358
 Trewe, *adv* true, 16
 Trewghe *See* Trewthe
 Trewly, *adv* truly, 2610
 Tiewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929,
s truth
 Treyntis (?), 4056
 Tyne *See* Tryne
 Trippe, *v* trip, move lightly, 3713
 Trisene, *v pl* trice (nautical term),
 832
 Tristly, 407, Trystly, 2357, *adv*
 trustly, faithfully
 Tristly, 731, 1262, Trystly, 832,
adv confidently, boldly
 Trofie, 2932, Trofulle, 1702, *v*
 trifle, *i p* trofclande, 1683
 Tromc, *v* troop, 3592 *AS*
truma, a troop
 Trompede, *adv* having trumpets,
 3713
 Trompes, 1757, Tromppez, 1484,
 1947, Troumpcs, 4107, Troump-
 pez, 1702, Trumpeez, 832, *s pl*
 trumpets
 Trouflynge, *s* trifling, 114
 Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe,
 1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, *s* troth,
 fidelity, *pl* trowhes, 2325
 Trow, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693,
v believe
 Trowhe *See* Trouthe
 Trowmpynge, *s* trumpeting, 3191
 Trufles, *s pl* trifles, 89
 Trumppede, *v pret* trumpeted,
 407
 Trumppcz *See* Trompes
 Trusse, *v* truss, pack up, 3592,
stow, *inf* trussene, 1976; *pl*
 trussez, 731, trussene, 3655, *pp*
 trussede, 1702
 Trvsselle, *s* packs, bundles, 3655
 Tryede, *v pret* picked out, se-
 lected, 1947 *Fr trier*

- Trymblyde, *v pret* trembled, 270
 Tryne, *v go*, proceed, trine, 1757,
 3 *s* trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055,
 trynnys, 3901, (*?*) *pret pl* tryne,
 3192, *i p* trynande, 4189
 Trystily *See* Tristaly
 Trystly *See* Tristly
 Tuke *See* Tak
 Tumbellez, *v pl* tumble, 1143
 Tunge, *s* tongue, 1250, 1891
 Turmenttez, *v 2 s* tormentest,
 1954, 3 *s* turmentez, 3153
 Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791,
 s pl teeth
 Twa, *adj* two, 171, 335
 Twys, *adv* twice, 716
 Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands,
 264, Thyzandez, 1567, *s pl* tid-
 ings
 Tyde, *v* betide, happen, 879, 3
 s tyddes, 1703, *pp* tydd, 3654,
 tydde, 3451
 Tydez *See* Tide
 Tykes, *s pl* dogs, 3642, 4258
 Tylle *See* Til
 Tymbyrde, *pp* built, devised,
 3742
 Tymede, *v pret* happened, 3150
 Tyne, *v* lose, 2933, 2 *s* tynnez,
 1954, *pp* tynt, 272, 770, tynte,
 1917, 2345, = perished, 4281
 Tyrauntly, *adv* like a tyrant, 271
 Tyuesday, *s* Tuesday, 3900
 Tyte, Tytt *See* Tite
 Tythdands *See* Tydandis
 Valyaunt, *adj* valiant, 2093
 Vassallage, *s* service, 2048
 Vawewarde, *s* vanguard, 1981
 Velany, *s* villany, 298, 326
 Vencows *See* Venquyse
 Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124,
 adj venomous
 Venge, *v* avenge, 867, *pp*
 vengede, 298, 2264
 Venquyse, 1984, Vencows, 4297,
 i vanquish, *pret* venqwiste, 2093,
 pp venqueste, 3765, venquiste,
 325, venqwyste, 2065
 Ventelde, *v pret* spread sail to
 the wind, 737
 Venymmos *See* Venemus
 Vernacle, *s* a handkerchief said
 to have the print of Christ's face
 upon it, 297, 307
 Vernage, *s* a kind of drink, 204,
 3166
 Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308,
 adv truly
 Verrede, *pp* spotted, 2573
 Vertely, *adv* readily, 3168
 Vertous, Vertouous *See* Vertu-
 ouse
 Vertue, *s* virtue, 215, 4297
 Vertuose, 204, Vertuus, 297,
 Vertouous, 3055, Vertous, 5, *adj*
 virtuous
 Vescounte, Vescownte *See* Vi-
 counte
 Vesage, *s* visage, 137, 3055
 Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, *s*
 visor
 Vesettez, *v 3 s* visits, 1726
 Vesselle, *s* 3071
 Vestoure, *s* clothing, 3071
 Vetaile, *s* victuals, 3071
 Vetaile, *v* victual, 353, 3 *s*
 vetailles, 3165
 Viage, *s* journey, expedition,
 2037, 2493
 Vice, *s* fault, defect, 911.
 Vicounte, 3167, Viscownte, 2047,
 Vescounte, 2024, Vescownte, 1984,
 Vyscownte, 2050, *s*
 Visez, *v 3 s* purposes, 3167
 Vmbeclappes, *v. 3 s* embraces,
 1779

- Vmbegrippys, *v* 3 *s* grasps, 3758, *pret* vmbegrippede, 3911
- Vmbelappes, *v* 3 *s* surrounds, 1819, *pret* vmbylappyde, 3785
- Vmbreie, *s* part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 913, 2217, 3952
- Vn-abaste, *adj* unabashed, not cast down, 1378
- Vnblysside, *adj* unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962
- Vnblythely, *adv* sadly, 1434
- Vnbrydilles, *v* *pl* unbundle, 2509
- Vnclede, *p p* unclothed, 4202
- Vncouere, *v* uncover, 2710, *pret* vncouerde, 739
- Vncouth, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, *adj* unknown, strange
- Vncowpylle, *v* uncouple, 3999
- Vndir-takande, *i p* enterprising, 2723
- Vndone, *p p* 1722, 3752, 3966
- Vndrone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, *s*
- Vndyrtakyng, *s* 3187
- Vne-made, *adj* unmade, 2507
- Vnfayre, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, *adv* badly, ill, unpleasantly
- Vnfaye, *adj* unharmed, sound, 2796
- Vnfers, *adj* unfierce, tame, 4122
- Vnfondyde, *adj* untried, 2485
- Vnfraistede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, *adj* untried
- Vnfrelly, *adv* (?) ignobly, 780
- Vnlordly, *adj* 1313, *adv* 1267
- Vnmete, *adj* unmeet, 4070
- Vnquellyde, *adj* unkilld, 3810
- Vnreken, *adj* (?) unpleasant, 3754
- Vnresonable, *adj* 3452
- Vnryghtwyslye, *adv* unrighteously, 329
- Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1437, 4140, *adj*
- Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtly, 1817, *adv*
- Vnsekyly, *adv* unsafely, 966
- Vnsemy, *adv* unseemly, 1044
- Vnsene, *adj* unseen, 3114
- Vnslily, *adv* unskillfully, clumsily, 979
- Vnsownde, *adj* 3290, 3931, 3942
- Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparly, 235, *adv* unsparingly
- Vntenderly, 1144, Vntenduly, 2575, *adv*
- Vntrewe, *adj* untrue, faithless, 4227
- Vntrewely, *adv* dishonestly, 886
- Vnuenquiste, *adj* unvanquished, 2010
- Vnwemnyde, *adj* unspotted, spotless, 3801
- Vnwittily, *adv* unwisely, 3802
- Vnwynly, *adv* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562
- Vnwyse, *adj* 3817
- Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2091, *v* pass out, pass away, 3 *s* voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974, *pl* voydez, quit, 3168
- Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, *s* mien
Lat *vultus*
- Voyde, *adj* empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911
- Voyde, Voydes, Voydez *See* Voide
- Vpbrayde, *v* 1930
- Vpcynes, *s* *pl* (?) 3675
- Vpe = up, 1119, 1877
- Vrayllede, *p p* 2568 Perhaps for "*Vervelled*, or *Varoelled* — having small rings attached" *Boutell's Heraldry*, p 88

Vse, *v* practise, 1843

Vtas, *s* 625 "The eighth day,
or the space of eight days, after
any festival" *Hallwell*

Vttere, *adv* further out, 2438

Vtters, *v* 3 *s* dismisses, 418

Vttrly, *adv* 3966

Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, *s* screw
Crossbows were drawn back by
means of a screw

Wache, *v* watch, 547, *inf* wac-
chene, 613, *pp* wachede, 1613

Wache, *s* watch, 2499, *pl* wac-
ches, 1356

Wafulle, *adj* woeful, sorrowful,
950, 955

Wagande, *i* *p* wagging, waving,
3660

Wage, *s* pay, 302

Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615,
v hue, engage, wage, stake, 2967

Wagene, *v* wager, 2445

Wakkens, 2370, Wakkenyse, 257,
Waknez, 806, *v* 3 *s* awakes, wak
kenysse, wakens, 3562, *pret* wak-
kenyde, awoke, 3392

Walde, *v* *pret* would, 339, 342,
wouldest, 876, 1035

Wale, *s* gunwale, 740

Wale, *v* choose, 181

Wale, *adj* choice, 2148

Wale, *adj* eddying, surging, 741,
763

Walkande, *i* *p* walking, 762,
3479

Walkyne, *s* welkin, sky, 787

Walle, *s* wave, 493 *Ger welle*

Walopande, *i* *p* galloping, 2147,
2827

Walowes, *v* *pl* wallow, roll,
1142, *pret* walewede, 3838

Walsche, *adj* Welsh, 320, 2044

Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wane-
drethe, 384, *s* woe, sorrow

Wandsomdly, *adv* (?) sorrow-
fully, 4012

Wandyis, *v* 3 *s* wanders, 798,
i *p* wanderande, 763

Wane, *adj* wan, dusky, dark,
492 *AS wan*

Wane *See* Wyne

Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, *s*
weapon, *pl* wapynez, 2137, wap-
yns, 312

War *See* Ware

Warantizez, *s* *pl* guarantees, 1614

Wardane, 3523, Wardayne, 650,
2494, *s* warden

Warde, *s* ward, 2480, custody,
1613

Wardede, *pp* guarded, 1614

Wardiop, 4203, Waidrope, 901,
2622, *s* wardrobe

Ware = where, 1054

Ware, *v* *pret* *pl* were, 18, 177,
sub *pret* 1 *s* warc, 2647, 2 *s*
ware, 964, 3 *s* ware, 73, war, 976,
pl ware

Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045,
adj wary, cautious, aware *AS*
wæter

Warely, *adv* cautiously, 4026

Waresche, *v* be healed, recover,
2186

Warlawe, 948, 958, Warlow,
1140, Werlaughe, 3771, *s* warlock,
wizard, also, a wicked man, *pl*
warlaws, 613

Warnes, *v* 3 *s* refuses, denies,
700

Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, *v* throw,
cast, *pl* warpes, 2746, warpes a-
waye = make off, *pret* warpe,
901

Was, *v* *pret* *pl* were, 1415

Wasterinne, *s* desert place, wilder-
ness, 3233 *See Wasturne in Al-*
iterative Poems, B 1674 *AS*
western

Wate *See* Wiet

- Wathe, *s* way, path, 3233 See
Wope in *Alliterative Poems*, A 151
 A S *wāsu*
 Wathe, *s* harm, hurt, 2668 See
Wope in *Alliterative Poems*, B 855
 Wathely, *adv* badly, 2090, 2186
 Watte See Wiet
 Watyre, *s* water, 1299, 1358
 Watyre-mene, *s* *pl* mariners, 741
 Wauerynge, *s* 2224
 Wawarde, *s* vanguard, 1767 See
 Avanttwarde
 Wawhte, (?) 3480
 Waxe, *v* grow, 4322
 Wayfare, *s* course, 1797
 Wayfe, *v* wander, stray, 960.
 Waykly, *adv* weakly, 697
 Wayte, *v* watch, look out for,
 164, 1807, 3 *s* wayttes, 2979;
inf wayttene, 1973
 Weches, *s* *pl* witches, 613
 Wedde, *pp* wedded, 700
 Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500,
 Wedys, 2129, *s* *pl* weeds, gar-
 ments
 Wedirwyns See Wyderwyne
 Wedowe, *s* widow, 950, 4285,
pl wedewes, 3154
 Weende See Wende
 Weife See Wif
 Weilde See Welde
 Weile See Wele.
 Weisly See Wyesly.
 Wekyrly, *adv* watchfully, hence,
 in a lively manner, briskly, 2104
 A S *wacorlice*, watchfully
 Welde, 3090, Weilde, 650, *v*
 rule, possess, 2967
 Wele, *s* riches, wealth, 401, 653,
 weal, 4100
 Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile,
 1788, *adv* well
 Welle, *s* spring, well, 540, 882
 Welle, *v* spring up, bubble up,
 boil, 3 *s* wellys, flows, 3819, *pret*
 wellyde, 3377, *pp* wellyde, boiled,
 1736
 Welte, *v* *pret* overturned, 3152
 Welters, 1140, Weltcrys, 890, *v*
 3 *s* rolls, *pl* welters, 1142, *s* *p*
 welterande, 2117
 Welthes, *s* *pl* 3157
 Wende See Wene
 Wende, 302, 1299, Weende,
 2145, 2193, *v* go, 2 *s* weynder,
 450, 3 *s* wendes, 614, wendez,
 701, weyndes, 2185, *pret* went,
 1301
 Wene, *v* think, suppose, 2 *s*
 wenes, 1806, wencz, 963, *pret*
 wende, 2121
 Wenges, 768, Wengcz, 819, 926,
s *pl* wings
 Wepede, *v*. *pret* wept, 1920, *i*
p wepand, 2679, 3561
 Werdes, 3889, Weredes, 385, *s*
pl fates, distines
 Weidez. See Weilde
 Were, *adv* where, 3692
 Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 516,
 621, *s* war
 Werdes See Werdes
 Weres = weers (?), 3054
 Weries. See Wery, *v*
 Werke, *s* work, *pl* werkes, 3,
 19
 Werkkes, *v* 3 *s* aches, 2689, *i*
p werkand, 1797, 2148
 Werlaughe See Warlawe
 Weilde, *s* world, 5, 708, *gen*
sg werdez, 674
 Werpe See Warpe
 Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, *v*
 make war, war upon, *pl* werraves,
 3447, *pret* werravede, 2045, 2215,
s *p* werrayande, 2089, werreyand,
 2599
 Werre See Were

- Werryde, *v pret* wore, 3872, *pp* werede, worn, 2930
 Weiry, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286, *v* curse, 3 *s* weries, 3888, *pp* weryd, 959
 Wery, *adj* weary, 492, 3392
 Weiyede, *pp* wearied, 796
 Wesche, *v pret* washed, 231, *pp* weschene, 1301
 Wetene, Wette *See* Wiet
 Wette, *v pret* wetted, 2332
 Weyffe *See* Wif
 Weyndes, Weyndez *See* Wende
 Weyne = wine, *s* 161
 Weysse *See* Wiese
 Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770, *pron* whom
 Whanne *See* Wyne
 Whare, *adv* where, 107, 302
 Whare = were, 174, 529
 Whas = was, 76, 634
 Whayme *See* Whame
 Whedire, 3231, Whedyr, 2533, Whedyre, 962, *adv* whither
 Whedyre, *conj* whether, 1717.
 Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv* when
 Whethire, *pron* which (of two), 350
 Wilde = wild, *adj* 3232, 3446
 Wilke, *pron* which, 4194
 Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills, 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597, *conj* whilst, whilles, 1197, whills, 3908, whylles, 2132, 2511, until
 Whilome, *adv* sometimes, 1145
 Whitte = white, *adj* 3260
 Whoo = who, 1322
 Whydyrewyns *See* Wyderwyne
 Whyeseste *See* Wiese
 Whyne, why—not, 703 Whyne myghte I dye = O that I might die!
 Wieffe *See* Wif
 Wielde, *s* (?) 2689
 Wiese, 3035, Weyssse, 2514, Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wyesse, 2745, *adj* wise, *superl* wyseste, 290, whyeseste, 532
 Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt, 958, *v* know, know of, 1 *s* wate, 4203, watie, 533, 2224, 2 *s* wate, 3393, watie, 692, 3549, *pl* wotte (*properly a sg form*), 4100, *pret* wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wyste, 339, 891, *pp* wetene, 2966, wytene, 869
 Wif, 993, Weife, 652, Weyffe, 674, Wieffe, 3550, Wyefe, 3575, Wyf, 986, Wyfe, 955, Wyfe, 3082, *s* woman, wife, *pl* wyfes, 294
 Wightenez *See* Wyghtnesse
 Wile, *v* get away by stealth, 3908
 Wilfully, *adv* 151, 3835
 Wille, *s* wildness, madness, 3836
 Willed, *pp* strayed, astray, 3230
 Wilne, *v* desire, 2 *s* willnez, 2224, wilnez, 3479, wynlez, 961, 3 *s* wynlez, 384 *AS* *wilman*
 Wirche *See* Wirke
 Wirchiye, 2187, Wyrchiye, 10, Wyrchiye, 150, *s* honour, *pl* wyrchippis, 22
 Wirchiye, Wyrchiye, 397, *v* honour, 3 *s* wyrscuppez, 1059, *pp* wyrchupid, 320, wyrchypide, 257, 685
 Wirchifulle, 1356, 2231, Wyrchifulle, 333, 650, *adj* worshipful, honourable
 Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyrke, 149, Wirche, 3008, Wyrche, 130, 1030, 1384, *v* work, perform, do, 2 *s* wirrkkes, 2432, 3 *s* wyrkez, 1267, wyrkkes, 1468, *pl* wyrkes, 663, *pret* wroghte, 1796, *pret pl* wroghtene, 2137, *pp* wroghte, 2622, 3495
 Wist, Wiste *See* Wiet
 Wit, *v* depart, 708 *AS* *witan*

- With-owtenc, 997, With-owtтыne, 114, 139, Wythowtтыne, 225, 491, *prep* without, except, 819
 Withstondene, *v pl* withstand, 1717, *pp* 1926
 With-thy, *conj* provided, on condition, 2557, 2591.
 Witter, *v* certify, assure, 1239
 Witterly, 3549, Wytterly, 324, *adv* plainly, clearly, certainly
 Wlonke, *adj* proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338 A S *wlonc*, *wlonc*
 Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, *v* wood, *pl* woddez, 1974 A S *wudu*.
 Wode, *adj* mad, raging, 3837 A S *wod*
 Wodely, *adv* madly, 2827
 Wodewyse, *adv* madly, 3817
 Wokes, *s. pl* weeks, 354. A S. *wuce*
 Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, *v pret* would. See Walde
 Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, *s pl.* wolves
 Wolf-heuede, *s* wolf's head, 1093
 Wombe, *s* belly, 768 A S. *wamb*
 Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, *v* hesitate, 3 *s* wondis, 3833 A S *wandian*, to fear, be awe struck
 Wonde, *s* wound, *pl* wondes, 1469, 2148
 Wonde, *v* wound, 3 *s* wondes, 2090, *pret* wondide, 2231, *pp* wondede, 1853, wonddede, 1558, wondyde, 1415, 1434
 Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, *adv* wonderfully
 Wondsome, *s* misery, 3836
 Wondyre, *s* 1166, 1342, *adv* 2515
 Wone, *s* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204
 Wonene. See Wyne
 Wonne, *v* dwell, 3910, 3 wonnys, 3551
 Wonne, Wonnene, Wonnynne See Wyne
 Wonnynge, *s pl* dwellings, habitations, 3157
 Wonrydez, *s pl* sorrow, grief, 707 See Wandiethe
 Woo, *s* woe, 2684, 3393
 Woonde See Wonde
 Worde, *v* 3393.
 Woime, *s* reptile, 796, 798
 Worows, *v* 3 *s* worries, kills, 958
 Worth, *v* become, be, 959 992, 1306
 Wortheliche, 2669, Worthlyche, 695, Worthly, 2191, *adj* worthy
 Worthethy = worthy, 1302
 Worthly, 2231, Worthlye, 2547, *adv*
 Wotte See Wiet
 Wraite, *v pret* wrote, 3904
 Wrakfulle, *adj* vengeful, 3818
 Wrangle, *adj* wrong, left, 1480
 Wraythe See Wrythe
 Wreche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, *s* wretch, *pl* wreches, 1446
 Wrechyde, *adj* wretched, 5
 Wreke, *s* vengeance, 3839.
 Wreke, *v* avenge, 321, 385, 3 *s* wrekes, 2213, *wpf* wrekene, 151, *pp* wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 2225
 Wrethe, *s* wrath, 151, 321, 385
 Wrethe, *s* fold, wreath, 1093
 Wrethide, *v pret* angered, 2191.
 Wriche. See Wreche.
 Wristeles. See Wrystille
 Wroghte, Wroghtene. See Wirke
 Wrokene, Wrokyne See Wreke.
 Wrothely, *adv* fiercely, 1141, 1480, 2214.

- Wiotherayle, *s* misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154
- Wiyche *See* Wreche
- Wryngene, *v* *pl* wring, 3155, *pp* wryngande, 950, 2679
- Wrystille, *v* wrestle, 1141, 3 *s* wristeles, 890
- Wrythe, *v* twist, writhe, turn about, 4322, wrythes, 1920, wrythis, 2214, *pl* wrythyne, 1141, *pret* wraythe, 1093
- Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, *s* man, person, *pl* wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysse, 685 A S *wiga*, warrior, *wig*, war
- Wyderwyne, *s* adversary, 2045, *pl* wedirwyns, 3818, wedirwynes, 3834, whydyrewyns, 2215. A S *wischerwuna*
- Wye, *v* weigh (anchor), 740
- Wyefe, Wyf, Wyfe, Wyffe *See* Wif
- Wyes, Wyese *See* Wy
- Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse *See* Wiese
- Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2599, *adv* wisely
- Wyghte, *s* wight, man, person, 959
- Wyghte, *adv* vigorous, strong, 1140, *comp* wyghttere, 964, *superl* wyghteste, 290, 336, 532
- Wyghtly, *adv* vigorously, 553, 740
- Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, *s* vigour, strength
- Wykkylde, *adv* evil, 3232
- Wylde, *s* wild animals, 181, 657
- Wylde fyre, *s* 797
- Wylez, *s* *pl* wiles, 1504
- Wylly, *adv* in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746
- Wylnez *See* Wilne
- Wynche, *v* wink, wince, 2104
- Wyndowes, *s* *pl* some part of a helmet, probably the *windhole* or *aventail*, 911
- Wyne, *v* win, gain, conquer, wyne, 516, wyne to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908, wyne away, get away, 468, *pret* wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22, *pp* wonnene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805
- Wynly, *adv* pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338
- Wynlyche, *adv* pleasant, 181
- Wyrche *See* Wirke
- Wyrchup, Wyrchfulle, &c *See* Wirchipe, &c
- Wyrke, Wykkkes *See* Wirke
- Wysse, *v* direct, guide, teach, 9, 813, 3 *s* wysse, governs, 671
- Wysse *See* Wy
- Wyste, Wyt, Wytene *See* Wiet
- Wythowttyne *See* With-owtene
- Wythsytte, *v* resist, 104
- Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, *s* wit
- Wytterly *See* Witterly
- Yare, 1901 *Read Thare*
- Yche, Ylke *See* Ilke
- Ynewe, Ynowe *See* Inowe
- Yryne *See* Irene
- Yschewes, *v* 3 *s* issues, 610
- Ythez, *s* *pl* waves, 741, 747, 763
- 3a, *adv* yea, 993, 1033
- 3aldsones, *s* *pl* (?) 3809
- 3alowere, *adv* *comp* yellower, 3283
- 3apely, *adv* quickly, 1502
- 3ates, 2471, 3atez, 2039, *s* *pl* gates
- 3e, *pron* ye, 12, 226
- 3ee, 3911 Perhaps a mistake for *3ees*, sobs A S *giscian*, to sob

- 3effe, *conj* if, 2859
 3elde, *v* to yield, 1502, 3 &
 3eldes, 3809, *pp* 3oldene, 2334,
 2482
 3eldene, *pp* 1870. Probably a
 mistake for '3oldene.'
 3eme, *v* keep, guard, 3 *s* 3emes,
 430, 3emez, 938, *pl* 3emes, 647
 3erde, *s* yard, 3254, 3280
 3ere, *s* year, 522, 552.
 3ermys, (?) laments, 3911. A.S
 gyrman, to roar
 3erne, *v* yearn, desire, lust after,
 2 *s* 3ernez, 1502, 3 *s* 3ernes,
 1032, *pp* 3ernede, 2343
 3erne, *adv* earnestly, eagerly,
 1794, 3325, 4189
 3if, 340, 3ife, 1502, 3iff, 104, 3iffe,
 4153, *conj* if
 3if, 1567, 3ife, 1668, 3iffe, 2323,
 v give.
 3is, 2324, 3ise, 2585, *adv* yes
 3it, 1128, 3itt, 1140, 3itte, 2109,
 yet
 3ofe, 1938, 2854 *Read* 'thofe,'
 though
 3oldene *See* 3elde.
 3ole, *s* Yule, 2628
 3olke, *s* yolk, 3283
 3omane, *s* yeoman, 2628
 3on, 2935, 3one, 299, 336, 341,
 adj yon
 3ondire, 3809, 3ondyr, 2720, *adv*
 yonder
 3our, 95, 153, 222, 3owre, 630,
 683, *pron* your
 3ow, 15, 16, 3owe, 1266, *pron.* you.